

SCORE Placeholder Sheet for IFW Content

Application Number: 17580428

Document Date: 01/20/2022

The presence of this form in the IFW record indicates that the following document type was received in electronic format on the date identified above. This content is stored in the SCORE database.

Since this was an electronic submission, there is no physical artifact folder, no artifact folder is recorded in PALM, and no paper documents or physical media exist. The TIFF images in the IFW record were created from the original documents that are stored in SCORE.

- Drawing

At the time of document entry (noted above):

- USPTO employees may access SCORE content via DAV or via the SCORE web page.
- External customers may access SCORE content via PAIR using the Supplemental Content tab.

Form Revision Date: March 1, 2019

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

The present disclosure provides industrially scalable methods of making (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof, crystalline forms of endoxifen, and compositions comprising them. The present disclosure also provides methods for treating hormone-dependent breast and hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorders.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
The application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it is being submitted. The following form contains the bibliographic data arranged in a format specified by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as outlined in 37 CFR 1.76. This document may be completed electronically and submitted to the Office in electronic format using the Electronic Filing System (EFS) or the document may be printed and included in a paper filed application.			

Secrecy Order 37 CFR 5.2:

☐ Portions or all of the application associated with this Application Data Sheet may fall under a Secrecy Order pursuant to 37 CFR 5.2 (Paper filers only. Applications that fall under Secrecy Order may not be filed electronically.)

Inventor Information:

Inventor	1				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Steven	C.	Quay		
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	Seattle	State/Province	WA	Country of Residence	US
Mailing Address of Inventor:					
Address 1	107 Spring Street				
Address 2					
City	Seattle	State/Province	WA		
Postal Code	98104	Country i	US		
Inventor	2				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Yao-Lin		Sun		
Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	Tainan City	Country of Residence i	TW		
Mailing Address of Inventor:					
Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.				
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.				
City	Tainan City	State/Province			
Postal Code	741	Country i	TW		
Inventor	3				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	LungHu		Wang		

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service			
City	Kaohsiung City	Country of Residence ⁱ	TW

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.		
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.		
City	Tainan City	State/Province	
Postal Code	741	Country ⁱ	TW
Inventor	4	Remove	
Legal Name			

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	ChangJung		Wu	

Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service			
City	Kaohsiung City	Country of Residence ⁱ	TW

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.		
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.		
City	Tainan City	State/Province	
Postal Code	741	Country ⁱ	TW
Inventor	5	Remove	
Legal Name			

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	ChuanDer		Huang	

Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service			
City	Tainan City	Country of Residence ⁱ	TW

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.		
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.		
City	Tainan City	State/Province	
Postal Code	741	Country ⁱ	TW
All Inventors Must Be Listed - Additional Inventor Information blocks may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. Add			

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Correspondence Information:

Enter either Customer Number or complete the Correspondence Information section below. For further information see 37 CFR 1.33(a).			
☐ An Address is being provided for the correspondence information of this application.			
Customer Number	27148		
Email Address	patentdocketing@polsinelli.com	Add Email	Remove Email

Application Information:

Title of the Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740	Small Entity Status Claimed	☒
Application Type	Nonprovisional		
Subject Matter	Utility		
Total Number of Drawing Sheets (if any)	13	Suggested Figure for Publication (if any)	3

Filing By Reference:

Only complete this section when filing an application by reference under 35 U.S.C. 111(c) and 37 CFR 1.57(a). Do not complete this section if application papers including a specification and any drawings are being filed. Any domestic benefit or foreign priority information must be provided in the appropriate section(s) below (i.e., "Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information" and "Foreign Priority Information").

For the purposes of a filing date under 37 CFR 1.53(b), the description and any drawings of the present application are replaced by this reference to the previously filed application, subject to conditions and requirements of 37 CFR 1.57(a).

Application number of the previously filed application	Filing date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Intellectual Property Authority or Country

Publication Information:

☐ Request Early Publication (Fee required at time of Request 37 CFR 1.219)
☐ Request Not to Publish. I hereby request that the attached application not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and certify that the invention disclosed in the attached application has not and will not be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing.

Representative Information:

Representative information should be provided for all practitioners having a power of attorney in the application. Providing this information in the Application Data Sheet does not constitute a power of attorney in the application (see 37 CFR 1.32). Either enter Customer Number or complete the Representative Name section below. If both sections are completed the customer Number will be used for the Representative Information during processing.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
Please Select One:	☒ Customer Number	☐ US Patent Practitioner	☐ Limited Recognition (37 CFR 11.9)
Customer Number	27148		

Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information:

This section allows for the applicant to either claim benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, 365(c), or 386(c) or indicate National Stage entry from a PCT application. Providing benefit claim information in the Application Data Sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and 37 CFR 1.78.

When referring to the current application, please leave the "Application Number" field blank.

Prior Application Status	Pending	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
	Continuation of	16/641985	2020-02-25
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
16/641985	a 371 of international	PCT/US2018/050272	2018-09-10
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/US2018/050272	Claims benefit of provisional	62/693885	2018-07-03
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/US2018/050272	Claims benefit of provisional	62/624787	2018-01-31
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/US2018/050272	Claims benefit of provisional	62/556799	2017-09-11
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/US2018/050272	Claims benefit of provisional	62/556884	2017-09-11
Additional Domestic Benefit/National Stage Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.			Add

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Foreign Priority Information:

This section allows for the applicant to claim priority to a foreign application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and 37 CFR 1.55. When priority is claimed to a foreign application that is eligible for retrieval under the priority document exchange program (PDX)ⁱ the information will be used by the Office to automatically attempt retrieval pursuant to 37 CFR 1.55(i)(1) and (2). Under the PDX program, applicant bears the ultimate responsibility for ensuring that a copy of the foreign application is received by the Office from the participating foreign intellectual property office, or a certified copy of the foreign priority application is filed, within the time period specified in 37 CFR 1.55(g)(1).

Application Number	Country ⁱ	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Access Code ^j (if applicable)

Additional Foreign Priority Data may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button.
Add

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications

This application (1) claims priority to or the benefit of an application filed before March 16, 2013 and (2) also contains, or contained at any time, a claim to a claimed invention that has an effective filing date on or after March 16, 2013.

☐ NOTE: By providing this statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78, this application, with a filing date on or after March 16, 2013, will be examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access:

When this Application Data Sheet is properly signed and filed with the application, applicant has provided written authority to permit a participating foreign intellectual property (IP) office access to the instant application-as-filed (see paragraph A in subsection 1 below) and the European Patent Office (EPO) access to any search results from the instant application (see paragraph B in subsection 1 below).

Should applicant choose not to provide an authorization identified in subsection 1 below, applicant **must opt-out** of the authorization by checking the corresponding box A or B or both in subsection 2 below.

NOTE: This section of the Application Data Sheet is **ONLY** reviewed and processed with the **INITIAL** filing of an application. After the initial filing of an application, an Application Data Sheet cannot be used to provide or rescind authorization for access by a foreign IP office(s). Instead, Form PTO/SB/39 or PTO/SB/69 must be used as appropriate.

1. Authorization to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

A. Priority Document Exchange (PDX) - Unless box A in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the European Patent Office (EPO), the Japan Patent Office (JPO), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (KIPO), the State Intellectual Property Office of the People's Republic of China (SIPO), the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), and any other foreign intellectual property office participating with the USPTO in a bilateral or multilateral priority document exchange agreement in which a foreign application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed, access to: (1) the instant patent application-as-filed and its related bibliographic data, (2) any foreign or domestic application to which priority or benefit is claimed by the instant application and its related bibliographic data, and (3) the date of filing of this Authorization. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(1).

B. Search Results from U.S. Application to EPO - Unless box B in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the EPO access to the bibliographic data and search results from the instant patent application when a European patent application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(2).

The applicant is reminded that the EPO's Rule 141(1) EPC (European Patent Convention) requires applicants to submit a copy of search results from the instant application without delay in a European patent application that claims priority to the instant application.

2. Opt-Out of Authorizations to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

☐ A. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to permit a participating foreign IP office access to the instant application-as-filed. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing a participating foreign IP office with any documents and information identified in subsection 1A above.

☐ B. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to transmit to the EPO any search results from the instant patent application. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing the EPO with search results from the instant application.

NOTE: Once the application has published or is otherwise publicly available, the USPTO may provide access to the application in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Applicant Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.			
Applicant	1 Remove		
If the applicant is the inventor (or the remaining joint inventor or inventors under 37 CFR 1.45), this section should not be completed. The information to be provided in this section is the name and address of the legal representative who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.43; or the name and address of the assignee, person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign the invention, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46. If the applicant is an applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 (assignee, person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest) together with one or more joint inventors, then the joint inventor or inventors who are also the applicant should be identified in this section. Clear			
☐ Assignee	Legal Representative under 35 U.S.C. 117		Joint Inventor
Person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign.		Person who shows sufficient proprietary interest	
If applicant is the legal representative, indicate the authority to file the patent application, the inventor is:			
Name of the Deceased or Legally Incapacitated Inventor:			
If the Applicant is an Organization check here. ☒			
Organization Name	Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.		
Mailing Address Information For Applicant:			
Address 1	107 Spring Street		
Address 2			
City	Seattle	State/Province	WA
Country	US	Postal Code	98104
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			
Additional Applicant Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. Add			

Assignee Information including Non-Applicant Assignee Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Assignee	1			
Complete this section if assignee information, including non-applicant assignee information, is desired to be included on the patent application publication. An assignee-applicant identified in the "Applicant Information" section will appear on the patent application publication as an applicant. For an assignee-applicant, complete this section only if identification as an assignee is also desired on the patent application publication.				
				Remove
If the Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee is an Organization check here. ☐				
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
Mailing Address Information For Assignee including Non-Applicant Assignee:				
Address 1				
Address 2				
City		State/Province		
Country ⁱ		Postal Code		
Phone Number		Fax Number		
Email Address				
Additional Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.				Add

Signature:				Remove
NOTE: This Application Data Sheet must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33(b). However, if this Application Data Sheet is submitted with the INITIAL filing of the application and either box A or B is not checked in subsection 2 of the "Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access" section, then this form must also be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(c).				
This Application Data Sheet must be signed by a patent practitioner if one or more of the applicants is a juristic entity (e.g., corporation or association). If the applicant is two or more joint inventors, this form must be signed by a patent practitioner, all joint inventors who are the applicant, or one or more joint inventor-applicants who have been given power of attorney (e.g., see USPTO Form PTO/AIA/81) on behalf of all joint inventor-applicants.				
See 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the manner of making signatures and certifications.				
Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/		Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-01-20
First Name	Lisa G.	Last Name	Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number
				78332
Additional Signature may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.				Add

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.76. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 23 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application data sheet form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

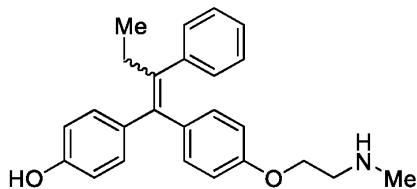
The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

CLAIMS

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III):



Formula (III).

2. The composition of claim 1, wherein at least 90% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition is the (Z)-isomer.
3. The composition of claim 2, wherein the crystalline form is Form I of the compound of Formula (III).
4. The composition of claim 3, wherein the crystalline form is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.
5. The composition of claim 4, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.
6. The composition of claim 4 or 5, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.
7. The composition of claim 4, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises peaks at $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.
8. The composition of any one of claims 3 to 7, wherein the crystalline form is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern substantially as set forth in Fig. 9 or Fig. 10.
9. The composition of any one of claims 3 to 8, wherein greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition is crystalline Form I.
10. The composition of any one of claims 3 to 9, wherein the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of crystalline Form I.
11. The composition of claim 10, wherein the composition comprises about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of crystalline Form I.
12. The composition of claim 1, wherein the composition comprises the (E)-isomer and the (Z)-isomer of the compound of Formula (III) in an E/Z ratio between 0.9 and 1.3.
13. The composition of claim 12, wherein the E/Z ratio is about 1.1.

14. The composition of claim 12 or 13, wherein the crystalline form is Form II of the compound of Formula (III).

15. The composition of claim 14, wherein the crystalline form is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

16. The composition of claim 15, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises a peak at $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

17. The composition of claim 15 or 16, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

18. The composition of claim 15, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises peaks at $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

19. The composition of any one of claims 14 to 18, wherein the crystalline form is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern substantially as set forth in Fig. 11 or Fig. 12.

20. The composition of any one of claims 14 to 19, wherein greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition is crystalline Form II.

21. The composition of any one of claims 14 to 20, wherein the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of crystalline Form II.

22. The composition of claim 21, wherein the composition comprises about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of crystalline Form II.

23. The composition of claim 12 or 13, wherein the crystalline form is Form III of the compound of Formula (III).

24. The composition of claim 23, wherein the crystalline form is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

25. The composition of claim 24, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises a peak at $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

26. The composition of claim 24 or 25, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

27. The composition of claim 24, wherein the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises peaks at $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

28. The composition of any one of claims 23 to 27, wherein the crystalline form is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern substantially as set forth in Fig. 13.

29. The composition of any one of claims 23 to 28, wherein greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition is crystalline Form III.

30. The composition of any one of claims 23 to 29, wherein the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of crystalline Form III.

31. The composition of claim 30, wherein the composition comprises about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of crystalline Form III.

32. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent and the composition of any one of the preceding claims.

33. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the composition is formulated for oral, parenteral, topical, or intraductal delivery.

34. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery as a tablet, a caplet, a capsule, or a pill.

35. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, wherein a mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject treated with the composition is between 30 hours to 60 hours.

36. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule.

37. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the composition is administered to a subject for the treatment or prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both in the subject.

38. An oral composition comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of the composition of any one of the preceding claims for administration to a subject in need thereof, wherein daily administration of the oral composition achieves in the subject:

- a steady state plasma level of endoxifen within 7 to 21 days;
- a steady state plasma level of endoxifen ranging from 25 nM to 300 nM;
- a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM;
- maximal plasma levels of endoxifen within 2 to 10 hours after administering; or
- any combination thereof.

39. The oral composition of claim 38, wherein a mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject treated with the composition is between 40 hours to 55 hours.

40. The oral composition of claim 38 or 39, wherein the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule.

41. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, wherein at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% of endoxifen in the composition is released in the intestines.

42. The composition of any one of the preceding claims, having a mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of endoxifen of 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, of 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, of 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or of 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL.

43. A method of treating a subject in need thereof, the method comprising administering to the subject the composition of any one of claims 1 to 42.

44. The method of claim 43, wherein the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

45. The method of claim 44, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

46. The method of any one of claims 43 to 45, wherein the subject has prostate cancer and wherein the subject further has or is at risk of having gynecomastia.

47. The method of any one of claims 43 to 46, wherein the subject has tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder.

48. The method of any one of claims 43 to 47, wherein the subject is or will be treated with an SSRI drug selected from the group consisting of citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, and vilazodone.

49. The method of any one of claims 43 to 48, wherein the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

50. The method of any one of claims 43 to 49, wherein the subject is administered about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen daily.

51. The method of any one of claims 43 to 50, wherein a steady state plasma level of endoxifen in the subject is greater than 30 nM.

52. The method of any one of claims 43 to 51, wherein the steady state plasma level of endoxifen is achieved within 7 to 21 days of the first administration of the composition.

53. The method of any one of claims 43 to 52, wherein time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranges from 2 hours to 10 hours or from 4 hours to 8 hours after administering the composition.

54. A method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising administering the composition of any one of claims 1 to 42, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;

a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 4 hours to 8 hours after administration; and

a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

55. The method of claim 54, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder and the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder are selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer.

56. The method of claim 54 or 55, wherein the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

57. The method of claim 56, wherein the subject is administered about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

58. The method of any one of claims 43 to 57, wherein the mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of endoxifen is 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL.

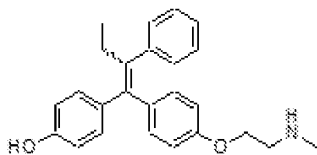
59. The method of any one of claims 43 to 58, wherein the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule.

60. The method of any one of claims 43 to 59, wherein at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% of endoxifen in the composition is released in the intestines.

61. The method of any one of claims 43 to 60, wherein the composition is administered once a day, twice a day, thrice a day, four times a day, every other day, twice a week, weekly, fortnightly, twice a month, monthly, quarterly, once every six months, or annually.

62. An industrially scalable process for manufacturing (Z)-endoxifen, comprising the steps of:

(a) subjecting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), represented by



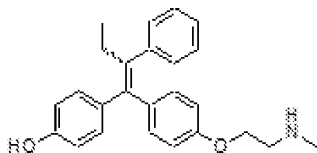
to fractional crystallization from a first solvent to form a first crystalline solid and first mother liquor, wherein the first mother liquor has an E/Z ratio of at least 50% higher (Z) endoxifen as compared with the E/Z ratio of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen;

(b) subjecting the first mother liquor to recrystallization from a second solvent by concentrating the first mother liquor or by swapping out the first solvent from the first mother liquor with the second solvent one or more times, to form a second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor, wherein the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen; and

(c) optionally, subjecting the second crystalline solid to recrystallization from a third solvent or chromatographic treatment one or more times to form a third crystalline solid.

63. An industrially scalable process for manufacturing the crystalline form of any one of claims 1 to 11, comprising the steps of:

(a) subjecting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), represented by

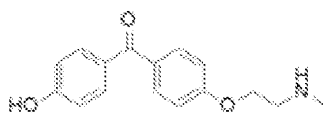


to fractional crystallization from a first solvent to form a first crystalline solid and first mother liquor, wherein the first mother liquor has an E/Z ratio of at least 50% higher (Z) endoxifen as compared with the E/Z ratio of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen;

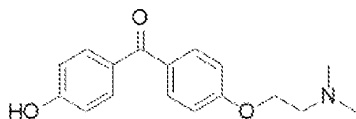
(b) subjecting the first mother liquor to recrystallization from a second solvent by concentrating the first mother liquor or by swapping out the first solvent from the first mother liquor with the second solvent one or more times, to form a second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor, wherein the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen; and

(c) subjecting the second crystalline solid to recrystallization from a third solvent or chromatographic treatment one or more times to form a third crystalline solid, wherein the third crystalline solid is the crystalline form of any one of claims 1 to 11.

64. The process of claim 62 or 63, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen is prepared by coupling a compound of Formula (II), (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl) methanone, to propiophenone mediated by a McMurry reaction via a titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; and wherein the compound of Formula (II) has a structure represented by



65. The process of claim 64, further comprising preparing the compound of Formula (II) by demethylating [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone, a compound of Formula (I), wherein the compound of Formula (I) has the structure



with a demethylating agent and a proton acceptor in an inert organic solvent to form the compound of Formula (II).

66. The process of any one of claims 62 to 65, wherein the first solvent is ethyl acetate, IPA, IPA/PPW, ACN, ACN/PPW or acetone.

67. The process of any one of claims 62 to 66, wherein the second solvent is IPA, IPA/PPW, acetone, ethanol, ethyl acetate, or acetone/MTBE.

68. The process of any one of claims 62 to 67, wherein the third solvent is ethanol, methanol, ethyl acetate, IPA, IPA/PPW, n-heptane, or acetone.

69. The process of any one of claims 62 to 68, further comprising pre-heating any one or more of the first solvent, the second solvent and the third solvent to a temperature ranging from 40 °C to 80 °C.

70. The process of any one of claims 62 to 69, wherein each fractional crystallization and recrystallization step independently comprises a step of distillation at 50 °C to 80 °C; and cooling the solution to a temperature ranging from 0 °C to NMT 35 °C.

71. The process of any one of claims 64 to 70, further comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone in an inert organic solvent;
- (b) preparing a titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent; and
- (c) reacting the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with the titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent of step (b) to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

72. The process of any one of claims 64 to 71, further comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone (1:0.01 to 1:5 wt/wt) in an inert organic solvent (1:1 to 1: 20 wt/wt);
- (b) preparing a titanium salt (1:0.1 to 1:12 wt/wt) and a reducing agent (1:0.01 to 1:10 wt/wt) in an inert organic solvent (1:1 to 1: 20 wt/wt); and
- (c) reacting the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with the titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent of step (b) to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen;

wherein wt/wt is with respect to compound of Formula (II).

73. The process of any one of claims 64 to 72, wherein the titanium salt is selected from the group consisting of titanium halides (such as titanium trichloride (TiCl₃), titanium tetrachloride (TiCl₄), titanium iodides, titanium bromides, and titanium fluorides), titanium(IV) trichloride isopropoxide, and titanium isopropoxide.

74. The process of any one of claims 64 to 73, wherein the reducing agent is selected from the group consisting of zinc, zirconium, vanadium, niobium, molybdenum, tungsten, aluminum, magnesium, potassium, zinc-copper couple, alkali and alkali earth metals, butyllium, lithium, and lithium aluminum hydride.

75. The process of any one of claims 64 to 74, wherein the inert organic solvent is selected from the group consisting of dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, chlorobenzene, diethyl ether, 1,4-dioxane, tert-butyl methyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, N,N-

dimethylformamide, N-methylpyrrolidone, diglyme, nitromethane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, pyridine, acetone, acetonitrile, benzene, o-xylene, m-xylene, p-xylene, xylenes, hexanes, cyclohexane, heptane, octane, nonane, and decane, or a combination thereof.

76. The process of any one of claims 64 to 75, wherein the preparation of the titanium salt and the reducing agent in the inert organic solvent in step (b) further comprises maintaining the temperature of the reaction at a temperature of NMT 75 °C, NMT 65 °C, NMT 55 °C, NMT 50 °C, NMT 45 °C, NMT 40 °C, NMT 35 °C, NMT 30 °C, NMT 25 °C, NMT 20 °C, or NMT 15 °C when the titanium salt is added to the reducing agent and the inert organic solvent.

77. The process of any one of claims 64 to 76, wherein the preparation of the titanium salt and the reducing agent in the inert organic solvent further comprising maintaining the temperature of the reaction at a temperature NMT 75 °C, NMT 70 °C, NMT 65 °C, NMT 60 °C, NMT 55 °C, NMT 50 °C, or NMT 45 °C when the titanium salt is added to the reducing agent and the inert organic solvent.

78. The process of any one of claims 64 to 77, wherein the preparation of the titanium salt and the reducing agent in the inert organic solvent in step (b) further comprises heating the titanium salt and the reducing agent in the inert organic solvent to a temperature ranging from 20 °C to 250 °C, from 40 °C to 70 °C, from 50 °C to 230 °C, from 50 °C to 120 °C, or from 150 °C to 200 °C.

79. The process of any one of claims 64 to 78, wherein the preparation of the titanium salt and the reducing agent in the inert organic solvent in step (b) further comprises heating the titanium salt and the reducing agent in the inert organic solvent under reflux for NLT 30 min, NLT 1 hour, NLT 2 hours, NLT 4 hours, NLT 6 hours, or NLT 8 hours under N₂ or argon.

80. The process of any one of claims 64 to 79, wherein the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) is reacted with titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent of step (b) under reflux to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

81. The process of any one of claims 64 to 80, wherein the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) is reacted with titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent of step (b) at a temperature ranging from 40 °C to 80 °C to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen for NLT 4 hours, NLT 6 hours, NLT 8 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 24 hours, or NLT 48 hours.

82. The process of any one of claims 64 to 81, further comprising a step of cooling the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen to a temperature ranging from 0 °C to 30 °C.

83. The process of any one of claims 64 to 82, further comprising one or more steps of:

- (a) extraction of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen;
- (b) washing the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen;

- (c) distillation of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; and
- (d) crystallization to afford a crystalline solid mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

84. The process of claim 83, wherein the extraction is carried out one or more times in MeTHF or THF.

85. The process of any one of claims 65 to 84, further comprising generating the compound of Formula (II) by demethylating the compound of Formula (I) with a demethylating agent (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt) and a proton acceptor (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt) in an inert organic solvent (1:1 to 1: 20 wt/wt) to form the compound of Formula (II), wherein the wt/wt ratios are with respect to the compound of Formula (I).

86. The process of any one of claims 65 to 85, wherein the proton acceptor is selected from the group consisting of carbonates, such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, and bicarbonates, such as sodium bicarbonate and potassium bicarbonate, proton sponge, and DIPEA.

87. The process of any one of claims 65 to 86, wherein the demethylating agent is selected from the group consisting of N-iodosuccinamide, ethyl chloroformates (such as 1-chloroethyl chloroformate, dichloroethyl chloroformate, trichloroethyl chloroformate, α -chloroethyl chloroformate), vinyl chloroformate, cynogen bromide, diethyl azodicarboxylate, and pyridinium chloride.

88. The process of any one of claims 65 to 87, wherein the compound of Formula (I) is reacted with the demethylating agent and the proton acceptor at a temperature ranging from 20 °C to 250 °C, from 40 °C to 80 °C, from 50 °C to 230 °C, from 50 °C to 120 °C, and from 150 °C to 200 °C.

89. The process of any one of claims 65 to 88, wherein the compound of Formula (I) is reacted with the demethylating agent and the proton acceptor under reflux.

90. The process of any one of claims 65 to 89, wherein the compound of Formula (I) is reacted with the demethylating agent and the proton acceptor for NLT 5 hours, NLT 8 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 24 hours, NLT 36 hours, NLT 48 hour or NLT 72 hours.

91. The process of any one of claims 3 or 85 to 90, further comprising one or more steps of:

- (a) distillation;
- (b) reaction with solvent/acid mixture;
- (c) neutralization with a neutralizing agent; and
- (d) drying under reduced pressure.

92. The process of claim 91, wherein the distillation step comprises one or more solvent swaps with an organic distillation solvent selected from the group consisting of ethyl acetate, alcohols, such as methanol, ethanol, n-propanol, and isopropanol, benzene, acetone, acetonitrile, toluene, dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, and chloroform.

93. The process of claim 91 or 92, wherein the solvent/acid mixture is selected from the group consisting of methanol/HCl, ethanol/HCl, propanol/HCl, isopropanol/HCl, methanol/sulfuric acid, methanol/phosphoric acid, ethanol/sulfuric acid, ethanol/phosphoric acid, propanol/sulfuric acid, propanol/phosphoric acid, isopropanol/sulfuric acid, isopropanol/phosphoric acid, methanol/acetic acid, ethanol/acetic acid, propanol/acetic acid, isopropanol/acetic acid, methanol/formic acid, ethanol/formic acid, propanol/formic acid, and isopropanol/formic acid.

94. The process of any one of claims 91 to 93, wherein neutralizing agent is sodium hydroxide, ammonium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, or aminomethylpropanol.

95. The process of any one of claims 62 to 94, further comprising converting (E)-endoxifen to (Z)-endoxifen by reacting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen to an acid (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) in a solvent (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt), wherein the wt/wt ratios are with respect to compounds of Formula (III).

96. The process of claim 95, wherein the acid is HCl, TCA, or TFA.

97. The process of claim 95 or 96, wherein the solvent is acetonitrile, acetonitrile/PPW, IPA, IPA/PPW, dichloromethane, or ethyl acetate.

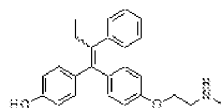
98. The process of any one of claims 95 to 97, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen is heated with the acid in the solvent under reflux and stirred for NLT 4 hours, NLT 6 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 24 hours, or NLT 48 hours.

99. The process of any one of claims 95 to 98, further comprising one or more steps of:

- (a) neutralization with a neutralizing agent;
- (b) extraction;
- (c) one or more washes; and
- (d) treatment with activated carbon.

100. An industrially scalable process for manufacturing (Z)-endoxifen, comprising the steps of:

- (a) subjecting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III) represented by



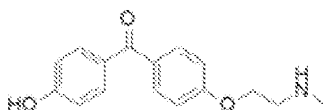
to fractional crystallization from ethyl acetate to form a first crystalline solid and first crystalline mother liquor, wherein the first mother liquor has an E/Z ratio of at least 50% higher (Z) endoxifen as compared with the E/Z ratio of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen;

(b) subjecting the first mother liquor to recrystallization from the IPA or IPA/PPW (1:1 v/v) by concentrating the first mother liquor, or by swapping out the ethyl acetate from the first mother liquor with IPA or IPA/PPW one or more times, to form a second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor, wherein the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen; and

(c) optionally, subjecting the second crystalline solid to recrystallization from ethanol or column chromatographic treatment one or more times to form a third crystalline solid.

101. The process of claim 99 or 100, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), in step a is pretreated with 6N HCl and neutralized with 8N NaOH.

102. The process of any one of claims 99 to 101, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), is prepared by coupling a compound of Formula (II), (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl) methanone, to propiophenone catalyzed in a McMurry reaction via TiCl_4 and Zn in THF to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; and wherein the compound of Formula (II) has a structure represented by



103. The process of claim 102, further comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone in THF;
- (b) preparing TiCl_4 and Zn in THF; and
- (c) reacting the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with the TiCl_4 and Zn in THF of step (b) to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

104. The process of claim 102 or 103, comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone in THF (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt);

(b) preparing a TiCl_4 (0.1 to 12 wt/wt) and Zn (0.01 to 1:10 wt/wt) in THF (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt); and

(c) reacting the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with the TiCl_4 and Zn in THF of step (b) to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

105. The process of any one of claims 102 to 104, wherein preparation of TiCl_4 and Zn in THF further comprises heating under reflux for NLT 2 hours under N_2 .

106. The process of any one of claims 102 to 105, further comprising the steps of extractive purification, distillation, and crystallization.

107. The process of any one of claims 102 to 106, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen is subjected to extractive purification comprising a step of:

- (a) extraction one or more times with ammonium chloride, silicon dioxide, 40% K_2CO_3 , and THF;
- (b) extraction one or more times with K_2CO_3 and MeTHF;
- (c) extraction one or more times with NaOH, NaCl, and MeTHF;
- (d) extraction one or more times with MeTHF or THF;
- (e) extraction one or more times with 20% NaCl; or
- (f) a combination thereof.

108. The process of any one of claims 102 to 107, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen is subjected to extractive purification comprising the steps of:

- (a) extraction one or more times with 40% K_2CO_3 (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt) and MeTHF (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt);
 - (b) extraction one or more times with 1N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt), NaCl (1:0.01 to 1:0.5 wt/wt) and MeTHF (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt);
 - (c) extraction one or more times with MeTHF (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt); and
 - (d) extraction with 20% NaCl (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt);
- wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

109. The process of any one of claims 102 to 108, wherein the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen is subjected to extractive purification comprising the steps of:

- (a) extraction with 25% ammonium chloride (1:10 to 1:30 wt/wt), silicon dioxide (1:0.01 to 1:5 wt/wt) and THF (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt);
- (b) one or more washes with THF (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt); and
- (c) one or more washes with 40% K_2CO_3 (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt);

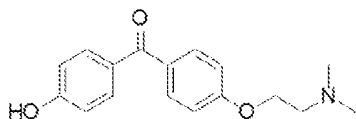
wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

110. The process of claim 108 or 109, wherein the step of distillation is performed 1 to 5 times with EtOAc (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt) or IPA (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt).

111. The process of any one of claims 106 to 110, wherein the step of distillation is performed at a temperature ranging from 30 °C to 90 °C.

112. The process of any one of claims 106 to 111, wherein the distillation is performed at NMT 75 °C.

113. The process of any one of claims 102 to 112, wherein the compound of Formula (II) is prepared by demethylating [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone, a compound of Formula (I), wherein the compound of Formula (I) has the structure



with 1-chloroethyl chloroformate and DIPEA in THF to form the compound of Formula (II).

114. The process of claim 113, comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting the compound of Formula (I) with DIPEA in tetrahydrofuran;
- (b) adding 1-chloroethyl chloroformate;
- (c) distilling with methanol;
- (d) reacting with methanol/6N HCl; and
- (e) neutralizing with 8N NaOH.

115. The process of claim 113 or 114, comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting the compound of Formula (I) with DIPEA (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt) in THF (1:20 wt/wt);
- (b) adding 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (1:1 to 1:10 wt./wt);
- (c) distilling with methanol one or more times (1:1 to 1:10 wt./wt);
- (d) reacting with methanol (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt)/6N HCl (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); and
- (e) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt);

wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I).

116. The process of any one of claims 113 to 115, further comprising one or more steps of:

- (a) washing the compound of Formula (II) with purified water (1:1 to 1:5 vol/wt);

(b) washing the compound of formula (II) with ethyl acetate (1:1 to 1: 5 wt/wt);
and

(c) drying the compound of Formula (II) under reduced pressure at NMT 50°C;
wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I).

117. The process of any one of claims 62 to 116, further comprising converting (E)-endoxifen to (Z)-endoxifen by reacting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen to 6N HCl (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) in EtOAc (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt), wherein wt/wt is with respect to the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

118. The process of claim 117, further comprising the steps of:

- (a) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt);
 - (b) extraction with ethyl acetate (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt);
 - (c) one or more washes with 20% NaCl (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); and
 - (d) treatment with activated carbon (1:0.01 to 1:0.1 wt/wt);
- wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (III).

119. A crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) produced according to the method of any one of claims 62 to 118.

120. The crystalline form of claim 119, wherein the crystalline form is Form I of the compound of Formula (III).

121. An industrially scalable process of reequilibrating a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen having an E/Z ratio ranging from 45:55 to 55:45 comprising the steps of:

- (a) reacting to 6N HCL (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) in ethyl acetate (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt) a starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen having an E/Z-ratio ranging from 99:1 to 60:40;
 - (b) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt);
 - (c) washing one or more times with ethyl acetate; and
 - (d) washing one or more times with IPA;
- wherein wt/wt is with respect the starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

122. An industrially scalable process for manufacturing the crystalline form of any one of claims 12 to 31, comprising:

- (a) reacting to 6N HCL (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) in ethyl acetate (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt) a starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen having an E/Z-ratio ranging from 99:1 to 40:60;
- (b) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt);
- (c) washing one or more times with ethyl acetate;

- (d) washing one or more times with a mixture of ethyl acetate and n-heptane; and
- (e) recovering the crystalline form of any one of claims 12 to 31;
wherein wt/wt is with respect the starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

123. A crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) produced according to the method of claim 121 or 122.

124. The crystalline form of claim 123, wherein the crystalline form is Form II or Form III of the compound of Formula (III).

125. The process of any one of claims 62 to 122, wherein the (Z)-endoxifen is reacted with D-gluconate or L-Gluconate to form (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate or (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate.

126. The process of any one of claims 62 to 125, wherein the (Z)-endoxifen free base has < 1% impurity.

127. The process of any one of claims 62 to 126, wherein the (Z)-endoxifen free base is stable at ambient temperature for at least 9 months.

128. (Z)-endoxifen, (E)-endoxifen, a compound of Formula (III), a compound of Formula (II), or a salt thereof, prepared by the process of any one of claims 62 to 127.

129. A composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof prepared by the process of any one of claims 62 to 127.

130. The composition of claim 129, wherein the composition is formulated for oral, parenteral, topical, or intraductal delivery.

131. The composition of claim 129 or 130, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery as a tablet, a caplet, a capsule, or a pill.

132. The composition of claim 131, having a mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration.

133. The composition of any one of claims 129 to 132, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule.

134. The composition of any one of claims 129 to 133, wherein the composition is administered to a subject for the treatment or prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both in the subject.

135. An oral composition comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof, for administration to a subject in need thereof, wherein daily administration of the oral composition achieves in the subject:

- (a) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen within 7 to 21 days;
- (b) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen ranging from 25 nM to 300 nM;
- (c) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM;
- (d) maximal plasma levels of endoxifen within 2 to 10 hours after administering;

or

- (e) any combination thereof.

136. The oral composition of claim 135, having a mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject ranging from 40 hours to 55 hours after administration.

137. The oral composition of claim 135 or 136, wherein the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule.

138. The oral composition of claim 133 or 137, wherein at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% endoxifen is released in the intestines.

139. The composition or oral composition of any one of claims 129 to 138, having a mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, of 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, of 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or of 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL.

140. A method of treating a subject in need thereof, the method comprising administering to the subject an oral composition of any one of claims 129 to 139.

141. The method of claim 140, wherein the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

142. The method of claim 141, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

143. The method of claim 141 or 142, wherein the subject has prostate cancer and wherein the subject further has or is at risk of having gynecomastia.

144. The method of any one of claims 141 to 143, wherein the subject has tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder.

145. The method of any one of claims 141 to 144, wherein the subject is or will be treated with an SSRI drug selected from the group consisting of citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, and vilazodone.

146. The method of any one of claims 141 to 145, wherein the subject is administered 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

147. The method of any one of claims 141 to 146, wherein the subject is administered 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen daily.

148. The method of any one of claims 141 to 147, wherein a steady state plasma level of endoxifen in the subject is greater than 30 nM.

149. The method of any one of claims 141 to 148, wherein the steady state plasma level of endoxifen is achieved within 7 to 21 days of the first administration of the composition.

150. The method of any one of claims 141 to 149, wherein time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranges from 2 hours to 10 hours or from 4 hours to 8 hours after administering the composition.

151. A method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder or both, the method comprising administering an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

(a) a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;

(b) a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 4 hours to 8 hours after administration; and

(c) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

152. The method of claim 151, wherein the subject is administered 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

153. The method of claim 151 or 152, wherein the mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) is 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, of 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, of 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or of 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL.

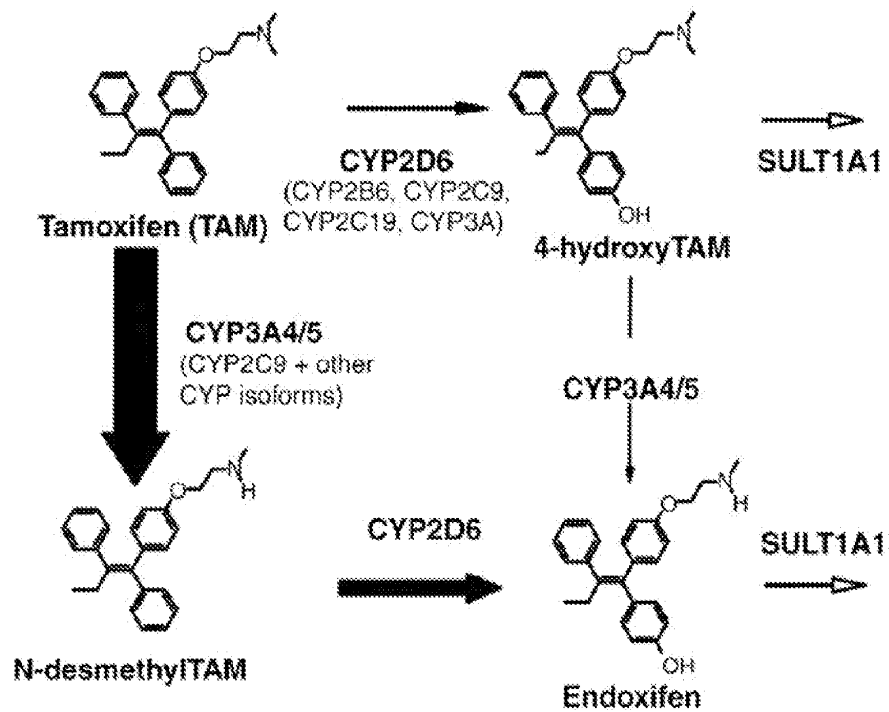
154. The method of any one of claims 151 to 153, wherein the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule.

155. The method of any one of claims 151 to 154, wherein at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% of the endoxifen is released in the intestines.

156. The method of claim 151 or 155, wherein the composition is administered once a day, twice a day, thrice a day, four times a day, every other day, twice a week, weekly, fortnightly, twice a month, monthly, quarterly, once every six months, or annually.

157. The method of any one of claims 151 to 156, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder and the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder are selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer.

Fig. 1



PRIOR ART

Fig. 2

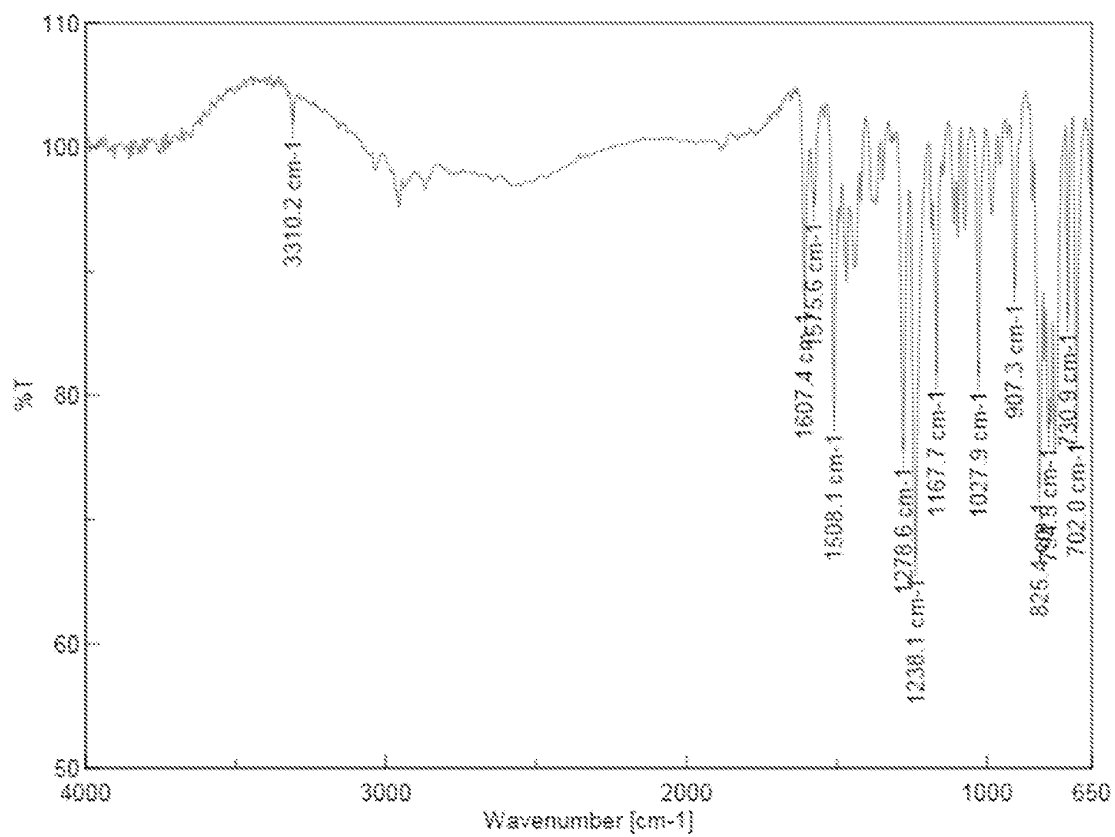


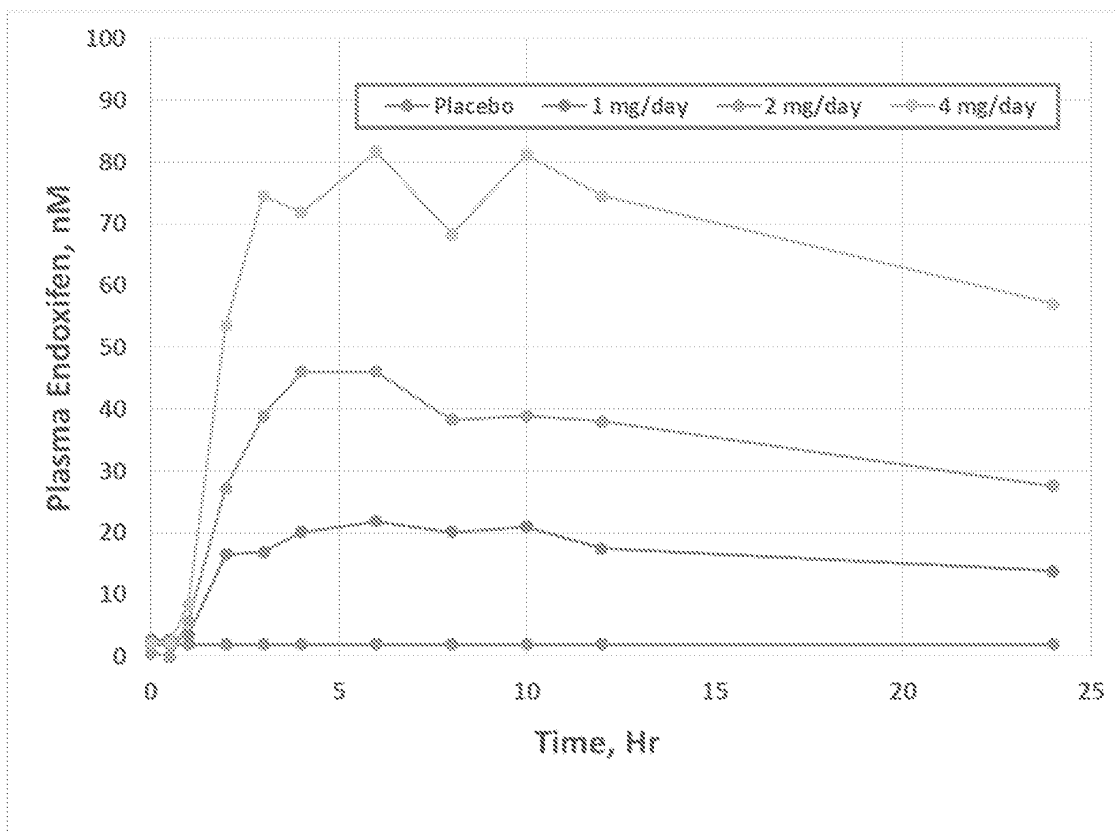
Fig. 3

Fig. 4

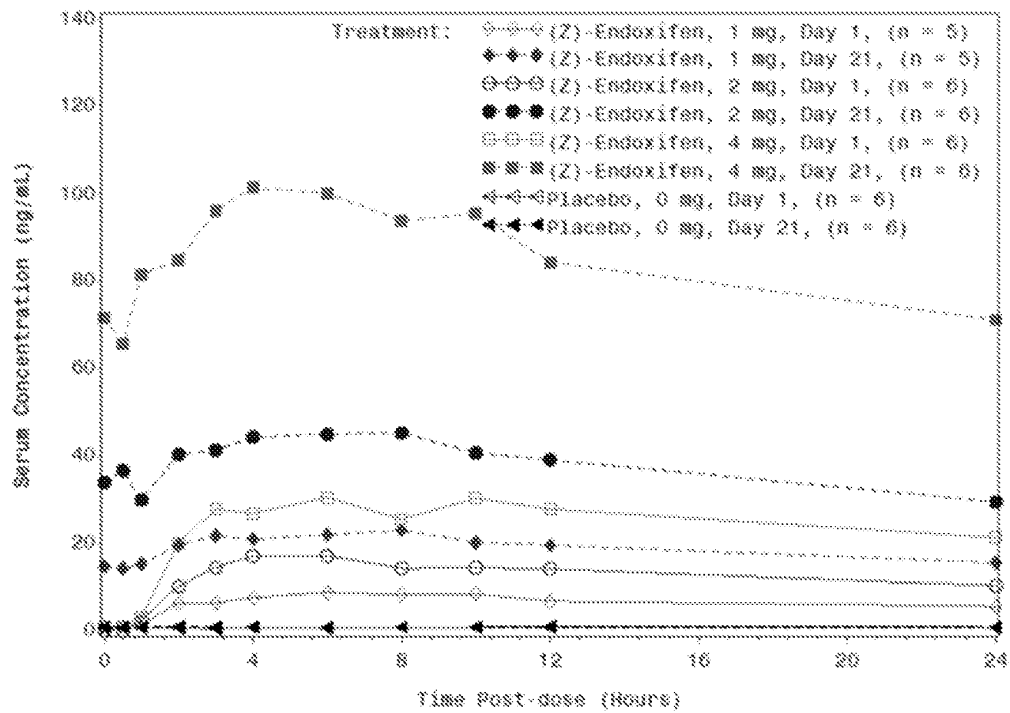


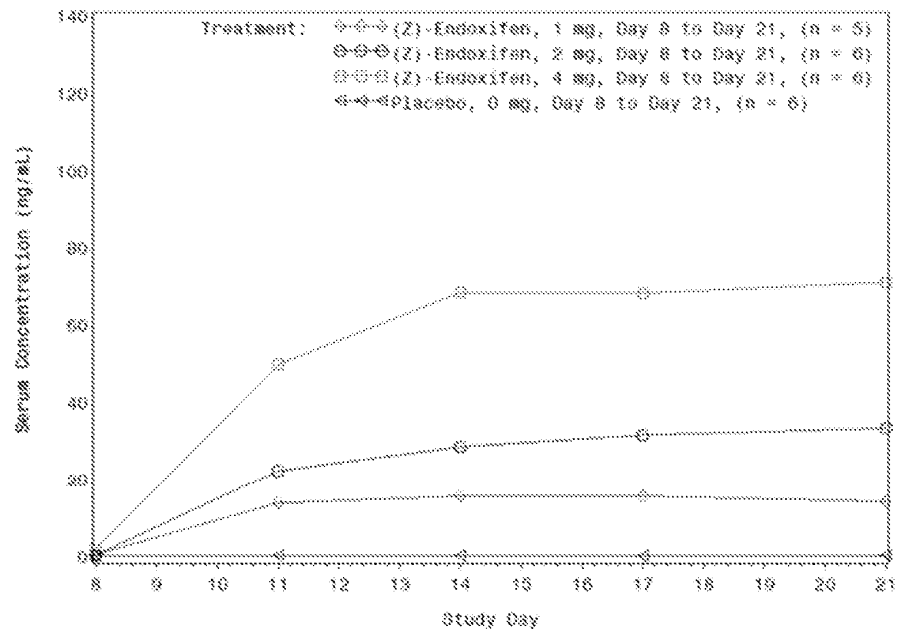
Fig. 5

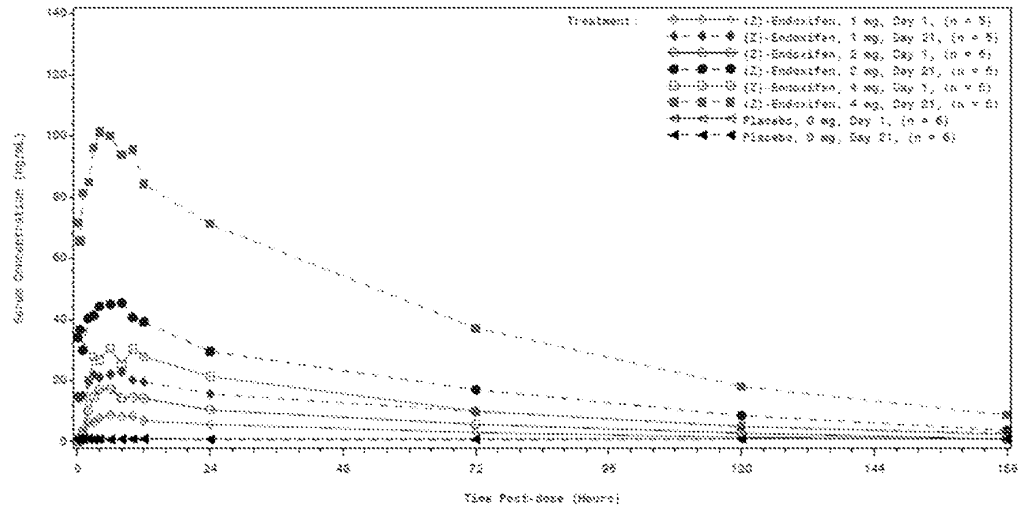
Fig. 6

Fig. 8

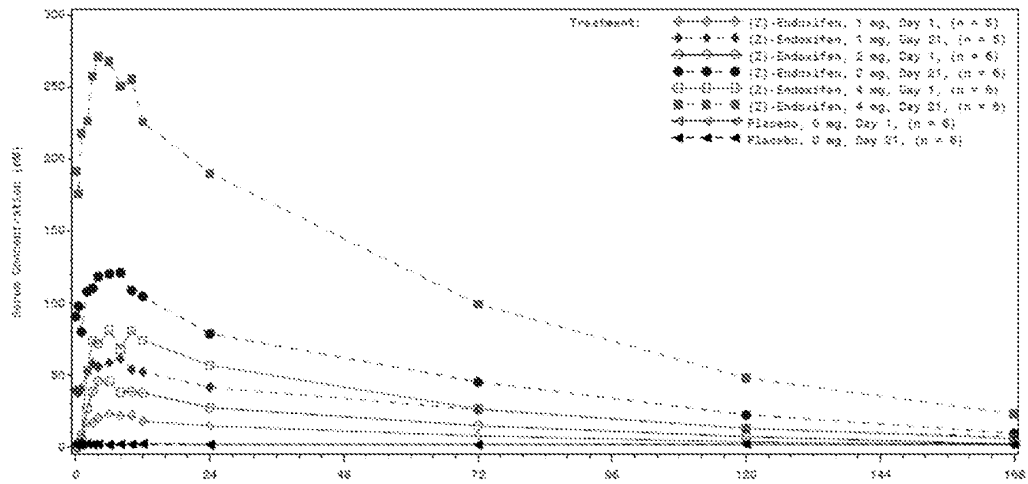


Fig. 9

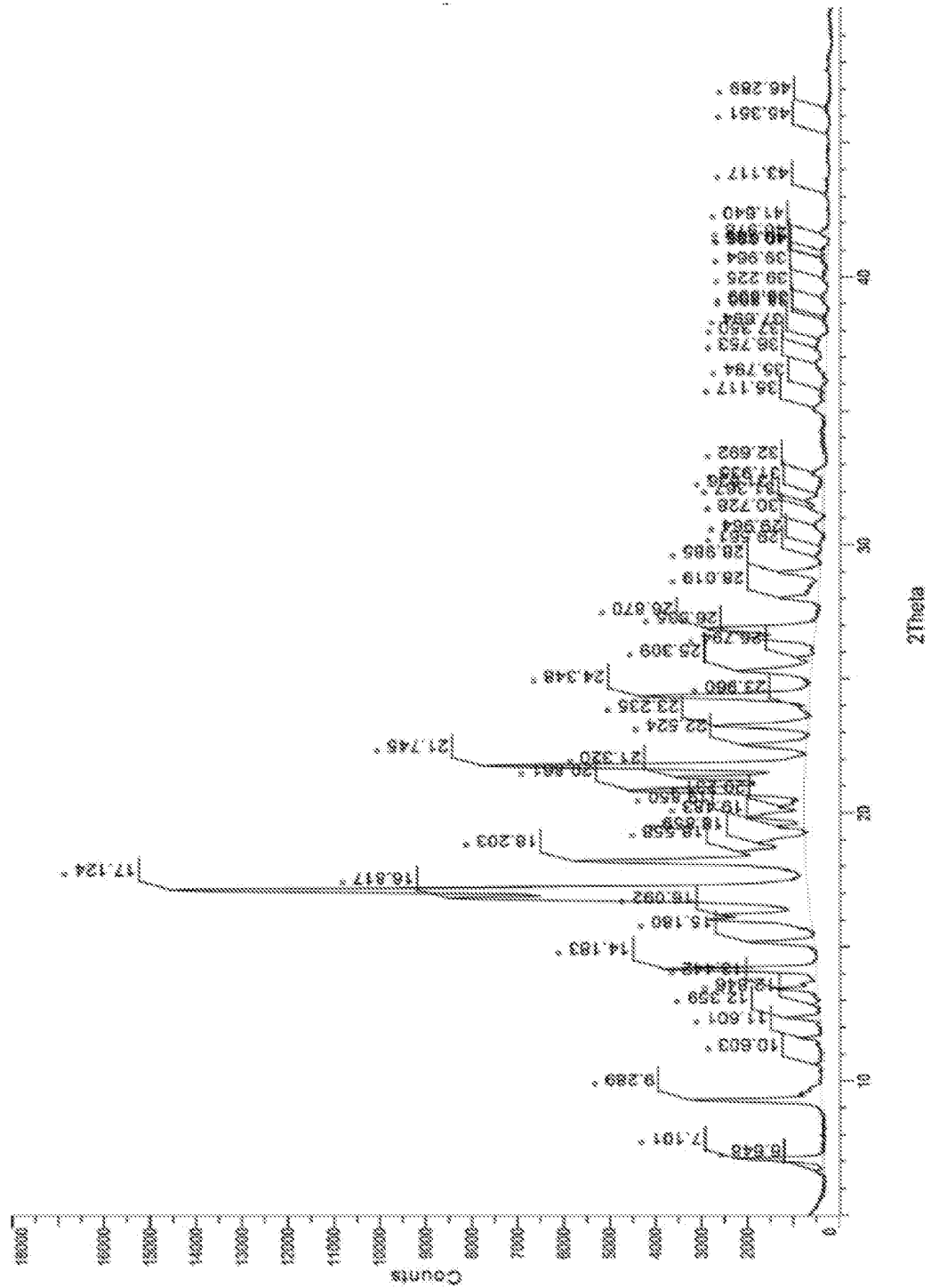


Fig. 10

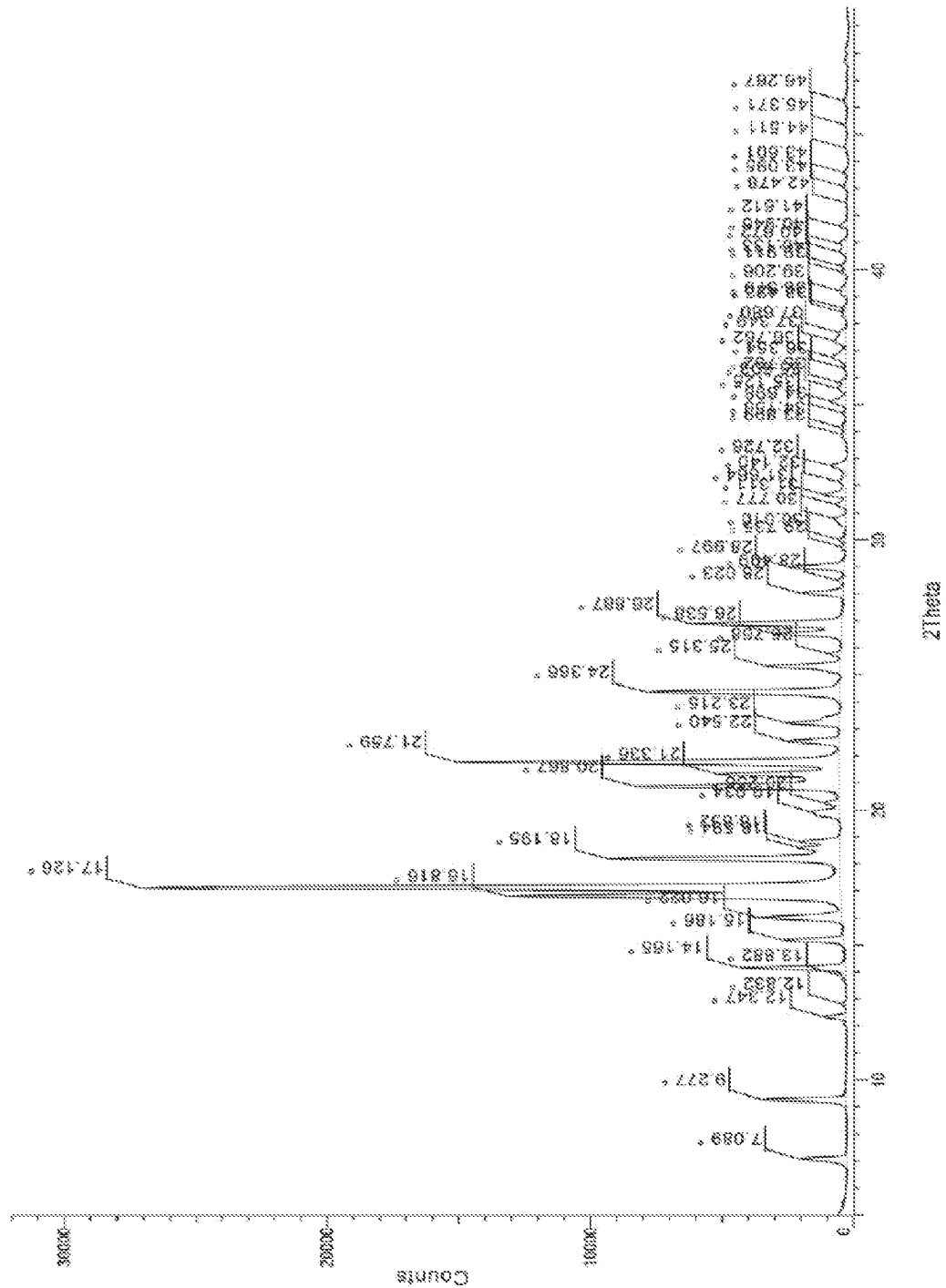


Fig. 11

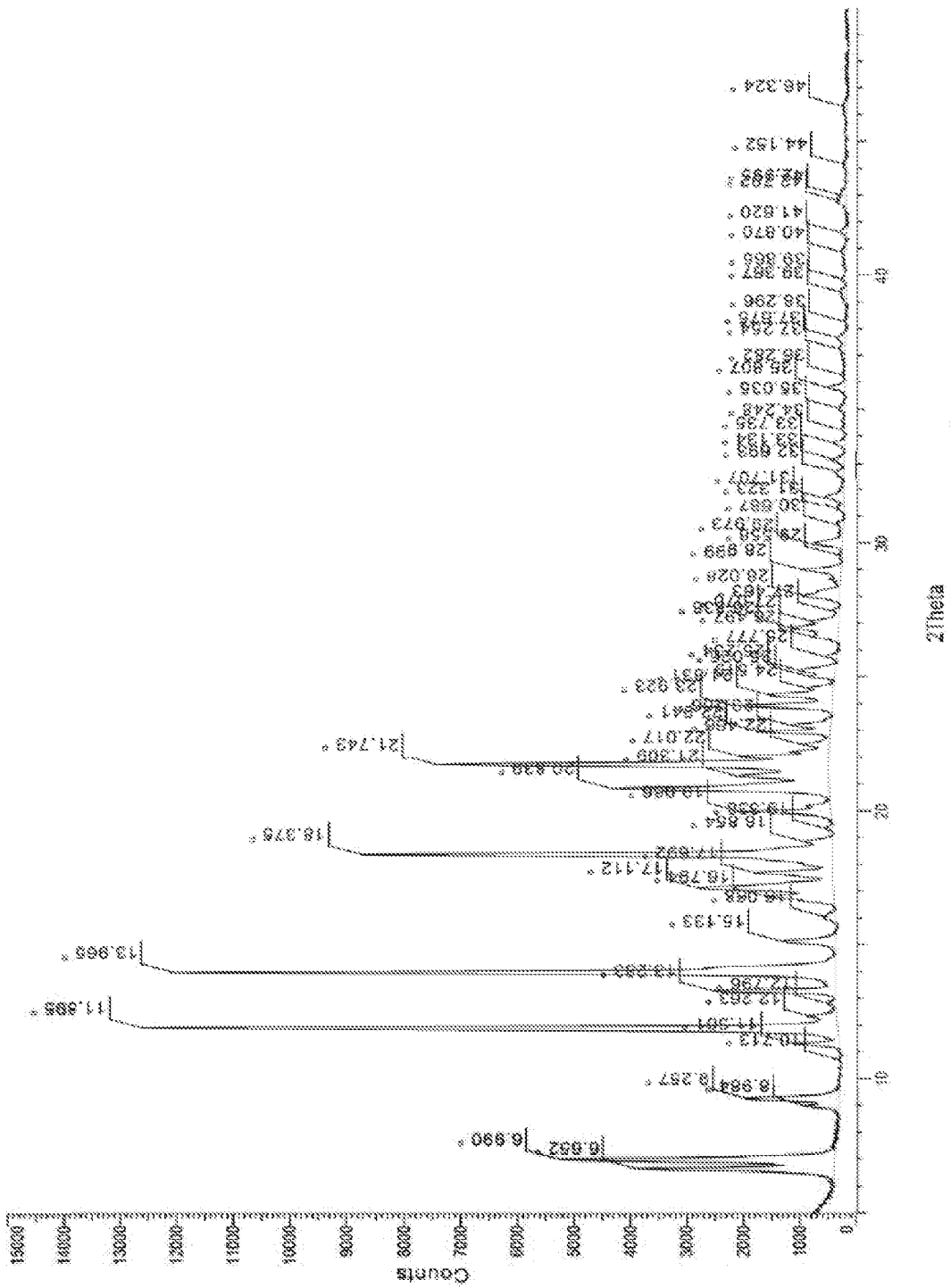
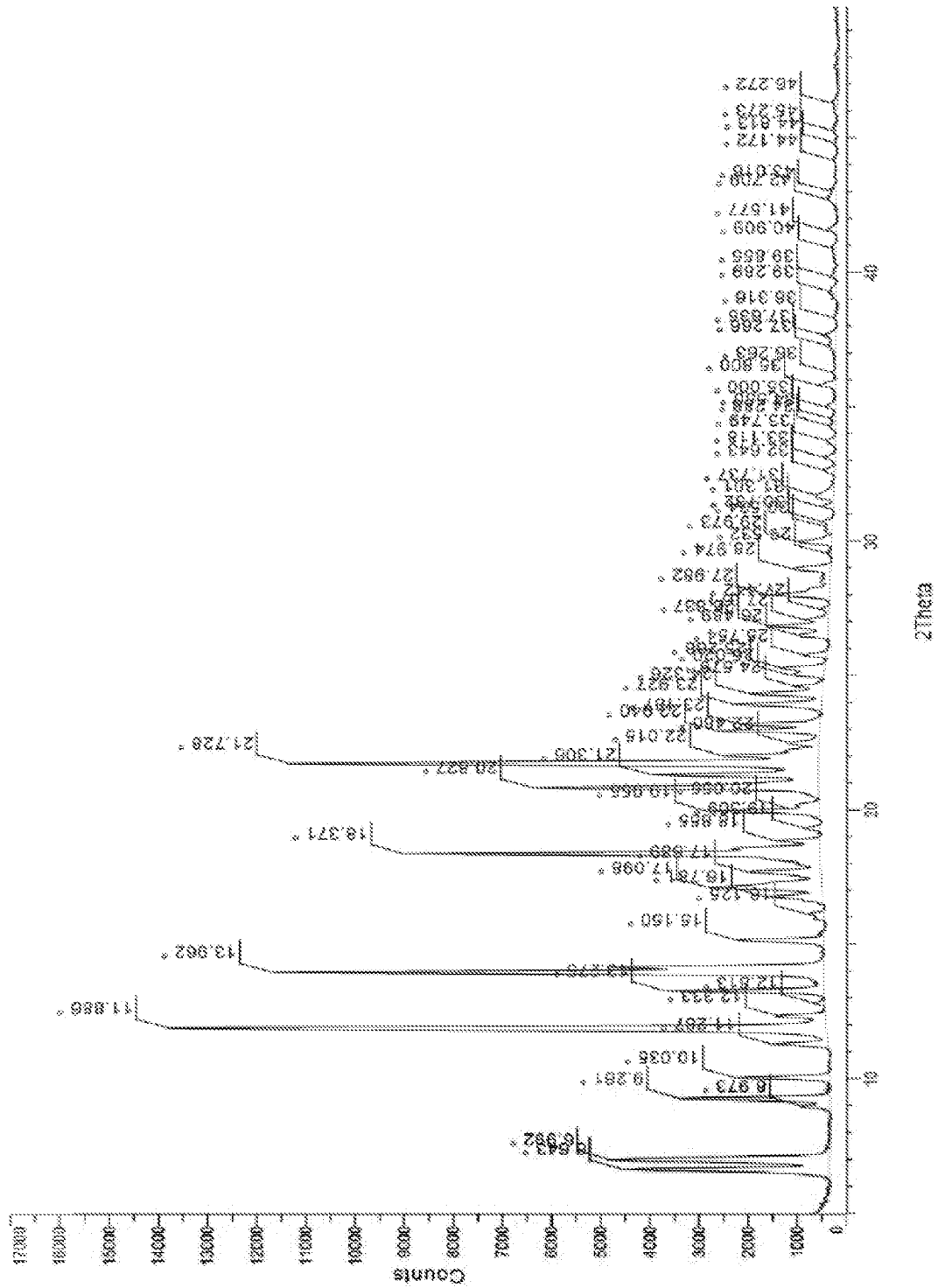
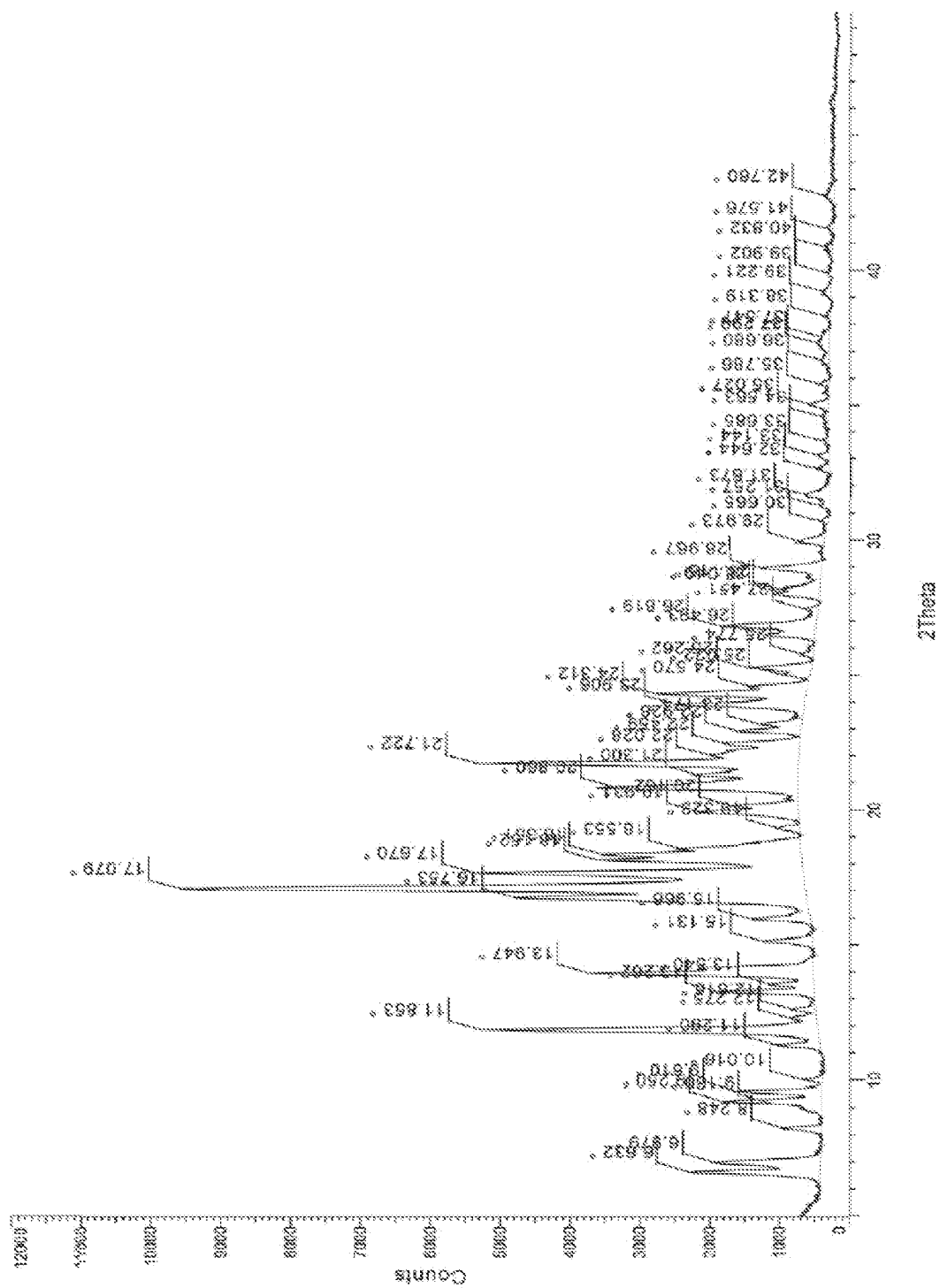


Fig. 12





Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	44794480
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	27148
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Hillary Pratt
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740
Receipt Date:	20-JAN-2022
Filing Date:	
Time Stamp:	18:12:30
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		109559-715740_App_.pdf	1053408	yes	137
			8d2d8edf56b8c1cccbebc8a4bf91ce961799dd5		

	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description				
	Document Description		Start	End	
	Specification		1	117	
	Claims		118	136	
	Abstract		137	137	
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Drawings-other than black and white line drawings	109559-715740_Figures.pdf	2252923	no	13
			b33f65e48a3de9209b78504e2528fa54175a9604		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73	109559-715740_373c_.pdf	135930	no	3
			2c7719feb6f417f60ee35b4317a2b417b974f0d1		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Application Data Sheet	109559-715740_ADS.pdf	2315026	no	10
			28668a4f3977edb2143544771f4d96c9c2d2ce0		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Oath or Declaration filed	109559-715740_Decs.pdf	553023	no	5
			2fb07c65167e11fe37c03e1f29b90a63490e9905		
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Power of Attorney	109559-715740_POA.pdf	137631	no	1
			a67ff5ac0661923a93a088fb599646ca588985d2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			6447941		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

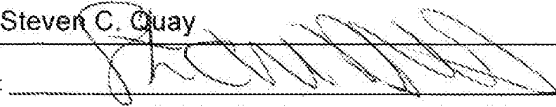
National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that: This declaration is directed to: ☐ The attached application, or ☒ United States application or PCT international application number <u>PCT/US2018/050272</u> filed on <u>September 10, 2018</u> The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me. I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application. I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both. WARNING: Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.	
LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR Inventor: <u>Steven C. Quay</u> Date (Optional): <u>09/27/2018</u> Signature: 	
Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.	

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)Title of
Invention

METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration
is directed to:

The attached application, or

United States application or PCT international application number PCT/US2018/050272filed on September 10, 2018

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTORInventor: YaoLin SunDate (Optional): 2018/09/19Signature: YaoLin Sun

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to: ☐ The attached application, or ☒ United States application or PCT international application number PCT/US2018/050272 filed on September 10, 2018.

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR

Inventor: Lunghu Wang Date (Optional): 2018/09/19

Signature: Lunghu Wang

Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

This declaration is directed to: ☐ The attached application, or ☒ United States application or PCT international application number PCT/US2018/050272 filed on September 10, 2018

The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me.

I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application.

I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both.

WARNING:

Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.

LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR	
Inventor: <u>ChangJung Wu</u>	Date (Optional): <u>2018/09/19</u>
Signature: <u>ChangJung Wu</u>	

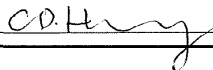
Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)

Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that: This declaration is directed to: ☐ The attached application, or ☒ United States application or PCT international application number <u>PCT/US2018/050272</u> filed on <u>September 10, 2018</u>. The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me. I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application. I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both. WARNING: Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available.	
LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR Inventor: <u>ChuanDer Huang</u> Date (Optional): <u>2018/09/25</u> Signature: <u></u>	
Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.	

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c).

I hereby appoint:

☒ Practitioners associated with Customer Number: 27148

OR

☐ Practitioner(s) named below (if more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number

Name	Registration Number

As attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignment documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(c).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) to:

☒ The address associated with Customer Number: 27148

OR

☐	Firm or individual name		
	Address		
	City	State	Zip
	Country		
	Telephone		Email

Assignee name and address: Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.
107 Spring Street
Seattle, WA 98104

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) (Form PTO/AIA/96 or equivalent) is required to be filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) may be completed by one of the practitioners appointed in this form, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record

The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

Signature <i>Kyle Guse</i>	Date <i>9/24/2020</i>
Name Kyle Guse	Telephone
Title Chief Financial Officer and General Counsel	

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32, and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to update (and by the USPTO to process) the file of a patent or reexamination proceeding. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 18 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

Applicant/Patent Owner: Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.

Application No./Patent No.: Herewith Filed/Issue Date: Concurrently herewith

Titled: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., a corporation

(Name of Assignee)

(Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose one of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. ☒ The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.
2. ☐ An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):
- ☐ The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is ____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for 100% of the ownership interest.
- ☐ There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. ☐ The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. ☐ The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (e.g., bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose one of options A or B below):

- A. ☐ An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

- B. ☒ A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

1. From: YAOLIN SUN, LUNGHU WANG, CHANGJUNG WU, CHUANDE HUANG To: KRISAN BIOTECH CO., LTD.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel 058198, Frame 0680, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

2. From: STEVEN C. QUAY To: ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel 058198, Frame 0968, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

[Page 1 of 2]

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: YAOLIN SUN, LUNGHU WANG, CHANGJUNG WU To: KRISAN BIOTECH CO., LTD.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel 058198, Frame 0901, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: KIRSAN BIOTECH CO., LTD. To: ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel 058199, Frame 0053, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: KRISAN BIOTECH CO., LTD. To: ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel 058539, Frame 0071, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

☐ Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

☒ As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

/Lisa G Lippert/

January 20, 2022

Signature

Date

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.

78,332

Printed or Typed Name

Title or Registration Number

Privacy Act Statement

The **Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (*i.e.*, GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

PATENT APPLICATION
METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Inventors: Steven C. Quay,
Citizen of the United States, Residing in
Seattle, Washington

Yao-Lin Sun,
Citizen of Taiwan, Residing in
Tainan City, Taiwan

LungHu Wang,
Citizen of Taiwan, Residing in
Kaohsiung City, Taiwan

ChangJung Wu,
Citizen of Taiwan, Residing in
Kaohsiung City, Taiwan

ChuanDer Huang,
Citizen of Taiwan, Residing in
Tainan City, Taiwan

Assignee: Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.
107 Spring Street
Seattle, Washington 98104

Entity: Small business concern



1000 Second Ave., Suite 3500
Seattle, WA 98104
(206) 393-5400
Facsimile: (206) 393-5401 Fax
polsinelli.com

Filed Electronically on: January 20, 2022

METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

CROSS-REFERENCE

[0001] This application is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application No. 16/641,985, filed February 25, 2020, which is a U.S. National Phase Application under 35 U.S.C. § 371 of International Application No. PCT/US2018/050272, filed September 10, 2018, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/556,799, filed September 11, 2017; U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/556,884, filed September 11, 2017; U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/624,787, filed January 31, 2018; and U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/693,885, filed July 3, 2018, each incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[0002] Breast cancer is by far the most common form of cancer in women, and it is the second leading cause of cancer death in humans. Despite advances in diagnosing and treating breast cancer, the prevalence of this disease has been steadily rising at a rate of about 1% per year since 1940. Today, the likelihood that a woman living in North America will develop breast cancer during her lifetime is one in eight. In addition to breast cancers, other breast disorders affecting a large number of women include benign but often precancerous lesions, such as ductal hyperplasia, lobular hyperplasia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, and atypical lobular hyperplasia.

[0003] Current best practice for the treatment of breast cancer is to diagnose breast cancer with mammography and then treat the patient with surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy. The current widespread use of mammography has resulted in improved detection of breast cancer. Although breast cancer is about 100 times less common among men than among women, the lifetime risk of men getting breast cancer is about 1 in 1,000. About 2,470 new cases of invasive breast cancer will be diagnosed in men and about 460 men will die from breast cancer. American Cancer Society estimates that in 2017, 255,180 new cases of breast cancer will be diagnosed in both men and women combined and 41,070 subjects will die of breast cancer. Nonetheless, the death rate due to breast cancer has remained relatively unchanged at about 21 deaths per 100,000 women and 0.4 deaths per 100,000 men. All too often, breast cancer is discovered at a stage that is too far advanced, when therapeutic options and survival rates are severely limited.

[0004] Breast cancers include any malignant tumor of breast cells. There are several types of breast cancer. Exemplary breast cancers include, but are not limited to, ductal carcinoma in situ, lobular carcinoma in situ, invasive (or infiltrating) ductal carcinoma, invasive (or infiltrating) lobular carcinoma, inflammatory breast cancer, triple-negative breast cancer, ER+ breast cancer, HER2+

breast cancer, adenoid cystic (or adenocystic) carcinoma, low-grade adenosquamous carcinoma, medullary carcinoma, mucinous (or colloid) carcinoma, papillary carcinoma, tubular carcinoma, metaplastic carcinoma, and micropapillary carcinoma. A single breast tumor can be a combination of these types or be a mixture of invasive and in situ cancer.

[0005] Tamoxifen is a selective estrogen receptor modulator that is used for the treatment of women with endocrine responsive breast cancer, i.e., hormone-dependent or hormone-sensitive breast cancer. Adjuvant therapy primarily via oral delivery of tamoxifen is known to have severe side effects such as vasomotor symptoms, for example hot flashes, and reproductive tract (gynecologic) cancers. Patient compliance remains a problem with tamoxifen therapy. Further, the majority of the individuals on adjuvant tamoxifen therapy do not respond to the drug and 30 – 50% of the patients subsequently die of their disease.

[0006] Several cytochrome P450 (CYP) mutations have been proposed to cause reduced conversion of tamoxifen to its active metabolite, endoxifen, and reduce tamoxifen efficacy and increase resistance to the drug (Dicksen et al. *Front Pharmacol.* 2012; 3: 92. PMID: PMC3357105). So far, over 140 allelic variants of CYP2D6 have been described and a substantial part of these are associated with reduced or absent activity of the encoded enzyme. Based on the combination of the carried alleles, each individual subject can be classified into one of four phenotypic groups: poor metabolizer (PM) with plasma endoxifen levels less than 30 nM, intermediate metabolizer (IM), extensive metabolizer (EM) and ultra-rapid metabolizer (UM), reflecting variations in levels of serum endoxifen. However, changes in the CYP genotype do not fully explain the tamoxifen resistance and the reduced endoxifen levels observed in some subjects.

[0007] Therefore, several alternatives to tamoxifen are being developed for the treatment of breast cancer, which include low dose-tamoxifen (Lazzeroni M et al. *Breast Cancer Res.* 2012 Oct 29;14(5):214) and tamoxifen's active metabolites, afimoxifene (*see*, U.S. Patent Nos. 7,485,623; 7,507,769; 7,704,516; 7,786,172; 7,968,532; and 8,048,927; Mansel R et al. *Breast Cancer Res Treat.* 2007 Dec;106(3):389-97. PubMed PMID: 17351746; Rouanet P et al. *J ClinOncol.* 2005 May 1;23(13):2980-7. PubMed PMID: 15860853), endoxifen (*see*, US9333190; U.S. Patent Nos. 9,220,680; 9,090,640; and 9,200,045; U.S. Publication Nos. 2009/0291134 and US20100112041), and their derivatives (*see*, U.S. Patent Nos. 8,063,249; U.S. Publication Nos. 2015/0080339 and 2014/0193334). It is widely accepted that (Z)-endoxifen is the main active metabolite responsible for the clinical efficacy of tamoxifen.

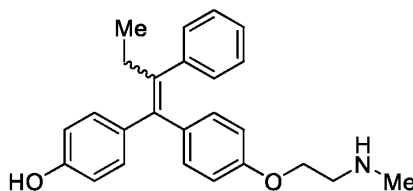
[0008] While hydrochloride and citrate salts of endoxifen (*See, e.g.,* Fauq *et al.*, *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters.* 20 (2010) 3036 – 3038; Stearns *et al.*, *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* Vol 95, No.

23, 2003; US Publication Nos. 2009/0291134 and 2010/0112041; Clinical Trials Gov. Identifier Nos. NCT01273168 and NCT02311933; Goetz et al., 2015, San Antonio Cancer Symposium; Ahmad *et al.*, Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics. 88(6) 814-817, 2010; and J Clin. Oncol. 30, 2012 (suppl; abstr 3089); Ahmad et al. Breast Cancer Research and Treatment 2010, 122, 579-584) are known in the art and currently under evaluation for metastatic cancer, there remains unmet medical need for new compositions and methods for the treatment and/or prevention of hormone-dependent breast and reproductive tract (gynecologic) disorders.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0009] The present disclosure addresses this need by providing compositions and methods for the treatment and/or prevention of hormone-dependent breast and reproductive tract (gynecologic) disorders. In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides novel industrially scalable methods of making Z-endoxifen or salts thereof, crystalline forms of endoxifen, and compositions comprising them. In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides novel crystalline forms of endoxifen which may provide advantages including improved bioavailability and stability relative to other crystalline or amorphous forms.

[0010] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides a composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III):



Formula (III).

[0011] In some embodiments, at least 90% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition is the (Z)-isomer. In some embodiments, the crystalline form is Form I of the compound of Formula (III). Crystalline Form I may be characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and optionally further comprising at least one peak selected from $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern may further comprise peaks at $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, crystalline Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern substantially as set forth in **Fig. 9** or **Fig. 10**. Greater than 90%, 95% or

99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition may be crystalline Form I. In some embodiments, the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of crystalline Form I, such as about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of crystalline Form I.

[0012] In some embodiments, the composition comprises the (E)-isomer and the (Z)-isomer of the compound of Formula (III) in an E/Z ratio between 0.9 and 1.3, such as about 1.1. In some embodiments, the crystalline form is Form II of the compound of Formula (III). Crystalline Form II may be characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and optionally further comprising a peak at $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern may further comprise peaks at $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, crystalline Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern substantially as set forth in **Fig. 11** or **Fig. 12**. Greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition may be crystalline Form II. In some embodiments, the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of crystalline Form II, such as about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of crystalline Form II.

[0013] In some embodiments, the composition comprises the (E)-isomer and the (Z)-isomer of the compound of Formula (III) in an E/Z ratio between 0.9 and 1.3, such as about 1.1. In some embodiments, the crystalline form is Form III of the compound of Formula (III). Crystalline Form III may be characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and optionally further comprising a peak at $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, the x-ray powder diffraction pattern further comprises at least one peak selected from $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern may further comprise peaks at $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, crystalline Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern substantially as set forth in **Fig. 13**. Greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition may be crystalline Form III. In some embodiments, the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of crystalline Form III, such as about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of crystalline Form III.

[0014] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent and the composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III). A composition of the present disclosure may be formulated for oral, parenteral, topical, or intraductal delivery. In some embodiments, the composition is formulated for

oral delivery as a tablet, a caplet, a capsule, or a pill. In some embodiments, a mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject treated with the composition is between 30 hours to 60 hours. A composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) may be formulated for oral delivery as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule. In some embodiments, the composition is administered to a subject for the treatment or prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both in the subject.

[0015] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides an oral composition comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of the composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) for administration to a subject in need thereof, wherein daily administration of the oral composition achieves in the subject:

- a steady state plasma level of endoxifen within 7 to 21 days;
- a steady state plasma level of endoxifen ranging from 25 nM to 300 nM;
- a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM;
- maximal plasma levels of endoxifen within 2 to 10 hours after administering; or
- any combination thereof.

[0016] In some embodiments, a mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject treated with the composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) is between 40 hours to 55 hours. In some embodiments, the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule. In some embodiments, at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% of endoxifen in the composition is released in the intestines. In some embodiments, the composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) exhibits a mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of endoxifen of 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, of 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, of 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or of 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL.

[0017] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides a method of treating a subject in need thereof, the method comprising administering to the subject the composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III). In some embodiments, the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both. The hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder may be a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty,

McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer. In some embodiments, the subject has prostate cancer and has or is at risk of having gynecomastia. The subject may have tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder. In some embodiments, the subject is or will be treated with an SSRI drug selected from the group consisting of citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, and vilazodone.

[0018] In practicing any of the subject methods, the composition may comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. In some embodiments, the subject is administered about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen daily. In some embodiments, a steady state plasma level of endoxifen in the subject is greater than 30 nM. The steady state plasma level of endoxifen may be achieved within 7 to 21 days of the first administration of the composition. In some embodiments, time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranges from 2 hours to 10 hours or from 4 hours to 8 hours after administering the composition.

[0019] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising administering the composition comprising a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III), wherein administration of the composition achieves:

a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;

a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 4 hours to 8 hours after administration; and

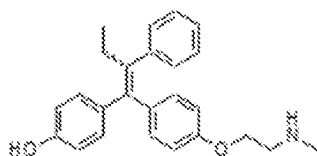
a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

[0020] In some embodiments, the hormone-dependent breast disorder and the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder are selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer.

[0021] In practicing any of the subject methods, the composition may comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. In some embodiments, the subject is administered about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. The mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of endoxifen may be 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL. In some

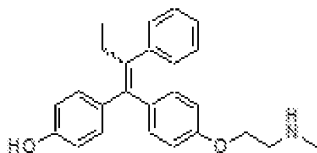
embodiments, the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule. In some embodiments, at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% of endoxifen in the composition is released in the intestines. The composition may be administered once a day, twice a day, thrice a day, four times a day, every other day, twice a week, weekly, fortnightly, twice a month, monthly, quarterly, once every six months, or annually.

[0022] In one aspect, the present disclosure provides an industrially scalable process for manufacturing (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof, comprising the steps of: (a) subjecting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), represented by



to fractional crystallization from a first solvent to form a first crystalline solid and first crystalline mother liquor, wherein the first mother liquor has an E/Z ratio of at least 50% higher (Z) endoxifen as compared with the E/Z ratio of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; (b) subjecting the first mother liquor to recrystallization from a second solvent by concentrating the first mother liquor or by swapping out the first solvent from the first mother liquor one or more times with the second solvent, to form a second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor, wherein the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen; and (c) optionally, subjecting the second crystalline solid to recrystallization from a third solvent or chromatographic treatment one or more times to form a third crystalline solid. In some embodiments, any one or more of the first solvent, the second solvent, and the third solvent are preheated to a temperature ranging from 40 °C to 80 °C.

[0023] In some aspects, the present disclosure provides an industrially scalable process for manufacturing crystalline Form I of the compound of Formula (III), comprising the steps of (a) subjecting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), represented by



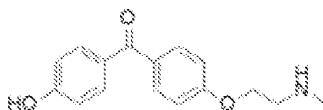
to fractional crystallization from a first solvent to form a first crystalline solid and first mother liquor, wherein the first mother liquor has an E/Z ratio of at least 50% higher (Z) endoxifen as

compared with the E/Z ratio of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; (b) subjecting the first mother liquor to recrystallization from a second solvent by concentrating the first mother liquor or by swapping out the first solvent from the first mother liquor with the second solvent one or more times, to form a second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor, wherein the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen; and (c) subjecting the second crystalline solid to recrystallization from a third solvent or chromatographic treatment one or more times to form a third crystalline solid, wherein the third crystalline solid is crystalline Form I of the compound of Formula (III).

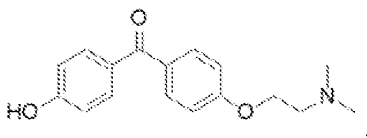
[0024] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides a crystalline form of a compound of Formula (III) produced according to a method described herein. In some embodiments, the crystalline form is Form I of the compound of Formula (III). In some embodiments, the crystalline form is Form II of the compound of Formula (III). In some embodiments, the crystalline form is Form III of the compound of Formula (III).

[0025] In another aspect, the present disclosure provides that the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), in step a is pretreated with 6N HCl and neutralized with 8N NaOH.

[0026] In another aspect, the industrially scalable process further comprises preparing the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen by coupling the compound of Formula (II), (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl) methanone, to propiophenone mediated by a McMurry reaction via a titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; and wherein the compound of Formula (II) has a structure represented by

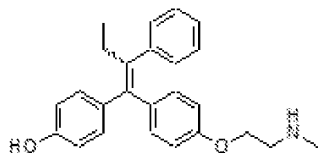


[0027] In yet another aspect, the industrially scalable process further comprises preparing the compound of Formula (II) by demethylating [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (I), wherein the compound of Formula (I) has the structure



with a demethylating agent and a proton acceptor in an inert organic solvent to form the compound of Formula (II).

[0028] The present disclosure also provides an industrially scalable process for manufacturing (Z)-endoxifen and salts thereof, comprising the steps of: (a) subjecting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III) represented by



to fractional crystallization from ethyl acetate to form a first crystalline solid and first crystalline mother liquor, wherein the first mother liquor has an E/Z ratio of at least 30% higher (Z) endoxifen as compared with the E/Z ratio of the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; (b) subjecting the first mother liquor to recrystallization from IPA or IPA/PPW (1:1 v/v) by concentrating the first mother liquor, or by swapping out ethyl acetate from the first mother liquor one or more times with IPA or IPA/PPW, to form a second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor, wherein the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen; and (b) optionally, subjecting the second crystalline solid to recrystallization from ethanol or column chromatographic treatment one or more times to form a third crystalline solid.

[0029] In some embodiments, the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), is prepared by coupling the compound of Formula (II), (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl) methanone, to propiophenone mediated by a McMurry reaction comprising the steps of: (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone (1:0.01 to 1.5 wt/wt) in an inert organic solvent (1:1 to 1: 20 wt/wt); (b) preparing a titanium salt (1:0.1 to 1:12 wt/wt) and a reducing agent (1:0.01 to 1:10 wt/wt) in an inert organic solvent (1:1 to 1: 20 wt/wt); and (c) reacting the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with the titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent of step (b) to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; and wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

[0030] In other embodiments, the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), is prepared by coupling the compound of Formula (II), (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl) methanone, to propiophenone mediated by a McMurry reaction comprising the steps of: (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone (1:0.01 to 1:5 wt/wt) in THF (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt); (b) preparing a TiCl_4 (0.1 to 4 wt/wt) and Zn (0.01 to 1:2 wt/wt) in THF (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt; and (c) reacting the compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with the

TiCl₄ and Zn in THF of step (b) to form the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; and wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

[0031] In some embodiments, the compound of Formula (II) is generated by demethylating the compound of Formula (I) with a demethylating agent (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt) and a proton acceptor (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt) in an inert organic solvent (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt) to form a compound of Formula (II), wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I).

[0032] In some embodiments, the compound of Formula (II) is prepared by demethylating the compound of Formula (I) with 1-chloroethyl chloroformate and DIPEA in THF to form the compound of Formula (II) comprising the steps of: (a) reacting the compound of Formula (I) with DIPEA (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt) in THF (1:20 wt/wt); (b) adding 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt); (c) distilling with methanol one or more times (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); (e) reacting with methanol (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt)/HCl (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); and (e) neutralizing with NaOH (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); and wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I).

[0033] In another aspect, the present disclosure provides process for making (Z)-endoxifen gluconate salts by reacting (Z)-endoxifen with D-gluconate or L-Gluconate to form (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate or (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate.

[0034] In still another aspect, the present disclosure provides that (Z)-endoxifen, (E)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), the compound of Formula (II), and salts thereof prepared by any of the processes as described herein are stable. In a particular aspect, the (Z)-endoxifen free base is stable at ambient temperature for at least 9 months.

[0035] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides an industrially scalable process for manufacturing crystalline Form II or III of the compound of Formula (III), comprising (a) reacting to 6N HCL (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) in ethyl acetate (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt) a starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen having an E/Z-ratio ranging from 99:1 to 40:60; (b) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt); (c) washing one or more times with ethyl acetate; (d) washing one or more times with a mixture of ethyl acetate and n-heptane; and (e) recovering crystalline Form II or III of the compound of Formula (III); wherein wt/wt is with respect the starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen.

[0036] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof prepared according to any of the processes described herein. The compositions are formulated for oral, parenteral, topical, and intraductal delivery. The compositions are formulated for oral delivery as tablets, caplets, capsules, or pills. In some embodiments, the compositions are formulated for oral delivery tablet as enteric tablets, enteric

caplets, enteric capsules, delayed-release tablets, delayed-release caplets, and delayed-release capsules.

[0037] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides compositions having certain pharmacokinetic profiles. In one aspect, the present disclosure provides that at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, at least 90% of the endoxifen in the compositions is released in intestines. In another aspect, the present disclosure provides that the endoxifen in the compositions has a mean half-life of in a subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration. In some embodiments, the mean half-life of endoxifen in a subject ranges from 40 hours to 55 hours after administration. In another aspect, the present disclosure provides that the mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, of 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, of 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or of 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL.

[0038] In another aspect, the present disclosure provides oral compositions comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof, for administration to a subject in need thereof, wherein daily administration of the oral composition achieves in the subject: (i) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen within 7 to 21 days; or (ii) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen ranging from 25 nM to 300 nM; or (iii) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM; or (iv) maximal plasma levels of endoxifen within 2 to 10 hours after administering; or (v) any combination thereof. The present disclosure also provides that the compositions are administered to a subject in need thereof for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both in a subject.

[0039] In certain aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of treating a subject in need thereof, the method comprising administering to the subject an oral composition as disclosed herein. In some embodiments, the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both. In various embodiments, the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

[0040] In some embodiments, the subject has prostate cancer and wherein the subject further has or is at risk of having gynecomastia.

[0041] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides certain patient populations that would benefit from such methods of treatment. In some embodiments, the patient population is a tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant population. In certain embodiments, the subject has tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder. In other embodiments, the patient population comprises subjects that are or will be treated with an SSRI drug selected from the group consisting of citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, and vilazodone.

[0042] In an aspect, the present disclosure provides certain doses of (Z)-endoxifen to be administered to subjects in need thereof. In various embodiments, the subjects are administered 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. In certain embodiments, the subject is administered 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen daily.

[0043] In another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of treatment of subjects, wherein a steady state plasma level of endoxifen in of the subject is greater than 30 nM upon administration of the compositions. In some embodiments, such a steady state plasma level of endoxifen is achieved within 7 to 21 days of the first administration of the composition. In some embodiments, the time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranges from 2 hours to 10 hours or from 4 hours to 8 hours after administering the composition.

[0044] In another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising administering an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof, wherein administration of the composition achieves: (i) a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration; (ii) a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 4 hours to 8 hours after administration; and (iii) a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM. In certain embodiments, the subject is administered 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. In other embodiments, the mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) of 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, of 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, of 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or of 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL. In some embodiments, the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet or a delayed-release capsule. In some embodiments, at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, at least 90% of the endoxifen is released in intestines. In some embodiments, the composition is administered once a day, twice a day, thrice a day, four times a day, every other day, twice a week, weekly, fortnightly, twice a month, monthly, quarterly, once every six months, or

annually. In some embodiments, the hormone-dependent breast disorder and the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder are selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer.

INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

[0045] All publications, patents, and patent applications mentioned in this specification are herein incorporated by reference to the same extent as if each individual publication, patent, or patent application was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[0046] The novel features of the invention are set forth with particularity in the appended claims. A better understanding of the features and advantages of the present invention will be obtained by reference to the following detailed description that sets forth illustrative embodiments, in which the principles of the invention are utilized, and the accompanying drawings of which:

[0047] Fig. 1 is a scheme depicting the metabolic route of tamoxifen to endoxifen and other metabolites. The plasma concentrations of 4-hydroxytamoxifen are low relative to those of N-desmethyl tamoxifen, indicating that the primary route for metabolism of the parent drug is via N-demethylation by cytochrome P450 3A4 (CYP3A4) to N-desmethyl tamoxifen, followed by hydroxylation by cytochrome P450 2D6 (CYP2D6) to endoxifen.

[0048] Fig. 2 is a representative infrared spectrum of (Z)-endoxifen free base prepared using methods disclosed herein.

[0049] Fig. 3 shows the time to maximum serum levels (nM) of endoxifen following treatment with placebo or 1 mg, 2 mg or 4 mg endoxifen capsules.

[0050] Fig. 4 shows the time to maximum serum levels of endoxifen following treatment with placebo or 1 mg, 2 mg or 4 mg endoxifen capsules at day 1 and day 21. The time post-dose (hours) is plotted on the X-axis and mean serum concentration (ng/mL) is plotted on the Y-axis.

[0051] Fig. 5 shows the time to achieve steady state serum levels of endoxifen following treatment with placebo or 1 mg, 2 mg or 4 mg endoxifen capsules from day 0 (day 0 refers to day 8 on the X-axis) to day 21. The X-axis is time in days (Day 8 to Day 21) and the Y-axis is mean serum concentration in ng/mL. Blood was drawn on each day from day 0 to the end of the clinical trial period. Subjects were dosed on day 1 and plasma endoxifen levels were measured as shown in

Table 17. Subjects were subsequently dosed daily starting on day 8 (labeled day 8 in **Fig. 5**) until the end of study period.

[0052] Fig. 6 shows mean serum concentrations (ng/mL) over time following treatment with placebo or 1 mg, 2 mg or 4 mg endoxifen capsules at day 1 and day 21 (Linear).

[0053] Fig. 7 shows mean serum concentrations (ng/mL) over time following treatment with placebo or 1 mg, 2 mg or 4 mg endoxifen capsules at day 1 and day 21 (Semi-log).

[0054] Fig. 8 shows mean serum concentrations (nM) over time following treatment with placebo or 1 mg, 2 mg or 4 mg endoxifen capsules at day 1 and day 21 (Linear).

[0055] Fig. 9 is an XRPD pattern obtained from a sample of Form I of the compound of Formula (III).

[0056] Fig. 10 is an XRPD pattern obtained from a sample of Form I of the compound of Formula (III).

[0057] Fig. 11 is an XRPD pattern obtained from a sample of Form II of the compound of Formula (III).

[0058] Fig. 12 is an XRPD pattern obtained from a sample of Form II of the compound of Formula (III).

[0059] Fig. 13 is an XRPD pattern obtained from a sample of Form III of the compound of Formula (III).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0060] Compounds are described using standard nomenclature. Unless otherwise defined, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as is commonly understood by one of skill in the art to which this invention belongs.

[0061] As used herein, the terms “a,” “an,” and “the” include plural reference unless the context dictates otherwise.

[0062] As used herein, the terms “active pharmaceutical ingredient,” “active ingredient,” “API,” “drug,” “active,” “actives” or “therapeutic agent” may be used interchangeably to refer to the pharmaceutically active compound(s) in a pharmaceutical composition. This is in contrast to other ingredients in the compositions, such as excipients, which are substantially or completely pharmaceutically inert. A suitable API in accordance with the present disclosure is one where there is or likely may be patient compliance issues for treating a certain disease, condition, or disorder. The therapeutic agent as used herein includes the active compound and its salts, prodrugs, and

metabolites. As used herein the term “drug” means a compound intended for use in diagnosis, cure, mitigation, treatment, and/or prevention of disease in man or other animals.

[0063] As used herein, “adjuvant therapy” refers to a therapy that follows a primary therapy and that is administered to subjects at risk of relapsing. Adjuvant systemic therapy in case of breast cancer or reproductive tract cancer, for example with tamoxifen, usually begins soon after primary therapy to delay recurrence, prolong survival or cure a subject.

[0064] As used herein, the term “tamoxifen” refers to (Z)-2-[4-(1,2-diphenyl-1-butenyl)phenoxy]-N,N-dimethylethanamine. Tamoxifen can also refer to the E-isomer or a combination of the E-isomer and the Z-isomer.

[0065] As used herein, the terms “4-hydroxytamoxifen,” “afimoxifene,” and “4-OHT” used interchangeably refer to 4-1-[4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl]-2-phenylbut-1-enyl]phenol, and constitutes an active metabolite of tamoxifen. 4-OHT can refer to the Z-isomer, E-isomer or a combination thereof.

[0066] As used herein, the term “endoxifen” refers to 4-hydroxy-N-desmethyl-tamoxifen. It is a secondary active metabolite of tamoxifen.

[0067] Embodiments that reference throughout this specification to “a compound”, such as compounds of Formula (I), Formula (II), Formula (III) and Formula (IV), include the polymorphic, salt, free base, co-crystal, and solvate forms of the formulas and/or compounds disclosed herein. Thus, the appearances of the phrases “a compound”, “compound of Formula (I)”, “compound of Formula (II)”, “compounds of Formula (III)” and “compound of Formula (IV)” include Form I of the compound of Formula (IV), Forms II-III of the compounds of Formula (III), the free base of the compound of Formula (IV), the free base of the compounds of Formula (III), and/or the gluconate salts as described herein.

[0068] The terms “crystalline form”, “polymorph” and “Form” may be used interchangeably herein, and are meant to include all crystalline and amorphous forms of the compound, including, for example, polymorphs, pseudopolymorphs, salts, solvates, hydrates, unsolvated polymorphs (including anhydrides), conformational polymorphs, and amorphous forms, as well as mixtures thereof, unless a particular crystalline or amorphous form is referred to. Compound of the present disclosure include crystalline and amorphous forms of those compounds, including, for example, polymorphs, pseudopolymorphs, salts, solvates, hydrates, unsolvated polymorphs (including anhydrides), conformational polymorphs, and amorphous forms of the compounds, as well as mixtures thereof.

[0069] All compounds disclosed herein are further understood to include all possible isotopes of atoms occurring in the compounds. Isotopes include those atoms having the same atomic number but different mass numbers. By way of example, and without limitation, isotopes of hydrogen include tritium and deuterium and isotopes of carbon include ^{11}C , ^{13}C and ^{14}C .

[0070] As used herein and in the claims, the terms “comprising,” “containing,” and “including” are inclusive, open-ended and do not exclude additional unrecited elements, compositional components or method steps. Accordingly, the terms “comprising” and “including” encompass the more restrictive terms “consisting of” and “consisting essentially of.”

[0071] As used herein, the term “combination therapy” refers to the use of a composition described herein in combination with one or more additional treatment. Treatment in combination therapy can be any treatment such as any prophylactic agent, therapeutic agent (such as chemotherapy), radiotherapy, surgery and the like. The combination can refer to inclusion of a therapeutic or prophylactic agent in a same composition as a composition disclosed herein (for example, in the same capsule, tablet, ointment, etc.) or in separate compositions (for example, in 2 separate capsules). The separate compositions may be in a different dosage form. The use of the terms “combination therapy” and “in combination with” does not restrict the order in which a composition described herein and prophylactic and/or therapeutic agent and/or treatment are administered to a subject in need thereof. Compositions of the present disclosure can be administered prior to (e.g., 1 minute (min), 5 min, 15 min, 30 min, 45 min, 1 hour (h), 2 h, 4 h, 6 h, 8 h, 10 h, 12 h, 24 h, 36 h, 48 h, 72 h, 96 h, 1 week (wk), 2 wk, 3 wk, 4 wk, 5 wk, 6 wk, 8 wk, 12 wk, 6 months (m), 9 m, or 1 year before), concomitant with, or subsequent to (e.g., 1 minute (min), 5 min, 15 min, 30 min, 45 min, 1 hour (h), 2 h, 4 h, 6 h, 8 h, 10 h, 12 h, 24 h, 36 h, 48 h, 72 h, 96 h, 1 week (wk), 2 wk, 3 wk, 4 wk, 5 wk, 6 wk, 8 wk, 12 wk, 6 months (m), 9 m, or 1 year after) administration of one or more prophylactic and/or therapeutic agent and/or treatment to a subject in thereof. Combination therapy as used herein can also refer to treatment of a subject having a single disease or multiple diseases, for example, prostate cancer in men and gynecomastia.

[0072] As used herein, the term “test sample” means sample of blood obtained from a subject. It is to be understood that when blood sample is obtained from a subject, subject's blood is used for determining the subject's endoxifen levels and/or other biomarkers that may be measured or tested. As used herein “plasma endoxifen” is used to refer to endoxifen levels in the subject's test sample, whether the test is conducted on whole blood, plasma or serum.

[0073] As used herein, the term “dosage form” means the form in which the compounds or compositions of the present disclosure are delivered to a patient.

[0074] As used herein, the term “pharmaceutically acceptable” or “pharmacologically acceptable” means materials, compositions, or vehicles that are compatible with other ingredients of the formulation and that they do not substantially produce adverse reactions, e.g., toxic, allergic, or immunological reactions, when administered to a subject. They may be approved by a regulatory agency, e.g., of the U.S. Federal or state government or listed in the U.S. pharmacopeia or other generally recognized pharmacopeia for use in animals, and more particularly in humans.

[0075] As used herein, the term “pharmaceutically acceptable carrier” or “carrier” means a pharmaceutically acceptable material, composition, or vehicle, such as a liquid or solid filler, diluent, excipient, solvent, or encapsulating material, involved in carrying or transporting one or more of the compounds of the present disclosure from one tissue, organ, or portion of the body or across the skin.

[0076] As used herein, the term “pharmaceutically acceptable salt” refers to any salt (e.g., obtained by reaction with an acid or a base) of a compound of the present disclosure that is physiologically tolerated in a subject (e.g., a mammal, and/or in vivo, ex-vivo, in vitro cells, tissues, or organs). A “salt” of a compound of the present disclosure may be derived from inorganic or organic acids and bases. Suitable anion salts include, arecoline, besylate, bicarbonate, bitartrate, butylbromide, citrate, camysylate, gluconate, glutamate, glycolylarsanilate, hexylresorcinat, hydrabamine, hydrobromide, hydrochloride, hydroxynaphthanoate, isethionate, malate, mandelate, mesylate, methylbromide, methylbromide, methylnitrate, methylsulfate, mucate, napsylate, nitrate, pamaoate (Embonate), pantothenate, phosphate/diphosphate, polygalacturonate, salicylate, stearate, sulfate, tannate, teoate, fatty acid anions, and triethiodide.

[0077] Suitable cations include benzathine, clemizole, chlorprocaine, choline, diethylamine, diethanolamine, ethylenediamine, meglumine, piperazine, procaine, aluminum, barium, bismuth, lithium, magnesium, potassium, and zinc.

[0078] For the purposes of this application, the salts of the compounds of the present disclosure are contemplated to be pharmaceutically acceptable for therapeutic uses. However, salts of acids and bases that are non-pharmaceutically acceptable may also be useful, for example, in the preparation or purification of a pharmaceutically acceptable compound.

[0079] As used herein, the term “pharmaceutical composition” means a combination of the active agent (e.g., an active pharmaceutical compound or ingredient, API) with a carrier, inert or active (e.g., a phospholipid), making the compositions specially suitable for diagnostic or therapeutic uses *in vitro*, *in vivo*, or *ex vivo*.

[0080] As used herein “primary therapy” refers to a first line of treatment upon initial diagnosis of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both in a subject. Exemplary primary therapies may involve surgery, a wide range of chemotherapies, and radiotherapy.

[0081] As used herein, the terms “subject,” “patient,” “participant,” and “individual,” may be used interchangeably herein and refer to a mammal such as a human. Mammals also include pet animals such as dogs, cats, laboratory animals, such as rats, mice, and farm animals such as cows and horses. Unless otherwise specified, a mammal may be of any gender or sex.

[0082] As used herein, the term “tamoxifen refractory” refers to a subject that has been dosed daily with tamoxifen for at least 2 days and has a level of plasma endoxifen of less than 30 nM (e.g., less than 20 nM, less than 25 nM, or less than 30 nM). As used herein, the term “tamoxifen resistance” refers to two classes of resistance: (a) de novo resistance, i.e., non-responsiveness to tamoxifen therapy from the beginning of the treatment, or (b) acquired resistance, i.e., non-responsiveness to tamoxifen therapy after initial responsiveness or tamoxifen-dependent growth /stimulated growth while continuing to express estrogen receptors (Minsun Chang. *Biomol. Ther.* 20(3), 256-267 (2012)). The acquired resistance to tamoxifen may develop as early as 3 m to 1 year to as late as 5 to 10 years. As used herein, the term “reference plasma endoxifen level” refers to a value of 30 nM.

[0083] As used herein, the term “unit dosage form” refers to physically discrete units suitable for unitary dosages for subjects, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with a suitable pharmaceutical excipient.

[0084] It is specifically understood that any numerical value cited herein includes all values from the lower value to the upper value, i.e., all possible combination of numerical values between the lowest value and the highest value enumerated are to be considered to be expressly stated in this application and the endpoint of all ranges are included within the range and independently combinable. For example, if a concentration range or beneficial range is stated as 1% to 50%, it is intended that values such as 2% to 40%, 10% to 30%, or 1% to 3% etc., are expressly enumerated in this specification. It is also to be understood that if a concentration or dose is stated as a specific value such as 1 mg or 10 mg, it is intended that it is intended to include 10% variation. As another example, a stated concentration of 20% is intended to include values $\pm 10\%$. Yet another example, if a ratio of 1:10 to 10:1 is stated, then it is intended that ratios such as 1:9 to 9:1, from 1:8 to 8:1, from 1:7 to 7:1, from 1:6 to 6:1, from 1:5 to 5:1, from 1:4 to 4:1, from 1:3 to 3:1, from 1:2 to 2:1, from 1:1 to 2:1 or from 2:5 to 3:5 etc. are specifically intended. There are only some examples of what is

specifically intended. Unless specified otherwise, the values of the constituents or components of the compositions are expressed in weight percent of each ingredient in the component.

[0085] All methods described herein can be performed in a suitable order unless otherwise indicated or otherwise clearly contradicted by context. The use of any and all examples, or exemplary language (e.g., “such as” and “the like”) is intended merely to illustrate the invention and does not pose a limitation on the scope of the invention unless otherwise claimed. No language in the specification should be construed as any indicating any non-claimed element as essential to practice of the invention as used herein.

[0086] As used herein, the terms “hormone-dependent breast disorder,” “hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder,” “hormone-dependent breast and reproductive tract disorder” each and collectively include, without limitation, any breast or reproductive tract (gynecologic) disorder that is related to or is sensitive to high estrogen or normal estrogen levels that need to be reduced, disorders with estrogen-receptor positive (ER+) and/or progesterone-receptor positive (PR+) disorders, for example, breast disorders, endometriosis, uterine fibroids (also called leiomyomas) etc. Reproductive tract disorders include endometrial, ovarian, cervical, uterus, vaginal, and vulvar cancers. The terms “estrogen-related disorder” and “estrogen-receptor related disorder” may be used interchangeably to refer to the foregoing hormone dependent disorders. The disorders may be presented primarily or secondarily to an underlying disease, for example, prostate cancer or other disorders such as liver diseases. Hormone-dependent breast and reproductive tract disorder include, for example, McCune-Albright syndrome, which is a disorder caused by a mutation in the GNAS gene affecting bones, skin, and several hormone-producing (endocrine) tissues, often resulting in abnormal scar-like (fibrous) tissue in their bones, a condition called polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, hyperthyroidism in individuals carrying such mutations, and in girls often resulting in precocious puberty.

[0087] As used herein, “breast disorder” means any aberration or a constellation of aberrations in the breast. Such aberration may be proliferative, non-proliferative, benign or malignant. Breast disorders include benign lesions of the breast (e.g., hyperplasia), increased breast density, gynecomastia, mastalgia, and breast cancer. Benign breast lesions include, but are not limited to, hyperplasia, atypia, ductal hyperplasia, lobular hyperplasia, atypical ductal hyperplasia (ADH), and atypical lobular hyperplasia (ALH). While not cancerous, ADH and ALH may be indicative of a predisposition for breast cancer.

[0088] Breast density is a breast disorder identified by visual techniques such as mammography and reflects increased fibroglandular tissue within the breast, i.e., overgrowth of stromal and epithelial

cells in the breast. Breast density is classified in 4 classes—Class A, B, C and D—based on the degree of severity of the density. It is an independent risk factor for breast cancer. At least 23 states in the USA require physicians to inform subjects if they have dense breast(s). There is currently no treatment for dense breasts, although subjects are reminded to make healthy lifestyle choices and undergo regular mammograms to monitor changes in breast.

[0089] Gynecomastia is a common male breast condition reflecting increased hyperplasia of the breast tissue, including epithelial hyperplasia, with prevalence of asymptomatic gynecomastia of 60% to 90% in neonates, 50% to 60% in adolescents, and up to 70% in men aged 50 to 69 years (Therapeutics and Clinical Risk Management 2011:7, 145 – 148). Newborn gynecomastia usually resolves itself within 4 weeks of birth and at least half of adolescent males experience gynecomastia with typical onset of 13 to 14 years of age (Tanner stage 3 or 4). Gynecomastia has been proposed to be a risk factor for male breast cancer.

[0090] Further, gynecomastia often presents itself secondarily to an underlying disorder such as prostate cancer, cirrhosis and liver disease, male hypogonadism, hyperthyroidism, renal failure and in patients undergoing hemodialysis, Type I diabetes mellitis, etc. Further, medications, such as anti-androgen medications or certain anti-psychotics, themselves have been reported to cause up to 25% of cases of gynecomastia and can be categorized by their hormone-like action. For example, the most common side effects attributed to bicalutamide, a nonsteroidal antiandrogen used for treatment of prostate cancer, are gynecomastia and breast pain.

[0091] As used herein, “breast cancer” means any malignant tumor of breast cells. Breast cancer may be at any stage of breast cancer, including stages of a pre-cancer, an early stage cancer, a non-metastatic cancer, a pre-metastatic cancer, a locally advanced cancer, and a metastatic cancer. There are several types of breast cancer. Exemplary breast cancers include, but are not limited to, ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS), lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS), invasive (or infiltrating) lobular carcinoma (ILC), invasive (or infiltrating) ductal carcinoma (IDC), microinvasive breast carcinoma (MIC), inflammatory breast cancer, ER-positive (ER+) breast cancer, ER-negative (ER-) breast cancer, HER2+ breast cancer, triple negative breast cancer (TNBC), adenoid cystic (adenocystic) carcinoma, low-grade adenosquamous carcinoma, medullary carcinoma, mucinous (or colloid) carcinoma, papillary carcinoma, tubular carcinoma, metaplastic carcinoma, or micropapillary carcinoma. A single breast cancer tumor can be a combination of these types or be a mixture of invasive and in situ cancer.

[0092] DCIS is the most common non-invasive breast cancer. It involves the cell lining of the breast ducts. In DCIS, the cells have not spread beyond the walls of the duct into the surrounding breast

tissue. About 1 in 5 new breast cancer cases will be DCIS. LCIS is a pre-cancerous neoplasia. It may be indicative of a predisposition for invasive cancer. LCIS only accounts for about 15% of the in situ (ductal or lobular) breast cancers.

[0093] IDC is the most invasive breast cancer. As the name applies, it is a carcinoma that begins in the breast ducts and then invades the surrounding fatty tissue. About 8 to 10 invasive breast cancers are infiltrating ductal carcinomas. IDC is often treated by surgery to excise the cancerous tissue, and radiation therapy. In addition, chemotherapy combined with immunotherapy (e.g., tamoxifen and trastuzumab) is often used to treat IDC. If the tumor is larger than 4 cm, then a radical mastectomy may be performed.

[0094] ILC is a cancer that develops in the lobules of the breast and has invaded the surrounding tissue. About 1 in 10 invasive breast cancer is an ILC. ILC is treated by surgery to excise the cancerous tissue, and radiation therapy. In addition, chemotherapy and immunotherapy combination (e.g., tamoxifen and trastuzumab) is often used as an adjuvant therapy to treat ILC.

[0095] Inflammatory breast cancer accounts for about 1% to 3% of all breast cancers. In inflammatory breast cancer, cancer cells block lymph vessels in the skin, resulting in the breast turning red and feeling warm. The affected breast may become larger or firmer, tender, or itchy. Inflammatory breast cancer is treated with chemotherapy, immunotherapy, radiation therapy and in some cases, surgery.

[0096] Estrogen Receptor positive (ER+) breast cancer is characterized by the presence of estrogen receptors on the surface of the cancerous cells. Growth of ER+ cancer cells is associated with the availability of estrogen (hormone-dependent or hormone sensitive breast cancer). Approximately, 80% of all breast cancers are ER+ breast cancers. Treatment options for ER+ breast cancer include chemotherapeutic agents that block estrogen (e.g., tamoxifen).

[0097] The present disclosure relates to methods of manufacturing stable preparations of (Z)-endoxifen free base, mixtures of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen (E/Z-mix), and salts thereof, and uses thereof. The present disclosure further relates to oral compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof and methods of treating a subject in need thereof. The present disclosure also provides methods of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract (gynecologic) disorder, or both by administering to the subject an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen, E/Z-mix, or a salt thereof.

[0098] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to oral compositions comprising endoxifen or salts thereof. Endoxifen comprised in compositions of the present disclosure may be (Z)-endoxifen, (E)-

endoxifen or a combination thereof. In one aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising stable (Z)-endoxifen free base.

[0099] In one aspect, the present disclosure provides industrially scalable methods of making (Z)-endoxifen free base, mixtures of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen (E/Z-mix), and salts thereof. In an aspect, the industrially scalable methods are synthetic methods of making stable (Z)-endoxifen free base, E/Z-mix, and salts thereof. In another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of making compositions comprising stable (Z)-endoxifen free base, E/Z-mix, and salts thereof.

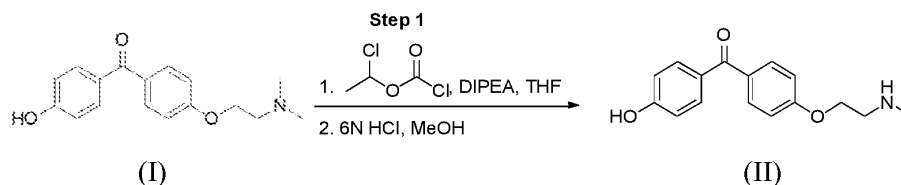
[0100] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides crystalline forms of (Z)-endoxifen free base and crystalline forms of mixtures of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, as well as pharmaceutical compositions of endoxifen comprising the crystalline forms described herein.

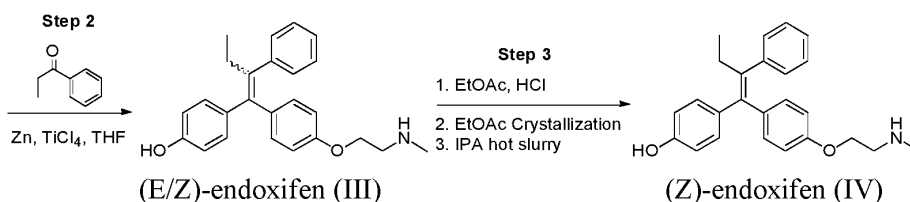
Synthesis of (Z)-endoxifen Free Base

[0101] Several methods for the synthetic preparation of endoxifen are known in the art. For e.g., methods of synthetic preparations of endoxifen and their prodrugs and salts are described in U.S. Patent No. 9,333,190 (Ahmad, Jina Pharmaceuticals); WO 2008/070463 (Ahmad, Jina Pharmaceuticals), U.S. Pub. No. 2010/0112041 (Ahmad, Jina Pharmaceuticals), WO 2012/050263 (Ahmad, Jina Pharmaceuticals), WO 2014/141292 (Desai, Intas Pharmaceuticals), WO 2017/070651 (USA/Alchem Lab. Corp.); WO 2009/120999A2 (Kushner), U.S. Patent No. 8,063,249 (Kushner, Olema Pharmaceuticals), U.S. Patent Nos. 7,531,578 and 8,119,695 (Forman and Yu), and WO 2012/050263 (Song, CJ Cheiljedang Corp).

[0102] Methods of synthetic preparation of endoxifen have also been published in research literature. (Gauthier *et al.*, J. Org. Chem, 61, 3890 – 3893 (1996), Fauq *et al.*, Bioorg Med Chem Lett. 2010 May 15;20(10):3036-3038); Stearns *et al.*, J. Natl. Cancer Inst. Vol 95, No. 23, 2003; Johnson *et al.*, Breast Cancer Research and Treatment. 85:151-159, 2004; Ogawa, et al. Chem. Pharm. Bull. 39, 911 – 916, 1991). However, there remains an unmet need for large scale industrial scalable manufacturing. Stable (Z)-endoxifen free base may be prepared accordance to **Schema 1** as further described below and in **Examples 1 to 9**.

Schema 1. Synthesis of (Z)-endoxifen Free Base





Demethylation

[0103] In one aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process of making substantially purified (Z)-endoxifen free base, E/Z-mix, or salts thereof comprising demethylating the compound of Formula (I), [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone, (available from AstaTech Pharmaceuticals, Inc., China) to form the compound of Formula (II). Accordingly, in some embodiments, the industrial process comprises preparing the compound of Formula (II) by demethylating [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone with a demethylating agent and a proton acceptor in an inert organic solvent to form the compound of Formula (II). The industrially scalable process for making the compound of Formula (II), (Z)-endoxifen free base, E/Z-mix, or salts thereof comprises demethylating the compound of Formula (I) in amounts ranging from 1 mg to 1000 kg per reaction.

[0104] In some embodiments, the compound of Formula (I) can be demethylated by reacting the compound of Formula (I) with a demethylating agent. The demethylating agent is any agent suitable for the purpose. Examples of suitable demethylating agents include N-iodosuccinamide (NIS), ethyl chloroformates (such as 1-chloroethyl chloroformate, dichloroethyl chloroformate, trichloroethyl chloroformate, α -Chloroethylchloroformate (ACE-Cl)), vinyl chloroformate (VO-Cl), cyanogen bromide (BrCN: von Braun's reaction), diethyl azodicarboxylate, pyridinium chloride, and the like.

[0105] In some embodiments, the demethylating agent is a chloroformate selected from the group consisting of 1-chloroethyl chloroformate, dichloroethyl chloroformate, trichloroethyl chloroformate, α -Chloroethylchloroformate (ACE-Cl), and vinyl chloroformate (VO-Cl). In other embodiments, the demethylating agent is an ethyl chloroformate selected from the group consisting of selected from the group consisting of ethyl chloroformates, such as 1-chloroethyl chloroformate, dichloroethyl chloroformate, trichloroethyl chloroformate, and α -Chloroethylchloroformate (ACE-Cl). In at least one embodiment, the demethylating agent is 1-chloroethyl chloroformate.

[0106] In some embodiments, a demethylating agent is added to the reaction mixture at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to demethylating agent ranging from 1:0.5 to 1:10. In other embodiments, the demethylating agent is present at ratios (wt/wt) of the compound of Formula (I) to demethylating agent ranging from 1:2: to 1:5. In at least one embodiment, the demethylating agent is

present at a ratio (wt/wt) of the compound of Formula (I) to demethylating agent of 1:2. In at least one embodiment, demethylating agent is present at a ratio (wt/wt) of the compound of Formula (I) to demethylating agent of 1:3.3. In other embodiments, the demethylating agent 1-chloroethyl chloroformate is present at a ratio (wt/wt) of the compound of Formula (I) to demethylating agent ranging from 1:0.5 to 1:10.

[0107] The demethylation reaction can be carried out in an inert organic solvent suitable for the demethylation reaction in the presence of a proton acceptor. Such inorganic solvents include dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, chlorobenzene, diethyl ether, 1,4-dioxane, tert-butyl methyl ether (TBME), tetrahydrofuran (THF), N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF), N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP), diglyme, nitromethane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane (DME), pyridine, acetone, acetonitrile, benzene, o-xylene, m-xylene, p-xylene, xylenes, hexanes, cyclohexane, heptane, octane, nonane, and decane, or a combination thereof. In an aspect, the industrially scalable process comprises one or more inert organic solvents for demethylation at a (wt/wt) ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to inert organic solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:50. In some embodiments, the demethylation solvent is THF at a ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to THF (wt/wt) ranging from 1:1 to 1:50. In other embodiments, the THF is present in ratios (wt/wt) of the compound of Formula (I) to THF ranging from 1:1 to 1:20.

[0108] Proton acceptors suitable for the purpose of the present disclosure include, but are not limited to carbonates, such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, and bicarbonates, such as sodium bicarbonate and potassium bicarbonate, proton sponge, and ethyldiisopropylamine, (N',N'-diisopropyleamine, "DIPEA"). In an aspect, the industrially scalable process comprises a proton acceptor added to the reaction mixture at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to proton acceptor ranging from 1:0.5 to 1:10. In some embodiments, the proton acceptor is present in a ratio (wt/wt) of the compound of Formula (I) to proton acceptor of 1:1:8.

[0109] One of skill in the art will be readily able to determine other solvents and proton acceptors known in the art suitable for demethylation reaction of the present disclosure.

[0110] Demethylating agents, solvents for demethylation reaction, and the compound of Formula (I) may be added in any order. Each reagent may be added to a suitable reactor in a single bolus or in multiple boluses and stirred.

[0111] In some embodiments, the compound of Formula (I) is charged to a suitable reactor to which inert organic solvent THF and proton acceptor DIPEA are added for demethylation reaction, and cooled to 0 °C to 20 °C, followed by addition of one or more demethylating agents. THF is added at a wt/wt ratio of 1:1 to 1:20, and proton acceptor DIPEA is added at a wt/wt ratio of 1:0.5 to 1:10 to

the demethylation reaction mixture, where wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I). In some embodiments, the reaction mixture is cooled to not more than (NMT) 15 °C followed by slow addition of one or more demethylating agents. The reaction may be carried out under inert conditions, such as under nitrogen or argon.

[0112] The reaction mixture comprising the compound of Formula (I), one or more demethylating agents (for example, 1-chloroethyl chloroformate) in one or more inert organic solvents can be heated at temperature ranging from 20 °C to 250 °C, such as from 40 °C to 80 °C, from 50 °C to 230 °C, from 50 °C to 120 °C, and from 150 °C to 200 °C. In some embodiments, the reaction mixture is heated under reflux. In other embodiments, the compound of Formula (I) is reacted with demethylating agent and proton acceptor for not less than (NLT) 5 hours, NLT 8 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 24 hours, NLT 36 hours, NLT 48 hour and NLT 72 hours. In at least one embodiment, the reaction is heated under reflux NLT 12 hours. The reaction may be held and stored until further use. In some embodiments, the reaction mixture is held not more than (NMT) 24 hours under reflux conditions while stirring.

[0113] The mixture can be subjected to one or more rounds of distillation under reduced pressure. Distillation may be carried out at NMT 100 °C, at NMT 95 °C, at NMT 90 °C, at NMT 85 °C, at NMT 80 °C, or at NMT 70 °C with solvents suitable for distillation such as ethyl acetate, lower alcohols (non-limiting examples include methanol, ethanol, n-propanol, and isopropanol), benzene, acetone, acetonitrile, toluene, dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, and chloroform. One of skill in the art will be able to readily determine additional suitable solvents useful for the purpose.

[0114] In at least one embodiment, the solvent used for distillation is methanol. As a non-limiting example, methanol may be used for solvent swap for 2 to 5 rounds of distillation under reduced pressure.

[0115] Solvents, such as methanol, may be used for distillation at a (wt/wt) ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:10 per round of distillation.

[0116] Then, the mixture can be reacted with a solvent/acid mixture by addition of an acid (wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to acid ranging from 1:1 to 1:10) to the solvent while stirring and heating under reflux. The acid can be any suitable acid. HCl is an example of acid suitable for the purpose of the present disclosure. Non-limiting examples of suitable solvent/acid mixtures include methanol/HCl, ethanol/HCl, propanol/HCl, isopropanol/HCl, methanol/sulfuric acid, methanol/phosphoric acid, ethanol/sulfuric acid, ethanol/phosphoric acid, propanol/sulfuric acid, propanol/phosphoric acid, isopropanol/sulfuric acid, isopropanol/phosphoric acid, methanol/acetic acid, ethanol/acetic acid, propanol/acetic acid, isopropanol/acetic acid, methanol/formic acid,

ethanol/formic acid, propanol/formic acid, and isopropanol/formic acid. In at least one embodiment, the solvent/acid mixture is methanol/6N HCl. As a non-limiting example, methanol in methanol/HCl mixture may be added at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to methanol in solvent/acid mixture at 1:3.2 while HCl in the methanol/HCl mixture may be at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to HCl in the solvent/acid mixture at 1:4. In at least one embodiment, the methanol/6N HCl mixture is added at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to methanol/6N HCl ranging from 1:1 to 1:10, such as 1:1 to 1:5.

[0117] Distillation may be carried out for NLT 5 hours, NLT 8 hours, NLT 10 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 14 hours under reduced pressure. Distillation may be carried out at a temperature NMT 70 °C, NMT 75 °C, NMT 80 °C, NMT 85 °C, NMT 90 °C and NMT 90 °C.

[0118] The reaction mixture may be held and stored until further use. In some embodiments, the reaction mixture may be held for NMT 24 hours under reflux conditions while stirring.

[0119] The reaction mixture can be neutralized with a neutralizing agent such as sodium hydroxide (NaOH), ammonium hydroxide, aminomethylpropanol and the like, and filtered. The resulting wet cake can be washed with water and an organic solvent such as ethyl acetate (EtOAc) to obtain (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (II).

[0120] The neutralizing agent may be at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (I) to the neutralizing agent ranging from 1:1 to 1:10. In some embodiments, the neutralizing agent is 8N sodium hydroxide at a ratio ranging from 1:1 to 1:10. In other embodiments, the neutralizing agent is 8N sodium hydroxide at a ratio ranging from 1:2 to 1:8.

[0121] In another aspect, the industrially scalable process for making (Z)-endoxifen free base, E/Z-mix or salts thereof comprises one or more steps of washing filtered product (the compound of Formula (II)) with purified water (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) and organic solvents such as ethyl acetate (EtOAc) (1:0.5 to 1:10 wt/wt) wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I). The wet cake is dried under reduced pressure/vacuum. The temperature for can range from 25 °C to 60 °C. In some embodiments, the drying is carried out at a temperature NMT 50 °C.

McMurry Reaction

[0122] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process of making (Z)-endoxifen free base, E/Z-mix, and salts thereof comprising subjecting the compound of Formula (II) to a McMurry reaction to afford an E/Z-mix (i.e., a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen free bases), compounds of Formula (III).

[0123] The McMurry reaction has been used to prepare tamoxifen (European Patent Application No. 168175). The present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process wherein the compound of Formula (II), (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl) methanone, is coupled to propiophenone mediated by a McMurry reaction via titanium salts such as chloride salts of titanium (for example, titanium trichloride and titanium tetrachloride (TiCl_4)) and reducing agents in inert organic solvents to form an E/Z mix of compounds of Formula (III).

[0124] Salts of titanium that are useful for the present disclosure include titanium halides (such as titanium trichloride (TiCl_3), Titanium tetrachloride (TiCl_4), titanium iodides, titanium bromides, and titanium fluorides), titanium (IV) trichloride isopropoxide, and titanium isopropoxide. In some embodiments, the titanium salt is TiCl_4 . Titanium salts, such as TiCl_4 , are added at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (II) to titanium salt ranging from 1:0.1 to 1:12.

[0125] Reducing agents include zinc, zirconium, vanadium, niobium, molybdenum, tungsten, aluminum, magnesium, potassium, zinc-copper couple, alkali and alkali earth metals, butyllium, lithium, and lithium aluminum hydride. In at least one embodiment, the reducing agent is zinc. The McMurry synthesis is conveniently carried out using a reducing agent such as zinc at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (II) to reducing agent ranging from 1:0.1 to 1:10. In some embodiments, the ratio of reducing agent is in excess compared to titanium salts.

[0126] The McMurry synthesis can be carried out in one or more inert organic solvents. Inert organic solvents useful for the McMurry reaction include dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, chlorobenzene, diethyl ether, 1,4-dioxane, tert-butyl methyl ether (TBME), tetrahydrofuran (THF), N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF), N-methylpyrrolidone (NMP), diglyme, nitromethane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane (DME), pyridine, acetone, acetonitrile, benzene, o-xylene, m-xylene, p-xylene, xylenes, hexanes, cyclohexane, heptane, octane, nonane, and decane, or a combination thereof. In some embodiments, the inert organic solvent is at wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (II) to solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:50. In other embodiments, the inert organic solvent is at wt/wt ratios of the compound of Formula (II) to solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:20. In some embodiments, the inert organic solvent used for the McMurry reaction is THF. THF, in some embodiments, is at wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (II) to THF ranging from 1:1 to 1:20.

[0127] It is advantageous to combine titanium salts and reducing agent in the inert organic solvents to create a pre-mix. Titanium salts are added to the reducing agent and inert organic solvents at such a rate so as to keep the internal temperature at NMT 75 °C, such as NMT 65 °C, NMT 55 °C, NMT 45 °C, NMT 40 °C, NMT 35 °C, NMT 30 °C, NMT 25 °C, NMT 20 °C, and NMT 15 °C.

Accordingly, titanium salts and reducing agent in the inert organic solvents are combined to create a pre-mix. In some embodiments, Zn, TiCl₄ and THF are combined to create Zn/TiCl₄/THF mixture. In at least one embodiment, TiCl₄ is added to Zn and THF and mixed keeping the internal temperature NMT 20 °C for NLT 10 min.

[0128] Preparation of titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent may further comprise heating titanium salt and reducing agent in an inert organic solvent to a temperature ranging from 20 °C to 250 °C, such as from 40 °C to 80 °C, from 50 °C to 230 °C, from 50 °C to 120 °C, and from 150 °C to 200 °C. In some embodiments, titanium salt and reducing agent present in an inert organic solvent are heated at NLT 60 °C. In some embodiments, preparation of titanium salt and a reducing agent in an inert organic solvent further comprises heating titanium salt and reducing agent in an inert organic solvent under reflux. Titanium salt and reducing agent in inert organic solvent are heated under reflux for NLT 30 min, such as NLT 1 hour, NLT 2 hours, NLT 4 hours, NLT 6 hours and NLT 8 hours, under inert conditions such as under N₂ or argon.

[0129] It is also advantageous to pre-mix the compound of Formula (II) with inert organic solvent such as THF and propiophenone and then reacting the compound of Formula (II) to pre-mixed reducing agent/titanium salt/solvent mixture such as a Zn/TiCl₄/THF mixture to form a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III). Propiophenone can be added at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (II) to propiophenone ranging from 1:0.01 to 1:5. Inert organic solvent can be at a wt/wt ratio of the compound of Formula (II) to solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:20. The compound of Formula (II) of step (a) is reacted with titanium salt and a reducing agent in an organic solvent under reflux for NLT 0.5 hours, NLT 1 hour, NLT 2 hours, NLT 4 hours, NLT 6 hours, NLT 8 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 24 hours, and NLT 48 hours. In at least one embodiment, the compound of Formula (II) is mixed with THF and propiophenone and reacted to a pre-mixture of Zn, TiCl₄, THF and heat under reflux for NLT 2 hours. In another embodiment, the compound of Formula (II) is mixed with THF and propiophenone and reacted to the Zn/THF/TiCl₄ mixture as described above and heated under reflux for NLT 8 hours. The reaction mixture may then be allowed to cool to 0 °C to 35 °C.

[0130] The mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen in the reaction mixture can be then subjected to extractive purification, distillation and crystallization to afford a purified mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen. The mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen in the reaction mixture can be subject to extractive purification by extracting with inert organic solvents, such as THF and MeTHF, or by addition of salts, such as potassium carbonate, ammonium chloride, sodium

chloride, sodium hydroxide, to the reaction mixture and extraction with an inert organic solvent, such as THF and MeTHF.

[0131] In some embodiments, the reaction mixture is extracted one or more times with ammonium chloride, such as 25% ammonium chloride (1:1 to 1:30 wt/wt); silica (Celite®) bed (1:0.01 to 1:5 wt/wt); and/or solvent, such as THF (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt). In other embodiments, the reaction mixture is extracted one or more times with potassium carbonate (K_2CO_3), such as 40% K_2CO_3 (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt) and MeTHF (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt). In some embodiments, the E/Z mixture may be further extracted with NaOH, such as 1N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt). In at least one embodiment, NaCl (1:0.1 to 1:0.5 wt/wt) may be added to 1N NaOH for the extraction step.

[0132] In some embodiments, the reaction mixture may be further extracted one or more times with THF or MeTHF. In at least one embodiment, the reaction mixture is extracted 3 or more times with MeTHF. The applicants have found MeTHF to be surprisingly suitable for the step of extraction of a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, affording higher yields of purified mixtures of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen. In at least one embodiment, the mixture may be still further extracted with 20% sodium chloride (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt).

[0133] The reaction mixture can be next subjected to 2 to 5 rounds of solvent swap and distillation with a suitable solvent, such as ethyl acetate, IPA, and IPA/PPW (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt with respect to the compound of Formula (III)). Distillation may be carried out under reduced pressure/vacuum at temperatures ranging from 30 °C to 90 °C. In some embodiments, the distillation may be performed at temperature NMT 30 °C, NMT 35 °C, NMT 40 °C, NMT 45 °C, NMT 50 °C, NMT 55 °C, NMT 60 °C, NMT 65 °C, NMT 70 °C, NMT 75 °C, NMT 80 °C and NMT 90 °C, and filtered. The filtered product may be washed with solvents such as EtOAc, IPA, IPA/PPW or n-heptane and then crystallized with crystallization systems such as EtOAc/n-heptane (1:2 v/v) or IPA/n-heptane (1:2.7 v/v) at a wt/wt ratio of a compound of Formula (III) to EtOAc/n-heptane or IPA/n-heptane ranging from 1:1 to 1:20 and dried, for example, at NMT 60 °C, to afford a crystalline solid mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen free bases, compounds of Formula (III).

[0134] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable method of manufacturing or reequilibrating an E/Z-mix having an E/Z ratio of approximately 1:1 (45:55 to 55:45). A suitable reactor may be charged with the compounds of Formula (III) dissolved in an inert organic solvent, such as ethyl acetate, prepared in a McMurry reaction as described above. The compounds of Formula (III) can have an E/Z ratio of 99:1 to 60:40. The mixture can be concentrated at temperatures ranging from 40 °C to 85 °C. In some embodiments, the mixture is concentrated at temperature NMT 75 °C until the volume reaches 5 vol. The mixture is heated to reflux and then

cooled to temperatures ranging from 40 °C to 60 °C. In some embodiments, the temperature of the mixture is cooled to 50±5 °C. n-heptane, at a ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to n-heptane ranging from 1:1 to 1:20, may be added slowly to the mixture and the mixture may be then cooled to 0±5 °C. The mixture may be stirred at 0±5 °C for NLT 0.5 hours, such as NLT 1 hour, NLT 2 hours, NLT 4 hours, NLT 8 hours, NLT 12 hours or NLT 24 hours. The mixture may be filtered and washed with ethyl acetate /n-Heptane (1:2 v/v) at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to ethyl acetate/n-heptane ranging from 1:1 to 1:10. The wet cake may be dried under reduced pressure to afford E/Z-endoxifen mixture having an E/Z-ratio of approximately 1:1. Drying may be carried out at temperatures ranging from 30 °C to 70 °C. In at some embodiments, the wet cake is dried under reduced pressure or vacuum at NMT 60 °C to afford E/Z-endoxifen mixture having an E/Z-ratio of approximately 1:1 (45:55 to 55:45).

[0135] In still another aspect, the compounds of Formula (III) may be further purified or enriched or reequilibrated to obtain substantially pure (Z)-endoxifen as described below.

Enrichment Purification of (Z)-endoxifen Free Base

[0136] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to industrially scalable methods of manufacturing by enrichment and purification (Z)-endoxifen free base. Industrially scalable enrichment and purification of (Z)-endoxifen may be carried out as described herein using the method of Step 3 of exemplary **Schema 1**, and as further described in **Examples 1, 2, 4, and 9**. The starting mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen used for fractional crystallization can have any E/Z ratio, for example, E/Z ratio ranging from 99:1 to 1:10. In some embodiments, the E/Z-ratio of the starting (E)/(Z)-endoxifen mixtures ranges from 30:70 to 70:30. In some embodiments, the E/Z-ratio of the starting (E)/(Z)-endoxifen mixtures ranges from 99:1 to 1:99. In some embodiments, the E/Z-ratio of the starting (E)/(Z)-endoxifen mixtures is 51:1, 1:1.8 or 1:5.6.

[0137] The E/Z-mix can be the compounds of Formula (III) obtained as described above or it can be commercially sourced (for example, from Sigma-Aldrich). A mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen (E/Z-mix) is subjected to fractional crystallization to obtain a first crystalline solid and a first mother liquor enriched with (Z)-endoxifen free base (Example 1). Fractional crystallization is carried using a first solvent which is capable of triturating endoxifen and its derivatives such that (Z)-endoxifen tends to remain in filtrate. Suitable first solvents are those that differentially solubilize the endoxifen isomers, and include, without limitation, ethyl acetate, isopropanol, isopropanol/PPW, acetonitrile, acetonitrile/PPW, and dichloromethane. In some embodiments, the first solvent is ethyl acetate. The first solvent, for example, ethyl acetate, is added at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of

Formula (III) to first solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:20. In some embodiments, the the compounds of Formula (III) are dissolved in first solvent, and heated to a temperature ranging from 50 °C to 80 °C and cooled to NMT 35 °C.

[0138] It has been a surprising discovery that acidification of the mixture enhances the conversion of (E)-endoxifen to (Z)-endoxifen. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the compounds of formula (III) are pretreated with an acid and then neutralized with a base.

[0139] As a non-limiting example, a suitable reactor is charged with the compounds of Formula (III) to which first solvent is added and cooled to 0 °C – 5 °C. Next, an acid such as HCl or TFA may be added slowly. In some embodiments, the acid is added to the E/Z-endoxifen mixture at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to acid ranging from 1:1 to 1:5. The reaction mixture may then be heated at temperatures ranging from 50 °C to 70 °C while stirring. In some embodiments, the reaction is carried out under reflux. The reaction may be carried out for NLT 4 hours, such as NLT 6 hours, NLT 12 hours, NLT 24 hours, and NLT 48 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to 0 °C – 5 °C and neutralized with a neutralizing agent.

[0140] In some embodiments, the neutralizing agent is added to the reaction mixture at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to neutralizing agent ranging from 1:1 to 1:5. Suitable neutralizing agents include sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, ammonium hydroxide, aminomethylpropanol, and the like. In some embodiments, the neutralizing agent is 8N sodium hydroxide. The pH of the reaction mixture is preferably alkaline. In some embodiments, the pH is ≥ 10 , such as ≥ 11 or ≥ 12 .

[0141] In some embodiments, (Z)-endoxifen is extracted into the organic layer and collected, and the aqueous phase is washed one or more times with the first solvent such as ethyl acetate (added at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to first solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:10). The organic layers are pooled, and washed one or more times with brine (20% NaCl; added at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to NaCl ranging from 1:1 to 1:10). The organic layer is treated with activated carbon and filtered over silicon dioxide (Celite®) bed (added at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to silica ranging from 1.01 to 1:0.1). The product is washed again one or more times with first solvent (added at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to first solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:10), and distilled. Distillation may be carried out at temperatures ranging from 50 °C to 80 °C. In some embodiments, the temperature may be NMT 75 °C.

[0142] The first mother liquor is enriched in (Z)-endoxifen as seen in **Example 1** and **Tables 2** and **3**. In some embodiments, the first mother liquor is enriched by at least 50% as compared to with the E/Z-ratio of the mixture of E-endoxifen and Z-endoxifen. In other embodiments, the first mother

liquor is enriched in (Z)-endoxifen by at least 70% as compared to the E/Z-ratio of the mixture of E-endoxifen and Z-endoxifen.

[0143] The first mother liquor may be subjected to recrystallization by concentrating the first mother liquor, or swapping out the first solvent from the first mother liquor one or more times to obtain second crystalline solid and a second mother liquor (**Table 5**). Recrystallization is carried out using a second solvent for swapping. The second solvent is added at a wt/wt ratio of the compounds of Formula (III) to second solvent ranging from 1:1 to 1:10 to create a slurry. Suitable second solvents include IPA, IPA/PPW, acetone, acetone/MTBE, ethanol, EtOAc, EtOAc/n-heptane. In some embodiments, the second solvent is IPA. Surprisingly, IPA has been found to triturate (Z)-endoxifen into solid fraction at levels higher than EtOAc. Accordingly, in some embodiments, when the first solvent is EtOAc, the second solvent is IPA or IPA/PPW. This is useful in directing (Z)-endoxifen first into the filtrate (first mother liquor) from EtOAc, and then into the solid fraction from IPA or IPA/PPW. In at least one embodiment, the second solvent is IPA/PPW (**Table 7**). In yet another embodiment, the second solvent is acetone/MTBE. The second crystalline solid is (Z)-endoxifen, (Z)-4-(1-(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl)-2-phenylbut-1-enyl)phenol, the compound of Formula (IV). (Molecular weight 373.49; Molecular formula: C₂₅H₂₇NO₂; Melting point 139 °C – 143 °C. The second crystalline solid is $\geq 70\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, such as $\geq 75\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 80\%$ (Z)-endoxifen or $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen. In some embodiments, the second crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen.

[0144] The second crystalline solid may optionally be subjected to recrystallization to obtain a third crystalline solid, (Z)-endoxifen (**Table 5**). The third crystalline solid may be $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, such as $\geq 91\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 92\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 93\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 94\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 95\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 96\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 97\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, $\geq 98\%$ (Z)-endoxifen, or $\geq 99\%$ (Z)-endoxifen. In some embodiments, the third crystalline solid is $\geq 90\%$ (Z)-endoxifen. In some embodiments, the third crystalline solid is $\geq 95\%$ (Z)-endoxifen. This optional recrystallization is carried out using a third solvent. The third solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, methanol, ethyl acetate, IPA, IPA/PPW, acetone, acetone/MTBE and EtOAc/n-heptane.

[0145] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to pre-heating first solvent, second solvent, and third solvent prior to use (**Table 2**). In some embodiments, one or more of the first solvent, second solvent, and third solvent can each be independently preheated to a temperature ranging from 40 °C to 80 °C. Fractional crystallization and recrystallization steps may also include steps of distilling at 60 °C to 80 °C and/or cooling the resulting solution to a temperature ranging from 0 °C to 35 °C.

[0146] It is to be understood that in some embodiments, first, second, and third crystalline solids as well as the second mother liquor obtained as described above may be further subjected to fractional crystallization and recrystallization as described above one or more time to obtain purified (Z)-endoxifen. It is also to be understood that first, second, and/or third crystalline solids obtained may be optionally reprocessed using column chromatography techniques to obtain more (Z)-endoxifen.

[0147] In certain embodiments, the industrially scalable methods described herein independently comprises additional steps or procedures (e.g., to remove reaction by-products, or to workup, isolate or purify reaction products) as detailed in examples herein. In some embodiments, the (Z)-endoxifen free base has <2%, <1%, and <0.5% impurity. In other embodiments, the compounds of Formula (III) have <2%, <1%, and <0.5% impurity.

[0148] A person of skill in the art will recognize several parameters of the foregoing process that may be varied in order to obtain a desirable outcome. These parameters include for example, the methods and means of purification of reaction components and solvents; the order of addition of said reaction components and solvents to the reaction mixture, duration of reaction of said reaction components and solvents; and temperature and rate of stirring, mixing or agitation of the reaction components and solvents during the reactions.

[0149] It was found that the process embodied by the methods herein (also including the particular process steps) fulfills one or more of the following criteria: better stability, safer, simpler, higher yielding and more economical when compared with the known processes for manufacturing compounds of Formula (II), (III) and (IV). (Z)-Endoxifen prepared by the processes disclosed below is stable for at least 9 months at 5 °C and 25 °C at 60% relative humidity (25 °C/60% RH) and for at least 3 months at 40 °C/75% RH (**Example 9**). Stability at elevated temperatures is indicative of long term stability. Accordingly, (Z)-endoxifen free base prepared by the processes of the present disclosure are stable for at least 6 months, such as for at least 9 months, at least 12 months, or at least 18 months. Further, the process described herein is considered scalable in multi-kilogram operations, making it suitable for commercial production.

Endoxifen Salts

[0150] In still another aspect, the present application provides endoxifen salts and methods of making endoxifen salts. Endoxifen salts known in the art include hydrochloride (Fauq *et al.*, Bioorg Med Chem Lett. 2010 May 15;20(10):3036-3038) and citrate salts of endoxifen (U.S. Patent No. 9333190; U.S. Publication No. 2010/0112041) and are being evaluated for oral administration to subjects.

[0151] In certain embodiments, the present disclosure provides anion salts of endoxifen selected from the group consisting of arecoline, besylate, bicarbonate, bitartrate, butylbromide, citrate, camysylate, gluconate, glutamate, glycolylarsanilate, hexylresorcinate, hydrabamine, hydrobromide, hydrochloride, hydroxynaphthanoate, isethionate, malate, mandelate, mesylate, methylbromide, methylbromide, methylnitrate, methylsulfate, mucate, napsylate, nitrate, pamaoate (Embonate), pantothenate, phosphate/diphosphate, polygalacturonate, salicylate, stearate, sulfate, tannate, Teoate, and triethiodide.

[0152] In other embodiments, the present disclosure provides cation salts of endoxifen selected from the group consisting of benzathine, clemizole, chlorprocaine, choline, diethylamine, diethanolamine, ethylenediamine, meglumine, piperazine, procaine, aluminum, barium, bismuth, lithium, magnesium, potassium, and zinc.

[0153] The endoxifen salts of the present disclosure may be made using any of the compounds of Formulae (I), (II), (III) and (IV), prepared as described above.

Endoxifen Gluconate

[0154] In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides a gluconate salt of endoxifen, or a chemical equivalent thereof. Accordingly, in at least one embodiment, the endoxifen comprised in a composition of the present disclosure is an endoxifen gluconate or a chemical equivalent thereof. Unless specified otherwise, it will be understood that when referring to endoxifen gluconate herein, its chemical equivalents will also be encompassed.

[0155] For the purposes of the present disclosure, chemical equivalents of endoxifen gluconate include all anionic, cationic, and non-ionic reaction complexes between the endoxifen molecule and the gluconate moiety. Such complexes typically react with the hydroxyl group of the endoxifen molecule. The gluconate moiety includes D-gluconic acid, gluconic acid, glycogenic acid, glycan- Δ -lactone, and the like. In some embodiments, the gluconate moiety is a pharmaceutically acceptable gluconate salt. Such salts include calcium gluconate, sodium gluconate, and salts of alkali metals and alkaline earth metals such as potassium gluconate, magnesium gluconate, lithium gluconate, and the like.

[0156] Both stereoisomers of gluconate, the D-form and the L-form, are embraced in the present disclosure. In some embodiments, endoxifen gluconate comprised in the compositions of the present disclosure is selected from the group consisting of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen L-gluconate and combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate. In

certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate. The compositions may be present as racemic mixtures, pure stereoisomers (e.g., enantiomers and diastereoisomers), stereo-enriched mixtures and the like unless otherwise indicated. When a particular stereoisomer is shown or named herein, it will be understood by those skilled in the art that minor amounts of other stereoisomers may be present in the compositions of the present disclosure unless otherwise indicated, provided that the utility of the composition as a whole is not eliminated by the presence of such other isomers. Individual isomers may be obtained by numerous methods that are well known in the art, including chiral chromatography using a suitable chiral stationary phase or support, or by chemically converting them into diastereoisomers, separating the diastereoisomers by conventional means such as chromatography or recrystallization, then regenerating the original stereoisomer.

[0157] The present disclosure also includes methods of making endoxifen gluconate or a chemical equivalent thereof, which includes mixing endoxifen with a gluconate moiety to yield endoxifen gluconate. Methods of making gluconate salts of therapeutic agents are known in the art (for example, U.S. Publication No. 2002/0127665).

[0158] In some embodiments, an endoxifen D-gluconate (such as (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate) salt may be obtained by mixing an ethanolic slurry of the endoxifen (such as (Z)-endoxifen prepared by the methods described above) as the free base with an aqueous solution of D-gluconic acid, obtained by hydrolyzing a 20% w/v solution of D-gluconolactone in water by heating at 70 °C for 15 to 30 min. In some embodiments, a minimum volume of ethanol is used and 5 ml of the aqueous D-gluconic acid solution is added per 1 g of endoxifen free base. Stirring is then continued until a clear solution is obtained. The required volume of this solution is then added to one or more of other excipients to produce formulations in which the “active ingredient” is (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate or (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate salt. The salt may be purified by any of the methods known in the art and disclosed herein.

[0159] Purified (Z)-endoxifen free base or a mixture of (E)/(Z)-endoxifen is both useful for the purpose of preparation of the endoxifen gluconate salt. A solution of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate or (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate may also be purified from a mixture of (E)/(Z)-endoxifen gluconate salt as described herein by fractional crystallization or recrystallization (**Examples 1-3**) to obtain a solid purified (Z)-endoxifen salt. The solid salt may be stored at -5 °C under N₂ until further use.

[0160] It will be understood by those skilled in the art that other endoxifen salts can also be used as starting material with gluconate moiety or gluconate salts to yield endoxifen gluconate or chemical equivalents thereof.

[0161] Endoxifen gluconate or chemical equivalent thereof may be prepared using (Z)-endoxifen prepared as described above or with starting reactants that are readily available. For example, crude endoxifen HCl ($\geq 98\%$) and sodium gluconate are readily available from Sigma-Aldrich, USA.

[0162] In some embodiments, endoxifen HCl and sodium gluconate are dissolved in a suitable solvent to yield endoxifen gluconate or a chemical equivalent thereof. In at least one embodiment, the composition comprising endoxifen gluconate also comprises endoxifen HCl. In other embodiments, an (E)/(Z)-endoxifen mixture (compounds of Formula (III)) and sodium gluconate are dissolved in a suitable solvent to afford endoxifen gluconate or a chemical equivalent thereof.

[0163] Suitable solvents for making endoxifen gluconate or chemical equivalents thereof include, but are not limited to, organic solvents such as alcohols, acetones, DMSO, polyethylene glycol, fatty acids and fatty alcohols and their derivatives, hydroxyl acids, pyrrolidones, urea, vegetable oils, animal oils such as fish oils, essential oils, and the like or mixtures thereof, and water-miscible solvents such as water miscible alcohols, dimethylsulfoxide, dimethylformamide, water-miscible ether, for example, tetrahydrofuran, water-miscible nitrile, for example acrylonitrile, a water miscible ketone such as acetone or methyl ethyl ketone, an amide such as dimethylacetamide, propylene glycol, glycerin, polyethylene glycol 400, glycofurol, tetraglycol, and the like, or mixtures thereof.

[0164] Water-miscible solvents useful for the preparation of endoxifen gluconate are glycerin, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycols, or mixtures thereof. Additional solvents that are useful include diglycol monoethyl ether (transcutol); alkylene glycols, such as dipropylene glycol, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycols such as PEG 300, 400, 3395, 4450 and the like; dimethyl isosorbide; and dehydrated alcohol. In some embodiments, the solvent is a dehydrated alcohol, such as absolute alcohol. In certain embodiments, the amount of solvent is sufficient to dissolve the endoxifen (free base, salts) and gluconate salts. The concentration of the solvent can also be adjusted as needed. The reaction can be carried out at room temperature and at atmosphere of pressure.

[0165] The amount of endoxifen free base or endoxifen salt (such as endoxifen HCl and the like) and gluconate salt (such as sodium gluconate and the like) that can be used to make endoxifen gluconate or chemical equivalent thereof can vary depending on the amount of reactants used. The resulting endoxifen gluconate will have endoxifen:gluconate moiety at 1:1 ratio.

[0166] In some embodiments, the amount of endoxifen or endoxifen salt used for making endoxifen gluconate is from 0.01% to 40% (e.g., from 1% to 10%, or from 3% to 5%) by weight of the total composition (wt/wt). In some embodiments, the gluconate salt used for making endoxifen gluconate

is from 0.01% to 40% (wt/wt) (e.g., from 1% to 10% (wt/wt), or from 3% to 5% (wt/wt)). One of skill in the art will be guided by skill and knowledge in the field and the present disclosure, including without limitation, amounts of reactants which are effective to achieve the desired yields.

Crystalline Forms

[0167] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides crystalline forms of endoxifen, including crystalline forms of (Z)-endoxifen free base and crystalline forms of mixtures of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen. The present disclosure further provides pharmaceutical compositions of endoxifen comprising the crystalline forms described herein. A crystalline form of endoxifen may provide the advantage of bioavailability and stability, suitable for use as an active ingredient in a pharmaceutical composition. Variations in the crystal structure of a pharmaceutical drug substance or active ingredient may affect the dissolution rate (which may affect bioavailability, etc.), manufacturability (e.g., ease of handling, ability to consistently prepare doses of known strength) and stability (e.g., thermal stability, shelf life, etc.) of a pharmaceutical drug product or active ingredient. Such variations may affect the preparation or formulation of pharmaceutical compositions in different dosage or delivery forms, such as solid oral dosage forms including tablets and capsules. Compared to other forms such as non-crystalline or amorphous forms, crystalline forms may provide desired or suitable hygroscopicity, particle size controls, dissolution rate, solubility, purity, physical and chemical stability, manufacturability, yield, and/or process control. Thus, crystalline forms of endoxifen may provide advantages such as: improving the manufacturing process of an active agent or the stability or storability of a drug product form of the compound or an active ingredient, and/or having suitable bioavailability and/or stability as an active agent.

[0168] The use of certain solvents and fractional crystallization methods has been found to produce different polymorphic forms of endoxifen, including any one or more of polymorphic Forms I, II and II, which may exhibit one or more favorable characteristics described above. The processes for the preparation of the polymorphs described herein, and characterization of these polymorphs are described in greater detail below.

Formula III, Form I

[0169] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides polymorphic Form I of a compound of Formula (III), wherein at least 90% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition is the (Z)-isomer (i.e., (Z)-endoxifen). In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I exhibits an x-ray powder diffraction (XRPD) pattern substantially as shown in **Fig. 9** or **Fig. 10**. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I has an XRPD pattern comprising at least two, at least three, at

least four, at least five, or at least six of the major peaks as the XRPD pattern substantially as shown in **Fig. 9** or **Fig. 10**.

[0170] The term “substantially as shown in” when referring, for example, to an XRPD pattern, includes a pattern that is not necessarily identical to those depicted herein, but that falls within the limits of experimental error or deviations when considered by one of ordinary skill in the art. The relative intensities of XRPD peaks can vary, depending upon the particle size, the sample preparation technique, the sample mounting procedure and the particular instrument employed. Moreover, instrument variation and other factors can affect the two theta (2θ) values. Accordingly, when a specified two theta angle is provided, it is to be understood that the specified two theta angle can vary by the specified value $\pm 0.5^\circ$, such as $\pm 0.4^\circ$, $\pm 0.3^\circ$, $\pm 0.2^\circ$, or $\pm 0.1^\circ$. As used herein, “major peak” refers to an XRPD peak with a relative intensity greater than 30%, such as greater than 35%. Relative intensity is calculated as a ratio of the peak intensity of the peak of interest versus the peak intensity of the largest peak in the XRPD pattern.

[0171] In certain embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising peaks at $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising peaks at $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form I is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $16.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $21.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and peaks at $12.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $16.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $18.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $26.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $28.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $29.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

[0172] In certain embodiments, the present disclosure provides a composition comprising polymorphic Form I. Greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition may be polymorphic Form I. In some embodiments, the composition comprises

0.01 mg to 200 mg of polymorphic Form I. In some embodiments, the composition comprises about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of polymorphic Form I.

Formula III, Form II

[0173] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides polymorphic Form II of a compound of Formula (III), wherein the composition comprises the (E)-isomer and the (Z)-isomer of the compound of Formula (III) (i.e., (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen) in an E/Z ratio between 0.9 and 1.3, such as about 1.1. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II exhibits an x-ray powder diffraction (XRPD) pattern substantially as shown in **Fig. 11** or **Fig. 12**. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II has an XRPD pattern comprising at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, or at least six of the major peaks as the XRPD pattern substantially as shown in **Fig. 11** or **Fig. 12**.

[0174] In certain embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising a peak at $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta and a peak at $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising at least one peak selected from $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form II is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $7.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $14.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $18.4 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and peaks at $6.6 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $20.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $22.0 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

[0175] In certain embodiments, the present disclosure provides a composition comprising polymorphic Form II. Greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition may be polymorphic Form II. In some embodiments, the composition comprises

0.01 mg to 200 mg of polymorphic Form II. In some embodiments, the composition comprises about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of polymorphic Form II.

Formula III, Form III

[0176] In certain aspects, the present disclosure provides polymorphic Form III of a compound of Formula (III), wherein the composition comprises the (E)-isomer and the (Z)-isomer of the compound of Formula (III) (i.e., (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen) in an E/Z ratio between 0.9 and 1.3, such as about 1.1. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III exhibits an x-ray powder diffraction (XRPD) pattern substantially as shown in **Fig. 13**. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III has an XRPD pattern comprising at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, or at least six of the major peaks as the XRPD pattern substantially as shown in **Fig. 13**.

[0177] In certain embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising a peak at $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta and a peak at $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising at least one peak selected from $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and at least one peak selected from $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta. In some embodiments, polymorphic Form III is characterized by an x-ray powder diffraction pattern comprising major peaks at $11.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $13.9 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $17.1 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $17.7 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta, and peaks at $18.2 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $22.5 \pm 0.3^\circ$, $25.3 \pm 0.3^\circ$ and $26.8 \pm 0.3^\circ$ two theta.

[0178] In certain embodiments, the present disclosure provides a composition comprising polymorphic Form III. Greater than 90%, 95% or 99% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) in the composition may be polymorphic Form III. In some embodiments, the composition comprises 0.01 mg to 200 mg of polymorphic Form III. In some embodiments, the composition comprises about 1 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg, 10 mg or 20 mg of polymorphic Form III.

Endoxifen Free Base Compositions

[0179] In one aspect, the present disclosure provides stable (Z)-endoxifen free base or salts thereof, and compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or salts thereof. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises endoxifen predominantly as (Z)-endoxifen free base.

[0180] In certain embodiments, compositions may comprise endoxifen as at least 0.1%, at least 0.2%, at least 0.3%, at least 0.4%, at least 0.5%, at least 1%, at least 5%, at least 10%, at least 20%, at least 25%, at least 30%, at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, at least 90%, at least 91%, at least 92%, at least 93%, at least 94%, at least 95%, at least 96%, at least 97%, at least 98%, at least 99%, at least 99.5%, at least 99.99%, or 100% of (Z)-endoxifen free base wt/wt of total endoxifen in the composition. In at least one composition, the composition comprises $\geq 90\%$ of (Z)-endoxifen free base wt/wt of the total endoxifen in the composition. In another embodiment, the composition comprises $\geq 95\%$ of (Z)-endoxifen free base wt/wt of the total endoxifen in the composition. In yet another embodiment, the compositions comprise $\geq 96\%$, $\geq 97\%$, $\geq 98\%$, $\geq 99\%$, or $\geq 99.5\%$ of (Z)-endoxifen free base wt/wt of the total endoxifen in the composition.

[0181] In other embodiments, compositions comprising endoxifen comprise 0.01% to 20%, 0.05% to 15%, or 0.1% to 10% of (Z)-endoxifen wt/wt or w/v of the composition. In at least one embodiment, the compositions comprising endoxifen comprise 0.01% to 20% of (Z)-endoxifen wt/wt or w/v of the composition. In various other embodiments, the compositions comprising endoxifen comprise 0.01%, 0.02%, 0.03%, 0.04%, 0.05%, 0.06%, 0.07%, 0.08%, 0.09%, 0.1%, 0.2%, 0.3%, 0.4%, 0.5%, 0.6%, 0.7%, 0.8%, 0.9%, 1%, 2%, 3%, 4%, 5%, 10%, or 20% of (Z)-endoxifen wt/wt of the composition.

[0182] In an aspect, the compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen further comprise (E)-endoxifen. In some embodiments, the endoxifen in the composition has a ratio of (E)-endoxifen to (Z)-endoxifen (E/Z-ratio) of 1:99; 5:95; 10:90; 15:85; 20:80; 25:75; 30:70; 40:70; 45:55; 50:50; 55:45; 60:40; 65:45; and 70:30. In other embodiments, compositions comprise endoxifen having E/Z-ratio ranging from 10:90 to 70:30. In still other embodiments, compositions comprise endoxifen having E/Z-ratio ranging from 45:55 to 55:45.

[0183] Unless specifically referred to by the prefix (Z), (E) or (E/Z), endoxifen used generally without a prefix is used herein to include to any or all endoxifen isoforms.

Endoxifen Salt Compositions

[0184] In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides compositions comprising salts of endoxifen. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides compositions comprising

pharmaceutically acceptable salts of endoxifen. Provided herein in certain embodiments are compositions comprising 1%, 5%, 10%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99%, 99.5%, 99.99% or 100% of endoxifen salt.

[0185] In some embodiments, the salt is selected from the group consisting of arecoline, besylate, bicarbonate, bitartrate, butylbromide, citrate, camysylate, gluconate, glutamate, glycolylarsanilate, hexylresorcinate, hydrabamine, hydrobromide, hydrochloride, hydroxynaphthanoate, isethionate, malate, mandelate, mesylate, methylbromide, methylnitrate, methylsulfate, mucate, napsylate, nitrate, pamaoate (Embonate), pantothenate, phosphate/diphosphate, polygalacturonate, salicylate, stearate, sulfate, tannate, Teoclate, triethiodide, benzathine, clemizole, chlorprocaine, choline, diethylamine, diethanolamine, ethylenediamine, meglumine, piperazine, procaine, aluminum, barium, bismuth, lithium, magnesium, potassium, and zinc. In some embodiments, the salt is endoxifen gluconate. Endoxifen gluconate can be selected from the group consisting of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen L-gluconate or a combination thereof.

[0186] In some embodiments, a composition comprising endoxifen gluconate is comprised of 10% to 100% of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate on a wt/wt basis of total endoxifen gluconate in the composition. In some embodiments, a composition comprising endoxifen gluconate is comprised of 10% to 100% of (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate on a wt/wt basis of total endoxifen in the composition.

[0187] In other embodiments, a composition comprising endoxifen gluconate is comprised of 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99%, 99.5%, 99.75%, 99.99%, or 100% of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate or (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate with respect to total endoxifen gluconate. In some embodiments, the compositions comprise at least 80%, at least 85%, at least 90%, at least 91%, at least 92%, at least 93%, at least 94%, at least 95%, at least 96%, at least 97%, at least 98%, at least 99%, at least 99.5%, or at least 99.99% of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate or a combination thereof.

[0188] Provided herein in some embodiments are compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate and (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate. (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate and (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate may be present in the compositions at ratios ranging from 10:90 to 99:1 wt/wt or v/v respectively. In some embodiments, the ratio of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate to (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate is (wt/wt or v/v) 10:90 to 99:1 (e.g., 45:55, 50:50, 60:40, 70:30, 80:20, 90:10; 91:9; 92:8; 93:7; 94:8; 95:5; 96:4; 97:3; 98:2; 99:1, 99.5:0.5, or 99.99:0.01) respectively. In certain embodiments, the ratio of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate to (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate (wt/wt or v/v) is 90:10; 91:9; 92:8; 93:7; 94:8; 95:5; 96:4; 97:3; 98:2; 99:1, 99.5:0.5, or 99.99:0.01. One of skill in the

art will recognize that other combinations of endoxifen gluconate isomers are encompassed in the present disclosure.

[0189] In some embodiments, a composition comprising endoxifen gluconate comprises 0.01%, 0.05%, 0.01%, 0.1%, 0.2%, 0.3%, 0.4%, 0.5%, 1%, 2%, 3%, 4%, 5%, 6%, 7%, 8%, 9%, 10%, 11%, 12%, 13%, 14%, 15%, 16%, 17%, 18%, 19% or 20% endoxifen gluconate (wt/wt) or (w/v) of the composition. In some embodiments, a composition comprising endoxifen gluconate comprises 0.01%, 0.05%, 0.01%, 0.1%, 0.2%, 0.3%, 0.4%, 0.5%, 1%, 2%, 3%, 4%, 5%, 6%, 7%, 8%, 9%, 10%, 11%, 12%, 13%, 14%, 15%, 16%, 17%, 18%, 19% or 20% (Z)-endoxifen gluconate (wt/wt) or (w/v) of the composition.

[0190] The compounds and compositions of the present disclosure can be administered to a subject in need thereof by any route known in the art, including without limitation, oral, parenteral, topical, and intraductal delivery. Accordingly, compositions disclosed herein are formulated to be compatible with the intended route of administration.

[0191] In some embodiments, the compositions comprising endoxifen further comprise an excipient. Such an excipient can be compatible with the intended route of administration.

Endoxifen Polymorph Compositions

[0192] In one aspect, the present disclosure provides compositions comprising one or more polymorphic forms, such as Form I, Form II, or Form II described herein, of endoxifen. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises endoxifen predominantly as polymorph Form I. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises endoxifen predominantly as polymorph Form II. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises endoxifen predominantly as polymorph Form III.

[0193] In certain embodiments, a composition comprises endoxifen as at least 0.1%, at least 0.2%, at least 0.3%, at least 0.4%, at least 0.5%, at least 1%, at least 5%, at least 10%, at least 20%, at least 25%, at least 30%, at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, at least 90%, at least 91%, at least 92%, at least 93%, at least 94%, at least 95%, at least 96%, at least 97%, at least 98%, at least 99%, at least 99.5%, at least 99.99%, or 100% of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt of total endoxifen in the composition. In at least one composition, the composition comprises $\geq 90\%$ of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt of the total endoxifen in the composition. In another embodiment, the composition comprises $\geq 95\%$ of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt of the total endoxifen in the composition. In yet another

embodiment, the composition comprises $\geq 96\%$, $\geq 97\%$, $\geq 98\%$, $\geq 99\%$, or $\geq 99.5\%$ of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt of the total endoxifen in the composition. When a particular percentage by weight of endoxifen is a single polymorphic form, the remainder of endoxifen in the composition is some combination of amorphous endoxifen and/or one or more polymorphic forms of endoxifen excluding the single polymorphic form. When the polymorphic endoxifen is defined as one particular form of endoxifen, the remainder is made up of amorphous endoxifen and/or one or more polymorphic forms other than the particular form specified. Examples of single polymorphic forms include Forms I, II and III of endoxifen, as well as descriptions of a single polymorphic form characterized by one or more properties as described herein.

[0194] In other embodiments, a composition comprising endoxifen comprises 0.01% to 20%, 0.05% to 15%, or 0.1% to 10% of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt or w/v of the composition. In at least one embodiment, the composition comprising endoxifen comprises 0.01% to 20% of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt or w/v of the composition. In various other embodiments, the composition comprising endoxifen comprises 0.01%, 0.02%, 0.03%, 0.04%, 0.05%, 0.06%, 0.07%, 0.08%, 0.09%, 0.1%, 0.2%, 0.3%, 0.4%, 0.5%, 0.6%, 0.7%, 0.8%, 0.9%, 1%, 2%, 3%, 4%, 5%, 10%, or 20% of a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, wt/wt of the composition. In an aspect, a composition comprising a single polymorphic Form of endoxifen, such as Form I, Form II, or Form III, further comprises a second polymorphic Form of endoxifen.

Oral Formulations

[0195] In some embodiments, a pharmaceutical composition of the present disclosure is formulated for oral delivery. Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared in solid or fluid unit dosage forms. In at least some embodiments, the compositions are formulated for oral delivery as tablets, caplets, capsules, pills, powders, troches, elixirs, suspensions, syrups, wafers, chewing gums, dragees, lozenges, and the like.

[0196] In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms are solid oral dosage forms such as tablets, caplets, and capsules. In some embodiments, the capsule is a hard capsule or a soft capsule. In other embodiments, the capsule is a gelatin capsule, gelatin-free capsule, a “cap-in-cap” capsule, alginate capsule, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose (HPMC) capsule, a polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) capsule, a hypromellose capsule, or a starch capsule.

Excipients

[0197] In some embodiments, an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof further comprises one or more excipients. In some embodiments, an oral composition comprising endoxifen or a polymorph thereof further comprises one or more excipients. Accordingly, compositions designed for oral administration can be made with an inert or active excipient or with an edible carrier as disclosed herein.

[0198] In various embodiments, the composition provided herein comprises from about 1% to about 99.99%, about 5% to about 95%, about 5% to about 90%, about 10% to about 80%, about 15% to about 70%, about 20% to about 60%, from about 30% to about 95%, from about 50% to about 90%, from about 60% to about 90%, from about 60% to about 80%, or from about 70% to about 80% by weight of one or more excipients. In certain embodiments, the composition provided herein comprises about 99.99%, about 95%, about 90%, about 85%, about 80%, about 75%, about 70%, about 65%, about 60%, about 55%, or about 50% by weight of one or more excipients. In certain embodiments, the composition provided herein comprises about 99.99%, about 99%, about 98%, about 97%, about 96%, about 95%, about 94%, about 93%, about 92%, about 91%, about 90%, about 89%, about 88%, about 87%, about 86%, or about 85% by weight of one or more excipients. In certain embodiments, the composition provided herein comprises about 85%, about 84%, about 83%, about 82%, about 80%, about 79%, about 78%, about 77%, about 76%, about 75%, about 74%, about 73%, about 72%, about 71%, about 70%, about 69%, about 68%, about 67%, about 66%, or about 65% by weight of one or more excipients. In certain embodiments, the composition provided herein comprises about 55%, about 54%, about 53%, about 52%, about 51%, about 50%, about 49%, about 48%, about 47%, about 46%, or about 45% by weight of one or more excipients. In certain embodiments, the composition provided herein comprises about 30%, about 29%, about 28%, about 27%, about 26%, about 25%, about 24%, about 23%, about 22%, about 21%, or about 20% by weight of one or more excipients.

[0199] Examples of excipients that can be used in the compositions formulated for oral administration are provided herein and can include, but are not limited to, one or more of bulking agents, binders, fillers, disintegrating agents, lubricants, glidants, control release agents, enteric coatings, film-forming agents, plasticizers, colorants, sweeteners, flavoring agents and the like, or any combination thereof.

[0200] Binders suitable for use in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, sucrose, starches such as corn starch, potato starch, or starches such as starch paste, pregelatinized starch, and starch 1500, PEG 6000, methocel, walocel HM, Luvitec,

Luvicaparolactam, Avicel, SMCC, UNIPURE, gelatin, natural and synthetic gums such as acacia, sodium alginate, alginic acid, other alginates, tragacanth, guar gum, cellulose and its derivatives (e.g., ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose), polyvinyl pyrrolidone, methyl cellulose, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose, (e.g., Nos. 2208, 2906, 2910), microcrystalline cellulose, and mixtures thereof. Suitable forms of microcrystalline cellulose include, but are not limited to, the materials sold as AVICEL PH 101, AVICEL PH 103 AVICEL RC 581, AVICEL PH 105 (available from FMC Corporation, American Viscose Division, Avicel Sales, Marcus Hook, Pa.), and mixtures thereof. In some embodiments, the binder is a mixture of microcrystalline cellulose and sodium carboxymethyl cellulose. Suitable anhydrous or low moisture excipients or additives include AVICEL PH 103 and Starch 1500 LM.

[0201] Examples of fillers suitable for use in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, talc, calcium carbonate (e.g., granules or powder), sugars such as dextrose, sucrose, lactose, a salt such as calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, sodium carbonate, sodium phosphate, starches, microcrystalline cellulose, powdered cellulose, cellulosic bases such as methyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose dextrates, kaolin, mannitol, silicic acid, sorbitol, starch, pregelatinized starch, and mixtures thereof.

[0202] One or more binder or filler in compositions is typically present in from about 10% to about 99% (wt/wt) of the composition or the dosage form. In some embodiments, binders and/or fillers in a composition comprise about 15% to 99%, about 20% to 60%, about 25% to 55%, about 30% to 50%, about 35% to 60%, about 50% to 99% (wt/wt) of the composition.

[0203] Disintegrants can be used in the compositions to provide tablets that disintegrate when exposed to an aqueous environment. Tablets that contain too much disintegrant may disintegrate in storage, while those that contain too little may not disintegrate at a desired rate or under the desired conditions. Thus, a sufficient amount of disintegrant that is neither too much nor too little to detrimentally alter the release of the active ingredients should be used to form solid oral dosage forms. In some embodiments, the disintegrant is deep in the oral solid dosage form to delay disintegration. The amount of disintegrant used varies based upon the type of formulation, and is readily discernible to those of ordinary skill in the art.

[0204] Typical compositions comprise from 0.5% to 15% (wt/wt) of disintegrant. In some embodiments, compositions comprise from 1% to 5% (wt/wt) of disintegrant in the composition. In another embodiment, the disintegrant is 1% to 25%, 2% to 20%, 5% to 15%, 8% to 12%, or about 10% (wt/wt) of the composition.

[0205] Disintegrants that can be used in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, agar, alginic acid, calcium carbonate, microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium, crospovidone, polacrillin potassium, sodium starch glycolate, potato or tapioca starch, pre-gelatinized starch, other starches, clays, other algin, other celluloses, gums, and mixtures thereof.

[0206] Lubricants that can be used in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, mineral oil, light mineral oil, glycerin, sorbitol, mannitol, polyethylene glycol, other glycols, stearic acid, sodium lauryl sulfate, talc, hydrogenated vegetable oil (e.g., peanut oil, cottonseed oil, sunflower oil, sesame oil, olive oil, corn oil, and soybean oil), zinc stearate, magnesium stearate or potassium stearate, ethyl oleate, ethyl laureate, agar, and mixtures thereof. Additional lubricants include, for example, a syloid silica gel (AEROSIL 200, manufactured by W.R. Grace Co. of Baltimore, Md.), a coagulated aerosol of synthetic silica (marketed by Degussa Co. of Plano, Tex.), CAB O SIL (a pyrogenic silicon dioxide product sold by Cabot Co. of Boston, Mass.), Q7-9120 (Dow Corning), and mixtures thereof. If used at all, lubricants are typically used in an amount of less than 1% (wt/wt) of the compositions or dosage forms into which they are incorporated. In yet another embodiment, the lubricant is 0.1% to 3%, such as 0.5% to 1% (wt/wt), of the composition.

[0207] Plasticizers may be added to control the softness or pliability of oral dosage forms such as shell of a capsule, caplet or a tablet and thus, may improve the mechanical properties of the pH-sensitive materials of the coatings on the oral dosage forms. Suitable plasticizers, include, without limitation, petroleum oils (for e.g., a paraffinic process oil, a naphthenic process oil, and an aromatic process oil), squalene, squalane, plant oils, (e.g., olive oil, camelia oil, castor oil, tall oil, and a peanut oil), silicon oils, dibasic acid esters, (e.g., dibutyl phthalate, and dioctyl phthalate), liquid rubbers (e.g., polybutene and a liquid isoprene rubber), liquid fatty acid esters (e.g., isopropyl myristate ISM), hexyl laurate, diethyl sebacate, and diisopropyl sebacate, triethyl citrate, triacetin, diethylene glycol, polyethylene glycols, polypropylene glycol, phthalates, sorbitol, glycol salicylate, crothamintol, and glycerin or mixtures thereof. The amount of plasticizer may vary depending upon the chemical composition of the pharmaceutical preparation. In one embodiment, the at least one plasticizer is sorbitol, dimethyl isosorbide, or a glycerol. In another embodiment, the plasticizer is 1% to 10%, such as 3% to 5% (wt/wt), of the composition.

[0208] Examples of glidants include, but are not limited to, colloidal silicone dioxide, cellulose, calcium phosphate, di or tri-basic and the like.

[0209] As an example of sweeteners or sweetening agents include sucrose, saccharin, dextrose, maltose, sugar substitutes, aspartame, xylitol, mannitol, cyclamate, sucralose, maltitol, sorbitol, acesulfame K and the like.

[0210] Examples of flavoring agents include peppermint, methyl salicylate, peppermint, spearmint, methyl salicylate, raspberry, red berry, strawberry, pineapple, orange, cherry and the like.

[0211] Compositions formulated for oral delivery as disclosed herein, for example, tablets, caplets, and capsules, may be coated with one or more enteric coating agent, control release agent or film forming agent to control or delay disintegration and absorption of the compositions comprising endoxifen or salts thereof in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period of time. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the tablet can be an enteric tablet, the caplet can be an enteric caplet, or the capsule can be an enteric capsule. The enteric tablets, enteric caplets, or enteric capsules of the present disclosure may be prepared by techniques known in the art.

[0212] Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent. Examples of control release agent suitable for use include, without limitation, pH-dependent polymers, acid-insoluble polymers, methyl acrylate-methacrylic acid copolymers, cellulose acetate phthalate (CAP), cellulose acetate succinate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose acetate succinate (hypromellose acetate succinate), polyvinyl acetate phthalate (PVAP), methyl methacrylate-methacrylic acid copolymers, shellac, cellulose acetate trimellitate, sodium alginate, zein, waxes, including synthetic waxes, microcrystalline waxes, paraffin wax, carnauba wax, and beeswax; polyethoxylated castor oil derivatives, hydrogenated oils, glyceryl mono-, di- tribenates, glyceryl monostearate, glyceryl distearate, long chain alcohols, such as stearyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, and polyethylene glycol; and mixtures thereof. In some embodiments, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate may be used. In other embodiments, the controlled release reagent is a digestible waxy substance such as hard paraffin wax.

[0213] In some embodiments, compositions may comprise one or more of pH-dependent polymers such as acid insoluble polymers. The pH-dependent polymers become increasingly permeable above pH 5.0 but are impermeable at pH below 5.0 whereas acid insoluble polymers become soluble in neutral to weakly alkaline conditions. Such control release polymers target upper small intestines and colon. Non-limiting examples of acid-insoluble polymers include cellulose acetate phthalate, cellulose acetate butyrate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, algenic acid salts such as sodium or potassium alginate, shellac, pectin, acrylic acid-methylacrylic acid copolymers

(commercially available under the tradename EUDRAGIT® L and EUDRAGIT® S from Rohm America Inc., Piscataway, NJ as a powder or a 30% aqueous dispersion; or under the tradename EASTACRYL®, from Eastman Chemical Co., Kingsport, TN, as a 30% dispersion). Additional examples include EUDRAGIT® L100-55, EUDRAGIT® L30D-55, EUDRAGIT® L100, EUDRAGIT® L100 12,5, EUDRAGIT® S100, EUDRAGIT® S12,5, EUDRAGIT® FS 30D, EUDRAGIT® E100, EUDRAGIT® E 12,5, and EUDRAGIT® PO. In at least one embodiment, the composition comprises EUDRAGIT® L100-55. EUDRAGIT® RS and RL and EUDRAGIT®NE and NM are also useful polymers for the purpose of this disclosure. In some embodiments, the composition comprises EUDRAGIT® L30D 55. In another embodiment, the preparation comprises EUDRAGIT® FS 30D. One of skill in the art will recognize that at least some acid insoluble polymers listed herein will also be biodegradable.

[0214] For time delay or delayed-release pharmaceutical preparations of oral dosage forms, glyceryl monostearate, glyceryl distearate, and acid-insoluble polymers, for example polymethacrylate pH-sensitive polymer-based coatings can be used, (e.g., as coating material, i.e., enteric coating agents, for enteric coating of capsules, caplets, and tablets). Commercial sources for delayed-release oral dosage forms are available, for example DRCaps made of hypromellose (HPMC) from Capsugel, USA. Such delayed-release oral dosage forms are acid-resistant and can resist acidity as seen in stomach for at least 30 min, such as for at least 1 hour, for at least 1.5 hour, or for at least 2 hours. Such delayed release oral dosage forms can release at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80% or at least 90% of the endoxifen or salts thereof in the intestines (small intestines, large intestine/colon etc).

[0215] In an aspect of the present disclosure, the enteric tablets, enteric caplets, and enteric capsules may be uncoated. Hard uncoated capsules with enteric capability using intrinsically enteric capsule technology (for example, EnTrinsic Drug Delivery available from Capsugel) are suitable for the purpose of the present disclosure.

[0216] In various embodiments, the enteric tablet is a hard tablet made with free-flowing powder of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof. In various embodiments, the enteric capsule is a capsule made with free-flowing powder of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof. In various embodiments, the enteric tablet is a hard tablet made with free-flowing powder of endoxifen or a polymorph thereof. In various embodiments, the enteric capsule is a capsule made with free-flowing powder of endoxifen or a polymorph thereof.

[0217] In some embodiments, the enteric capsule is a non-animal based capsule, such as a hypromellose capsule (for example, commercially available self-gelling Vcaps, Vcaps Plus, Vcaps

enteric, other enteric capsules made using Xcellodose, ENCODE colonic delivery technology, and EnTrinsicTM drug delivery technology from Capsugel). Other technologies known in the art and available commercially (for example, Qualicaps, USA, Nutrascience, USA, etc.) for the formulating enteric forms of oral solid dosage forms can also be utilized. In at least one embodiment, the capsule is an API-in-capsule, meaning that the (Z)-endoxifen free base or salts thereof is filled neat into the capsule. In such API-in-capsule oral dosage forms, the active ingredient, (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof can be free flowing powders or micronized powders. When the dosage form is a capsule, in at least one embodiment, the capsule can be a seamless capsule or a banded capsule.

[0218] Rapid absorption and bioavailability of the anti-cancer therapeutics such as endoxifen that can further reduce the cancer growth rate are highly desirable. In an aspect, the present disclosure provides that the compositions are formulated for certain pharmacokinetic (PK) properties.

[0219] In one aspect, rapid achievement of maximal and steady state plasma levels of endoxifen is a particular aspect of the present disclosure. The present disclosure provides compositions that achieve a maximal plasma level of endoxifen ranging within 2 to 30 hours, within 3 to 20 hours, within 2 to 10 hours or within 4 to 8 hours after administration of the compositions. Accordingly, in some embodiments, time to maximal (peak) plasma level of endoxifen ranges from 2 to 10 hours after administration of the composition. In some embodiments, the time to maximal plasma level of endoxifen ranges from 4 to 8 hours after administration of a composition disclosed herein.

[0220] Rapid achievement of steady-state plasma levels of endoxifen is also highly desirable, and a composition of the present disclosure may provide a plasma level of endoxifen in a subject administered the composition comprising a polymorphic form of endoxifen, (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof that rapidly achieves steady state. Steady state plasma levels can be achieved from day 7 to day 21. In some embodiments, the steady state plasma levels can be achieved by day 7 (Figure 5) upon daily administration of a composition disclosed herein.

[0221] In an aspect, the present disclosure provides that circulating endoxifen released from a composition disclosed herein can be cleared faster than tamoxifen. Terminal elimination half life of tamoxifen is said to be 5-7 days (Jordan C. Steroids. 2007 Nov; 72(13): 829-842) and peak concentration time of tamoxifen is approximately 5 hours post-dose. Endoxifen released from a composition disclosed herein can have a terminal elimination half-life ranging from 30 to 60 hours, significantly lower than tamoxifen. In some embodiments, the mean half -life ranges from 40 to 53 hours. The mean ratio of AUC_{24hr} (Day 21)/AUC_{0-inf} (Day1) typically ranges from 0.7 to 1.2 for compositions comprising 1 mg to 4 mg (Z)-endoxifen, or a salt thereof. Thus, accumulation of

endoxifen released from a compositions disclosed herein does not significantly vary over continued treatment.

[0222] In another aspect, a composition described herein achieves absorption of endoxifen that is therapeutically effective.

[0223] Area under Curve $AUC_{(0-24hr)}$ (“ AUC_{24hr} ”) describes the total exposure of the subject to a drug from time of dosing (0 hr) over a 24 hour period. Compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof typically achieve mean (AUC_{24hr}) of 150 hr*ng/mL to 600 hr*ng/mL on Day 1 of initial (first) dose of a composition comprising 1 mg to 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. Compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof typically achieve mean AUC_{24hr} of 400 hr*ng/mL to 2500 hr*ng/mL on Day 21 of initial (first) dose of compositions comprising 1 mg to 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

[0224] AUC_{0-inf} (“ AUC_{0-inf} ”), a time-averaged concentration of drug circulating in the body fluid analyzed (normally plasma, blood or serum), describes the total exposure of the subject to a drug. The present disclosure provides that the exposure of a subject to endoxifen (AUC_{0-inf}) can be dose proportional. In some embodiments, AUC_{0-inf} ranges from 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL. In other embodiments, the AUC_{0-inf} ranges from 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL. In certain embodiments, the AUC_{0-inf} ranges from 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL over the dosing range of 1 mg to 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen (for example, see **Table 17**).

[0225] Dissolution of the oral dosage forms disclosed herein is tested by the dissolution tests according to the current methods of USP 711. In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms disclosed herein are protected from the acidic environment of the stomach and do not dissolve for at least 2 hours, at least 3 hours, at least 4 hours, at least 5 hours, 6 hours, at least 7 hours or at least 8 hours. In at least one embodiment, the oral dosage forms do not release endoxifen for at least 6 hours. In another embodiment, the oral dosage forms do not release endoxifen or a salt thereof for at least 2 hours.

[0226] In other embodiments, less than 10% of (Z)-endoxifen in a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt thereof disclosed herein is released in the stomach after 2 hours after administration; or wherein less than 40% of (Z)-endoxifen is released in the stomach after 4 hours of administration; or less than 50% of (Z)-endoxifen is released in the stomach after 6 hours of administration, as tested by a method of USP 711.

[0227] In another embodiment, a composition disclosed herein releases in the stomach less than 10% of (Z)-endoxifen in 2 hours after administration, less than 40% of (Z)-endoxifen in 4 hours after administration; and less than 50% of (Z)-endoxifen in 6 hours after administration, as tested by a method of USP 711.

[0228] In yet another embodiment, the composition is formulated to release in the small intestine, such that at least 10% of endoxifen is released after 4 hours after administration; or at least 30% of endoxifen is released after 6 hours after administration; or at least 40% of endoxifen is released after 7 hours after administration; or at least 50% of endoxifen is released after 8 hours after administration, as tested by a method of USP 711.

[0229] In a further embodiment, as determined by a method of USP 711, the composition is formulated to release in the colon at least 50% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration.

[0230] In still further embodiments, the composition is formulated to release in the colon at least 20% of endoxifen after 4 hours after administration; at least 40% of endoxifen after 6 hours after administration; at least 60% of endoxifen after 7 hours after administration; or at least 80% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration.

[0231] An oral dosage form can be of any shape suitable for oral administration, such as spherical (0.05 - 5 mL), oval (0.05 - 7 mL), ellipsoidal, pear (0.3 - 5 mL), cylindrical, cubic, regular and/or irregular shaped. An oral dosage form may be of any size suitable for oral administration, for example, size 0, size 2, and the like.

[0232] One of skill in the art will further recognize that compositions disclosed herein may comprise one or more of the excipients known in the art and disclosed herein in any combination appropriate for a desired formulation or preparation. Additional excipients may generally be found in Remington's The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, Meade Publishing Co., United States Pharmacopeia/National Formulary. One of skill in the art will be able to select suitable excipients necessary for the preparation of the formulations and appropriate dosage forms compatible with the route of administration based on his or her skill and knowledge in the art and the disclosures made herein. In all cases, the ultimate dosage form should be sterile and stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage.

[0233] For formulations of the solid dosage compositions disclosed herein, as the water activity (A_w) is less than 0.75, testing Total Aerobic Plate Count (TAC) and USP indicator organism is typically not necessary. The publication, "Microbial Bioburden on Oral Solid Dosage Form," by Jose E. Martinez, Pharmaceutical Technology, February 2002, pages 58 to 70, is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

[0234] Furthermore, since formulations of the compositions disclosed herein also have water activity of less than 0.75, then detailed microbial testing is typically not necessary. TAC is an estimation of the total viable aerobic microbes present in a sample of raw material, in-process

material, or finished product. Samples are analyzed in accordance with the most current USP 39 <61>, “Microbiological Examination of Nonsterile Products: Microbial Enumeration Tests.”

[0235] Acceptable TAC for oral solid dosage forms (OSDFs) are established for the formulation of the inventive compositions in terms of alert and action levels, which could be 1000 cfu g/mL, and 10,000 cfu g/mL, respectively. A TAC that is 20,000 cfu g/mL may be considered unacceptable.

[0236] For other formulations, such as liquid or fluid formulations with water activity of less than 0.75, Tests for Specified Microorganisms (*S. aureus*, *Ps. aeruginosa*, *Salmonella*, *C. albicans*, *Clostridia*, *E. coli* and Bile Tolerant Gram negative bacteria) in compliance with USP Guidelines Chapter 62 may not need to be performed.

Methods of Use

[0237] Compounds of Formulae (I), (II), (III), and (IV), endoxifen salts disclosed herein, polymorphic forms of endoxifen disclosed herein, and compositions comprising them may be used in the manufacture of medicaments for use in the treatment of a subject in need thereof, for example, subjects having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

[0238] The compositions of the present disclosure may be used as a primary therapy, as a part of a neo-adjuvant therapy (to primary therapy), or as part of adjuvant therapy regimen, where the intention is to ameliorate or cure a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

[0239] In certain embodiments, the disorder is a hormone-dependent breast disorder. In other embodiments, the disorder is hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder. In still other embodiments, the subject has both a hormone-dependent breast disorder and a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder. In some embodiments, the hormone dependent disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer or vulvar cancer.

[0240] In some embodiments, the breast disorder is increased breast density. For example, the breast disorder is a class B (formerly Class II), class C (formerly class III) or class D (formerly class IV) breast density.

[0241] In some embodiments, the hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is precocious puberty. In other embodiments, the hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is McCune-Albright Syndrome.

[0242] In some embodiments, the breast disorder is gynecomastia. In some embodiments, gynecomastia is presented secondarily to an underlying disease. Accordingly in some embodiments, the subject also has underlying disease selected from the group consisting of prostate cancer, cirrhosis and liver disease, male hypogonadism, hyperthyroidism, renal failure and in patients undergoing hemodialysis, or type I diabetes mellitis. In certain embodiments, the subject has prostate cancer as the underlying disease, wherein the subject has or is at risk of having gynecomastia.

[0243] In certain embodiments, the breast cancer is DCIS, LCIS, ILC, IDC, MIC, inflammatory breast cancer, ER-positive (ER+) breast cancer, HER2+ breast cancer, adenoid cystic (adenocystic) carcinoma, low-grade adenosquamous carcinoma, medullary carcinoma, mucinous (or colloid) carcinoma, papillary carcinoma, tubular carcinoma, metaplastic carcinoma, or micropapillary carcinoma. In at least one embodiment, a single breast cancer tumor may be a combination of the foregoing or be a mixture of invasive and in situ cancer.

[0244] The present disclosure contemplates the use of the compounds and compositions disclosed herein at various stages in tumor development and progression, including the treatment of advanced and/or aggressive neoplasms, i.e., overt disease in a subject that is not amenable to cure by local modalities of treatment such as surgery or radiotherapy, metastatic disease, or locally advanced disease. Accordingly in some embodiments, the breast cancer is a pre-cancer, an early stage cancer, a non-metastatic cancer, a pre-metastatic cancer, or a locally advanced cancer. In at least one embodiment, the breast disorder is metastatic cancer. In some embodiments, the subject further has prostate cancer.

[0245] Current choice for therapeutics for such disorders remains tamoxifen, despite serious adverse effects, poor patient compliance and resistance to the drug due to low plasma endoxifen levels seen subjects. Such subjects may have low endoxifen levels upon dosing with tamoxifen for any number of reasons, such as having CYP gene mutations, for example, in CYP2D6, CYP3A4, or CYP2C9, making them unable to metabolize tamoxifen to its active metabolite, endoxifen, or low or dysfunctional estrogen receptor preventing (or decreasing) sufficient tamoxifen uptake, for other reasons yet to be identified. Reported therapeutic levels of plasma tamoxifen in subjects dosed with 20 mg of oral tamoxifen is ≥ 30 nM ((Lyon et al. Genet Med. 2012 Dec;14(12):990-1000). Notwithstanding the mechanism underlying the low plasma endoxifen in a subject, the compositions of the present disclosure are useful for any condition wherein a subject has low endoxifen or the subject has or is at a risk of having hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder. Therefore, the compositions of the present disclosure can be particularly

important in the treatment of tamoxifen-resistant, hormone-dependent breast disorders or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorders.

[0246] Provided herein in certain embodiments are patient populations for whom the pharmaceutical compositions are particularly useful. The compositions of the present disclosure are also particularly important in the treatment of tamoxifen-refractory subjects with hormone-dependent breast disorders or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorders. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the compositions disclosed herein are useful for the treatment of tamoxifen refractory or tamoxifen resistant subjects having or at risk of having hormone-dependent breast disorders, hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorders, or both. In some embodiments, compositions comprising an endoxifen salt, such as endoxifen gluconate, administered to such subject at the doses disclosed herein, will be advantageous.

[0247] Further, Donneyong et al. have shown that drug interactions between tamoxifen and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRI) drugs like Prozac and Paxil (paroxetine) exist and are detrimental to breast cancer subjects (Donneyong et al. BMJ 2016;354:i5014). The SSRI drugs reduce or stop liver metabolism of tamoxifen to endoxifen in subjects on SSRI drugs. Thus, provided herein in certain embodiments are patient populations being treated or to be treated with SSRI drugs that would be benefitted by treatment with compositions of the present disclosure.

[0248] Compositions disclosed herein administered orally maintain the subject's plasma endoxifen at steady state levels greater than 30 nM, for example, at levels ranging from 30 nM to 80 nM or at levels ranging from 30 nM to 300 nM. In some embodiments, the plasma steady state endoxifen levels are maintained at >40 nM. Maintenance of such a plasma endoxifen at steady state levels greater than 30 nM is advantageous in that the likelihood of recurrence (relapse) of hormone-dependent breast disorders or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorders, particularly breast cancer, at plasma endoxifen levels lower than 30 nM is reduced. It is particularly advantageous for subjects that are poor-metabolizers of tamoxifen (with plasma endoxifen levels lower than 16 nM), intermediate metabolizers of tamoxifen (with plasma endoxifen levels lower than 27 nM) to be dosed with a composition disclosed herein. It also advantageous for subjects being treated or to be treated with antidepressant drugs such as SSRI drugs such as citalopram (Celexa), escitalopram (Lexapro), fluoxetine (Prozac), paroxetine (Paxil, Pexeva), sertraline (Zoloft), vilazodone (Viibryd) and the like, for example, a subject having or likely to have depression.

[0249] Whether a subject is tamoxifen-refractory may be determined by dosing a subject with an initial dosage of tamoxifen and determining the subject's plasma endoxifen steady state level. Plasma endoxifen steady state levels in a subject dosed with tamoxifen serves as a biomarker for the

tamoxifen-refractory subjects. The plasma endoxifen levels (acute and/or steady state) may be determined by obtaining from the subject a test sample, which may be blood sample, collected from the subject after dosing the subject with tamoxifen. Plasma or serum may be obtained from blood samples for testing the biomarker endoxifen levels. The initial dosage may comprise administering tamoxifen daily for at least 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 15 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, 4 weeks, 1 month, 2 months, 3 months, 4 months, 5 months, or 6 months. The subject may also be administered with a first composition comprising tamoxifen daily for at least 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 15 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, 4 weeks, 1 month, 2 months, 3 months, 4 months, 5 months, 6 months, 1 year, 2 years, 3 years, 4 years, 5 years or 10 years.

[0250] A subject's plasma endoxifen steady state level may be determined by measuring endoxifen in a test sample. The subject's plasma endoxifen steady state levels are compared to a reference plasma endoxifen level. For the purposes of the present disclosure, the reference plasma level is 30 nM. If the subject's plasma endoxifen level is determined to be lower than 30 nM, then the subject is defined as tamoxifen-refractory. Such a tamoxifen-refractory subject who has or who may be at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is treated by administering to the subject an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof disclosed herein, or a polymorphic form of endoxifen disclosed herein. In some embodiments, the composition administered to such a subject comprises (Z)-endoxifen free base. In some embodiments, the composition administered to such a subject comprises a polymorphic form, such as Form I, Form II or Form III, of endoxifen. In other embodiments, the composition administered to such a subject comprises endoxifen gluconate selected from the group consisting of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen L-gluconate, or a combination thereof. In other embodiments, the composition comprising endoxifen is endoxifen HCl or endoxifen citrate. The present disclosure also contemplates that a subject's plasma endoxifen levels are tracked or monitored periodically or as necessary. If required, a subject who has been administered an initial dosage of tamoxifen may have his or her plasma endoxifen steady state levels adjusted by administering a composition comprising endoxifen on an ongoing basis based on the test results.

[0251] In some embodiments, the subject's tamoxifen-refractory status may be determined by determining the subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile which is compared with a reference tamoxifen-metabolite profile as seen in control or normal subjects. Subjects with low plasma endoxifen levels in subject's tamoxifen-metabolite profile as compared to the reference tamoxifen-

metabolite profile are administered an oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt thereof. Such compositions may comprise synthetically prepared endoxifen.

[0252] The plasma endoxifen may be measured by any of method known in the art. The levels of plasma endoxifen in test sample may be determined based on subject's genes, DNA, RNA, protein, tamoxifen-metabolite profile or a combination thereof. The tamoxifen-metabolites profile can include at least tamoxifen, 4-OHT, N-desmethyltamoxifen, and/or endoxifen. In some embodiments, the level of plasma endoxifen and/or tamoxifen-metabolite profile in the test sample is measured by High Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC), Gas Chromatography Mass Spectrometry (GC-MS), Liquid Chromatography Mass spectrometry (LC-MS), Liquid Chromatography Tandem Mass spectrometry (LC-MS/MS), immunohistochemistry (IHC), polymerase chain reaction (PCR), quantitative PCR (qPCR), and the like. In some embodiments, the tamoxifen-metabolites profile is predicted based on the subject's genetic composition. In some embodiments, the subject's CYP genotype includes, without limitation, analysis of CYP2D6, CYP3A4, CYP2C9 genes. In some embodiments, subject's estrogen receptor levels may be analyzed. In other embodiments, the determination of plasma endoxifen may be done by a third party laboratory.

[0253] Accordingly, provided herein are methods of maintaining in a subject in need thereof a plasma endoxifen a level greater than 30 nM by administering to the subject a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt thereof. In some embodiments, the subject's plasma endoxifen level is maintained at a steady state level greater than 30 nM. In some embodiments, the subject's plasma endoxifen levels are maintained at a steady state level ranging from 30 nM to 300 nM (for example, from 30 nM to 200 nM, or from 30 nm to 80 nM). In some embodiments, the subject's plasma endoxifen levels are maintained at a steady state level >40 nM.

[0254] In another aspect, the subjects may have their test samples tested for their biomarker profile that may be indicative or monitoring a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both. Such biomarkers are known in the art and include, by way of non-limiting examples, biomarkers such as CYP2D6, BRCA-1, BRCA-2, ER, PR, Her2, uPA, PAI, Tf, p53, Ki67, cytokeratins, cancer tumor antigens, and other biomarkers measured by Mammaprint, OncotypeDx, PAM50, EndoxPredict, MammoStrat, and other diagnostic and predictive tests. A subject with biomarker profile indicating that the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both can be administered a composition disclosed herein. In one aspect, the present disclosure provides a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, comprising determining a subject's tamoxifen-

refractory or tamoxifen-resistant status and administering to the subject a composition described herein.

[0255] In some aspects, provided herein are methods of treating a tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen-resistant subject, the method comprising administration to the subject a composition comprising endoxifen, or a salt or polymorph thereof.

[0256] In some embodiments disclosed herein are methods of treating a tamoxifen-refractory subject having or at risk for having a hormone-sensitive breast disorder, a hormone-sensitive reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising administration to the subject an oral composition comprising endoxifen, or a salt thereof, wherein the subject has plasma endoxifen level of less than 30 nM, less than 25 nM, less than 20 nM, less than 15 nM, less than 10 nM, less than 5 nM or less than 1 nM. In certain embodiments, the composition comprising endoxifen salt is endoxifen gluconate, endoxifen HCl, or endoxifen citrate. In other embodiments, an oral solid dosage form comprising at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof is administered. In other embodiments, an oral solid dosage form comprising at least 90% of polymorph Form I, Form II, or Form III of endoxifen is administered.

[0257] Also provided herein are methods of treating a tamoxifen-refractory subject, the method comprising: (a) determining or having determined plasma endoxifen level in a test sample obtained from the subject; (b) comparing or having compared or having determined the level of plasma endoxifen in the test sample with a reference plasma endoxifen level; (c) determining or having determined a reduced level of plasma endoxifen in the test sample as compared to the reference plasma endoxifen level; and (d) administering a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof to the subject. The administration of a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof maintains the levels of plasma endoxifen in the subject at steady state levels greater than 30 nM. In some embodiments, the levels of plasma endoxifen in the subject are maintained at steady state levels ranging from 30 nM to 80 nM.

[0258] Provided herein are methods of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormonal dependent breast disorder or a hormonal dependent reproductive tract disorder, the method comprising: (a) administering to the subject a first composition comprising tamoxifen; (b) determining or having determined the level of plasma endoxifen in a test sample obtained from the subject; (c) determining or having determined reduced level of plasma endoxifen in test sample as compared to a reference level of plasma endoxifen; and (d) administering an oral composition disclosed herein to the subject. The subject may be administered with the first composition comprising tamoxifen daily for at least 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 15 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, 4 weeks, 1

month, 2 months, 3 months, 4 months, 5 months, 6 months, 1 year, 2 years, 3 years, 4 years, 5 years or 10 years. In some embodiments, administration of the oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof maintains the subject's plasma endoxifen at levels greater than 30 nM. In other embodiments, administration of the oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof maintains the subject's plasma endoxifen at levels ranging from 30 nM to 300 nM (e.g., from 30 nM to 200 nM, or from 30 nM to 80 nM). In some embodiments, the subject is administered an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen L-gluconate, or a combination thereof. In other embodiments, the oral composition comprising endoxifen salt is endoxifen HCl or endoxifen citrate. In some embodiments, the subject is administered an oral composition comprising polymorph Form I, Form II or Form III of endoxifen disclosed herein.

[0259] Provided herein are methods of treating a subject with a hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, the method comprising: (a) dosing the subject with a first composition comprising tamoxifen; (b) determining or having determined the subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile in a test sample obtained from the subject; (c) determining a reduced level of subject's plasma endoxifen based on the subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile to compared to a level of reference plasma endoxifen in a reference tamoxifen-metabolites profile; and (d) administering an oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof to the subject. In certain embodiments, the composition comprising endoxifen is endoxifen gluconate, endoxifen HCl, or endoxifen citrate. In some embodiments, the composition comprises polymorph Form I, Form II, or Form III of endoxifen.

[0260] Provided herein are methods for adjusting plasma endoxifen levels in a subject being treated for hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder who has one or more CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 mutations or has previously administered with initial dosage of tamoxifen, and who has a plasma endoxifen level less than reference plasma endoxifen level, the method comprising: (a) measuring the subject's plasma endoxifen level after initial dosage of tamoxifen; (b) comparing the subject's plasma endoxifen levels to the reference plasma endoxifen level; (c) administering an oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof to the subject to maintain the subject's plasma endoxifen level at levels greater than 30 nM. In some embodiments, administration of the oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof maintains the subject's plasma endoxifen at levels ranging from 30 nM to 300 nM (e.g., from 30 nM to 200 nM, or from 30 nM to 80 nM). In some embodiments, the subject's plasma endoxifen level is maintained at a steady state level. The subject may be administered with initial dosage of

tamoxifen daily for at least 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 15 days, 1 week, 2 weeks, 4 weeks, 1 month, 2 months, 3 months, 4 months, 5 months, or 6 months.

[0261] Provided herein are methods for adjusting the level of plasma endoxifen in a subject being treated for hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder who has been previously administered an initial dosage of tamoxifen and who has a level of plasma endoxifen less than 30 nM, the method comprising: (a) measuring the level of plasma tamoxifen-metabolite endoxifen of the subject after the initial dosage of tamoxifen; (b) comparing the plasma level of tamoxifen-metabolite endoxifen to the reference level for normal tamoxifen-metabolite endoxifen level; (c) administering an adjusting dosage of a composition comprising synthetically prepared endoxifen, wherein the dosage of synthetically prepared endoxifen is sufficient to maintain the subject's plasma endoxifen at a level greater than 30 nM. In some embodiments, administration of the second composition comprising a synthetically prepared endoxifen maintains the subject's plasma endoxifen at levels ranging from 30 nM to 300 nM (e.g., from 30 nM to 200 nM, from 30 nM to 80 nM). In some embodiments, the steps (a) to (c) may be repeated until the subject exhibits a desired plasma level of endoxifen.

[0262] In an aspect, the present disclosure contemplates a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising resection of breast tissue of the subject or administering radiotherapy to the subject and administering an oral composition comprising endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof disclosed herein. In another aspect, the present disclosure contemplates a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising administering an oral composition disclosed herein prior to resection of breast tissue of the subject or administering radiotherapy to the subject.

[0263] Dosage to be administered to a subject will be usually in a unit dosage form. Examples of ranges for endoxifen in each dosage unit form are from 0.01 mg to 200 mg. Dosage shall generally be an effective amount and equivalent, on a molar basis, of the pharmacologically active (Z)-free form produced by a dosage formulation upon metabolic release of the active free drug to achieve its desired pharmacological and physiological effects. In some embodiments, the compositions comprising endoxifen or an endoxifen salt or polymorph are administered to the subject at a dose of 0.01 mg to 200.0 mg. In other embodiments, the oral compositions comprising endoxifen or an endoxifen salt or polymorph are administered to the subject at a dose of 1 mg to 200.0 mg. In some embodiments, the oral compositions comprising endoxifen or an endoxifen salt or polymorph are

administered to the subject at a dose of 0.01 mg, 0.05 mg, 0.1 mg, 0.25 mg, 0.5 mg, 0.75 mg, 1.0 mg, 1.5 mg, 2.0 mg, 4.0 mg, 6 mg, 8 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 100 mg or 200 mg per unit dose. In certain embodiments, the oral compositions comprising at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen (wt/wt) of endoxifen are administered at a dose of 1 mg, 2.0 mg, 4.0 mg 6 mg, 8 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 40 mg, 50, 100 mg or 200 mg per unit dose. In some embodiments, the compositions comprising endoxifen gluconate are administered at a dose ranging from 0.01 to 20 mg. In some embodiments, a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate is administered at 0.5 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg 4.0 mg, 6 mg, 8 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 40 mg, 50 mg, 100 mg, and 200 mg per unit dose. In some embodiments, a composition comprising 1 mg of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate is administered. In other embodiments, a composition comprising 1 mg of (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate is administered. In yet other embodiments, a composition comprising 2 mg of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate and (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate is administered. In certain embodiments, an oral composition comprising at least 90% of a polymorph, such as polymorph Form I, Form II or Form III, of endoxifen (wt/wt) is administered at a dose of 1 mg, 2.0 mg, 4.0 mg 6 mg, 8 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 40 mg, 50, 100 mg or 200 mg per unit dose. In some embodiments, a composition comprising a polymorphic form, such as Form I, Form II or Form III, of endoxifen is administered at a dose ranging from 0.01 to 20 mg.

[0264] Breast cancer growth rate studies have shown, using mammographic screening of subjects with breast cancer, that the breast cancer growth rate in the 25th percentiles of women ages 50 to 59 indicate an unmet need for fast exposure of the subject to therapeutics (Weeden-Fekjaer et al. Breast Cancer Research 2008 10:R41). Rapid absorption and bioavailability of the anti-cancer therapeutics such as endoxifen that can further reduce the cancer growth rate is highly desirable.

[0265] In one aspect, rapid achievement of maximal and steady state plasma levels of endoxifen is a particular aspect of the present disclosure. The present disclosure provides that administration of compositions disclosed herein to a subject achieves a maximal plasma level of endoxifen ranging within 2 to 30 hours, within 3 to 20 hours, within 2 to 10 hours or within 4 to 8 hours after administration of the compositions. Accordingly, in some embodiments, time to maximal (peak) plasma level of endoxifen ranges from 2 to 10 hours after administration of the compositions. In some embodiments, the time to maximal plasma level of endoxifen ranges from 4 to 8 hours after administration of composition disclosed herein.

[0266] Rapid achievement of steady-state plasma levels of endoxifen is also highly desirable. Plasma levels of endoxifen in a subject administered with a composition disclosed herein comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof rapidly achieves steady state. Steady state plasma levels can be achieved from day 7 to day 21. In some embodiments, the steady state plasma

levels can be achieved by day 7 (Figure 5) following daily administration of a composition disclosed herein.

[0267] In an aspect, the present provides that circulating endoxifen released from compositions disclosed herein can be cleared faster than tamoxifen. Terminal elimination half life of tamoxifen is said to be 5-7 days (Jordan C. Steroids. 2007 Nov; 72(13): 829–842) and peak concentration time of tamoxifen is approximately 5 hours post-dose. Endoxifen released from a composition disclosed herein can have a terminal elimination half-life ranging from 30 to 60 hours, significantly lower than tamoxifen. In some embodiments, the mean half -life ranges from 40 to 53 hours. Mean Ratio of AUC_{24hr} (Day 21)/ AUC_{0-inf} (Day1) typically ranges from 0.7 to 1.2 for compositions comprising 1 mg to 4 mg (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof. Thus, accumulation of endoxifen released from the compositions disclosed herein do not significantly vary over continued treatment.

[0268] In another aspect, the present disclosure provides that administration of compositions disclosed herein achieve absorption of endoxifen that is therapeutically effective.

[0269] Area under Curve $AUC_{(0-24hr)}$ (“ AUC_{24hr} ”) describes the total exposure of the subject to a drug from time of dosing (0 hr) over a 24 hour period. Compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt thereof typically achieve mean (AUC_{24hr}) of 150 hr*ng/mL to 600 hr*ng/mL on Day 1 of initial (first) dose of compositions comprising 1 mg to 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen. Compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof typically achieve mean AUC_{24hr} of 400 hr*ng/mL to 2500 hr*ng/mL on Day 21 of initial (first) dose of compositions comprising 1 mg to 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

[0270] $AUC_{(0-inf)}$ (“ AUC_{0-inf} ”), a time-averaged concentration of drug circulating in the body fluid analyzed (normally plasma, blood or serum), describes the total exposure of the subject to a drug. The present provides that the exposure of subjects to endoxifen (AUC_{0-inf}) can be dose proportional. In some embodiments, AUC_{0-inf} ranges from 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL. In other embodiments, the AUC_{0-inf} ranges from 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL. In certain embodiments, the AUC_{0-inf} ranges from 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL over the dosing range of 1 mg to 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen (for example, see **Table 17**).

[0271] A healthcare professional, such as an attending physician, may adjust the dosing regimen based on the pharmacokinetic profile of the composition in the subject.

[0272] In one aspect, the compositions of the disclosure can be used alone or in a combination therapy. For example, compositions disclosed herein may be used in combination with one or more therapeutic agents as part of primary therapy, neoadjuvant therapy, or an adjuvant therapy. It is an aspect of the present disclosure that the compositions of the disclosure can be used in combination with other therapies such as surgery and radiation as neo-adjuvant or adjuvant therapy.

Combinations of the compositions may act to improve the efficacy of the therapeutic agents, and therefore can be used to improve standard cancer therapies. For example, when a subject has prostate cancer and is on bicalutamide or enzalutamide therapy for the treatment of prostate cancer, the subject is likely to develop gynecomastia a result of the therapy. The compositions disclosed herein can be administered as a combination therapy to the subject having prostate cancer in order to prevent and/or treat gynecomastia. As another example, a subject with ER+/Her2+ positive breast cancer would be on a combination therapy with trastuzumab or other oncology drugs such as anti-neoplastics or immunotherapy, and a composition disclosed herein can be used to treat such a subject with ER+/Her2+ positive breast cancer. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the compositions further comprise bicalutamide, enzalutamide or anticancer drugs such as trastuzumab, antineoplastics such as capecitabine (Xeloda), carboplatin (Paraplatin), cisplatin (Platinol), cyclophosphamide (Neosar), docetaxel (Docefrez, Taxotere), doxorubicin (Adriamycin), pegylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil), epirubicin (Ellence), fluorouracil (5-FU, Adrucil), gemcitabine (Gemzar), methotrexate (multiple brand names), paclitaxel (Taxol), protein-bound paclitaxel (Abraxane), vinorelbine (Navelbine), eribulin (Halaven), ixabepilone (Ixempra), and ATP-cassette binding protein inhibitors.

[0273] In another aspect, a composition disclosed herein may comprise therapeutic agents that increase bioavailability of endoxifen in a subject. P-glycoprotein (P-gp, ABCB1) is a highly efficient drug efflux pump expressed in brain, liver, and small intestine, but also in cancer cells, that affects pharmacokinetics and confers therapy resistance for many anticancer drugs. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the compositions further comprise inhibitors of ATP-binding cassette (ABC family) transporters, such as inhibitors of breast cancer resistance protein (BCRP protein) and P-gp. Several inhibitors of BCRP protein and P-Gp are known in the art. For example, inhibitors of BCRP protein include cyclosporine, omeprazole, pantoprazole, saquinavir, and tacrolimus.

[0274] Non-limiting examples of P-gp inhibitors include first generation inhibitors such as Verapamil, cyclosporin A, reserpine, quinidine, yohimbine, tamoxifen and toremifene, second generation inhibitors such as Dexverapamil, dextiguldipine, valsopodar (PSC 833), and Dofequidar fumarate (MS-209), third generation P-gp inhibitors such as Cyclopropyldibenzosuberane zosuquidar (LY335979), laniquidar (R101933), mitotane (NSC-38721), biricodar (VX-710), elacridar (GF120918/GG918), ONT-093, tariquidar (XR9576), and HM30181 and anti-P-gp monoclonal antibodies such as MRK-16).

[0275] The present disclosure additionally provides for therapeutic kits containing one or more of the compositions for use in the treatment of a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-

dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both. The kits of the present disclosure may include an oral composition disclosed herein, a sealed container for housing the composition, and instructions for use of the orally administered composition. In an aspect, the kits of the present disclosure can include a second therapeutic agent. Such a second therapeutic agent may be bicalutamide, enzalutamide or an anticancer drug such as trastuzumab, antineoplasitcs such as capecitabine (Xeloda), carboplatin (Paraplatin), cisplatin (Platinol), cyclophosphamide (Neosar), docetaxel (Docefrez, Taxotere), doxorubicin (Adriamycin), pegylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil), epirubicin (Ellence), fluorouracil (5-FU, Adrucil), gemcitabine (Gemzar), methotrexate (multiple brand names), paclitaxel (Taxol), protein-bound paclitaxel (Abraxane), vinorelbine (Navelbine), eribulin (Halaven), ixabepilone (Ixempra), and ATP-binding cassette (ABC transporter) inhibitors such as P-gp inhibitors.

Exemplary Compositions

[0276] Exemplary, non-limiting compositions are provided below. As mentioned above, percentages (%) refer to amounts by weight based upon the total weight of the composition (wt/wt). The sum of the different components of the composition adds up to 100% (wt/wt) of the total composition. The at least 90% ($\geq 90\%$) (Z)-endoxifen free base refers to the percent weight of (Z)-endoxifen isomer as compared to the total weight of endoxifen in any composition.

[0277] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to industrially scalable processes for manufacturing (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), the compound of Formula (II), and salts and polymorphs thereof.

[0278] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process for manufacturing (Z)-endoxifen, comprising the steps of: (a) reacting a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), to 6N HCL (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt) in EtOAc (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt), (b) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt); (c) washing one or more times with EtOAc (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); (d) extracting with 20% NaCl (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt); (e) reacting with activated carbon (1:0.01 to 1:1); (f) washing one or more times with IPA (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt) and extracting with MeOH/PPW (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, e.g., compounds of Formula (III).

[0279] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process for manufacturing a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen (compounds of Formula (III)), comprising: (a) reacting the compound of Formula (II) with propiophenone in THF (4.4 wt/wt); (b) preparing a solution of TiCl_4 (1.4 wt/wt) and Zn (0.9 wt/wt) in THF (8.9 wt/wt); and (c) reacting the

compound of Formula (II) of step (a) with TiCl_4 and Zn in THF from step (b) to form a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen; wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

[0280] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process for manufacturing a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), comprising one or more steps of : (a) extraction with 25% ammonium chloride (1:20 wt/wt) and silica (Celite) (1:1 wt/wt); (b) one or more washes with THF (1:1 to 1:5 wt/wt); (c) one or more washes with 20% sodium chloride (1:3 wt/wt); (c) distillation with EtOAc (1:4.5 wt/wt); and (d) crystallization with (1:2 v/v) EtOAc/n-heptane (1:3.8 wt/wt); wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

[0281] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process for manufacturing a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), further comprising one or more steps of: (a) extraction one or more times with 40% K_2CO_3 (1:2 wt/wt); (b) extraction with 1N NaOH (1:10 wt/wt) and MeTHF (1:1 to 1:10 wt/wt); (c) two more extractions with MeTHF (1:1 to 1:20 wt/wt); (d) extraction with 20% sodium chloride (1:5 wt/wt); (e) distillation with IPA (1:4.5 wt/wt); and (f) crystallization with (1:2.7 v/v) IPA/n-heptane (1:3.4 wt/wt); wherein the wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (II).

[0282] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to an industrially scalable process for manufacturing the compound of Formula (II), comprising the steps of: (a) reacting the compound of Formula (I) (1 equiv.) with DIPEA (3 wt/wt) in THF (4.9 wt/wt); (b) adding 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (3.3 wt/wt); (c) distilling one to five times with methanol (4.0 wt/wt); (d) distilling with methanol (3.2 wt/wt); (e) reacting with methanol (3.2 wt/wt)/6N HCl (4 wt/wt); and (f) neutralizing with 8N NaOH (5 wt/wt); and wherein wt/wt is with respect to the compound of Formula (I).

[0283] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to (Z)-endoxifen, (E)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula (III), and the compound of Formula (II), and salts thereof, prepared according to processes described herein. In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to (Z)-endoxifen prepared according to a process disclosed herein, wherein the (Z)-endoxifen is stable at ambient temperature for at least 6 months, at least 9 months, at least 12 months, or at least 18 months.

[0284] In another aspect, the (Z)-endoxifen free based prepared in accordance with the processes disclosed herein have <1% impurity. In still another aspect, the (E)/(Z)-endoxifen free base prepared in accordance with the processes disclosed herein has <1% impurity.

[0285] In an aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein.

[0286] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the (Z)-endoxifen is at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen free base wt/wt of total endoxifen in the composition.

[0287] In still another aspect, the compositions further comprise (E)-endoxifen, wherein the ratio of (E)-endoxifen to (Z)-endoxifen (E/Z-ratio) is 1:99; 5:95; 10:90; 15:85; 20:80; 25:75; 30:70; 40:70; 45:55; 50:50; 55:45; 60:40; 65:45; or 70:30.

[0288] In a further aspect, the compositions further comprise (E)-endoxifen, wherein the E/Z-ratio ranges from 45:55 to 55:45 or is approximately 1:1.

[0289] In an aspect, the compositions comprise (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the (Z)-endoxifen is stable at ambient temperature for at least 6 months, at least 9 months, at least 12 months or at least 18 months;

[0290] In another aspect, the compositions comprise (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein,

- a. wherein the compositions have aerobic bacterial plate count of not more than 20,000 g/mL;
- b. wherein water content of the compositions is not more than 1.0% as tested by Method Ic of the USP 921;
- c. wherein the water activity (Aw) of the compositions is less than 0.9,
- d. wherein the residue on ignition is not more than 0.1% as tested by a method of USP 281;
- e. wherein a heavy metal is not more than 20 ppm as tested by Method II of USP 231; or
- f. wherein methanol is NMT 3000 ppm, tetrahydrofuran is NMT 720 ppm, isopropanol is NMT 5000 ppm, ethyl acetate is NMT 5000 ppm; n-Heptane is NMT 5000 ppm, and ethanol is NMT 5000 ppm as tested by a validated HPLC method

[0291] In still another aspect, the compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof per unit dose.

[0292] In yet another aspect, the compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein comprise 1 mg to 20 mg of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof per unit dose.

[0293] In a further aspect, the compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein comprise 0.01% to 20% (wt/wt) of endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof.

[0294] In a still further aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition comprises 0.1% to 10% (wt/wt) of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof.

[0295] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein further comprising one or more excipient.

[0296] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, further comprising one or more excipient, wherein the excipient is a binder, a filler, a disintegrating agent, a lubricant, a glidant, a control release agent, an enteric coating agent, a film forming agent, a plasticizer, a sweetening agent, a flavoring agent, or a combination thereof.

[0297] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, further comprising one or more excipient, wherein the excipients are about 0.1% to about 99% wt/wt of the composition.

[0298] In a further aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition comprises one or more control release agents selected from the group consisting of acid-insoluble polymers, methyl acrylate-methacrylic acid copolymers, cellulose acetate phthalate (CAP), cellulose acetate succinate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose acetate succinate (hypromellose acetate succinate), polyvinyl acetate phthalate (PVAP), methyl methacrylate-methacrylic acid copolymers, shellac, cellulose acetate trimellitate, sodium alginate, zein, waxes, including synthetic waxes, microcrystalline waxes, paraffin wax, carnauba wax, and beeswax, polyethoxylated castor oil derivatives, hydrogenated oils, glyceryl mono-, di- tribenates, glyceryl monostearate, glyceryl distearate, long chain alcohols, such as stearyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, and mixtures thereof.

[0299] In one aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral, parenteral, topical, and intraductal delivery.

[0300] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition formulated for oral delivery is a tablet, a caplet, a capsule, a pill, a powder, a troche, an elixir, a suspension, a syrup, a wafer, a chewing gum, a dragee, and a lozenge.

[0301] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the compositions formulated for oral delivery are tablets formulated as enteric tablets, caplets formulated as enteric caplets, and capsule formulated as enteric capsules.

[0302] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure relates to compositions comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the compositions formulated for oral delivery are tablets formulated as delayed-release tablets, caplets formulated as delayed-release caplets, or capsules formulated as delayed-release capsules.

[0303] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the composition releases in stomach:

- a. less than 10% of endoxifen in 2 hours after administration;
- b. less than 20% of endoxifen in 2 hours after administration;
- c. less than 30% of endoxifen in 2 hours after administration;
- d. less than 40% of endoxifen in 4 hours after administration; or
- e. less than 50% of endoxifen in 6 hours after administration.

[0304] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the composition releases in stomach:

- a. less than 10% of (Z) endoxifen in 2 hours after administration;
- b. less than 20% of (Z) endoxifen in 2 hours after administration;
- c. less than 40% of (Z) endoxifen in 4 hours after administration; or
- d. less than 50% of (Z) endoxifen in 6 hours after administration.

[0305] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the

composition releases at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% endoxifen in the intestines.

[0306] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the composition releases in the intestines at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% endoxifen in 2 hours after administration.

[0307] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the composition releases in the intestines at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% endoxifen in 3 hours after administration.

[0308] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the composition releases in the intestines at least 40%, at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80%, or at least 90% endoxifen in 4 hours after administration.

[0309] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711 or 701, the composition releases in small intestine:

- a. at least 10% of endoxifen after 4 hours after administration;
- b. at least 30% of endoxifen after 6 hours after administration;
- c. at least 40% of endoxifen after 7 hours after administration;
- d. at least 50% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration;
- e. at least 50% of endoxifen after 2 hours after administration;
- f. at least 60% of endoxifen after 2 hours after administration;
- g. at least 70% of endoxifen after 2 hours after administration;
- h. at least 80% of endoxifen after 2 hours after administration; or
- i. at least 90% of endoxifen after 2 hours after administration.

[0310] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or salts thereof prepared according to any of the methods disclosed herein, wherein the composition

is formulated for oral delivery, and wherein as tested by a method of USP 711, the composition is formulated to release at least 50% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration in the colon.

[0311] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition formulated for oral administration comprising: 1 mg to 200 mg of endoxifen per unit dose; and wherein the composition is stable for at least 6 months.

[0312] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition formulated for oral administration comprising: 1 mg to 200 mg of endoxifen per unit dose;

wherein the endoxifen is at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen free base; and

wherein:

the composition has an aerobic bacterial plate count of not more than 20,000 g/ml;

water content of the (Z)-endoxifen is not more than 1% as determined by Method Ic of the USP 921;

residue on ignition of the (Z)-endoxifen is not more than 0.10% as tested by a method of USP 281; or

a heavy metal is not more than 20 ppm as tested by Method II of USP 231.

[0313] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition formulated for oral administration comprising: 1 mg to 200 mg of endoxifen per unit dose,

wherein the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, and an enteric capsule;

wherein as determined by a method of USP 711, the composition is formulated to release in small intestine:

at least 25% of endoxifen after 4 hours after administration;

at least 30% of endoxifen after 6 hours after administration;

at least 40% of endoxifen after 7 hours after administration; or

at least 50% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration; or

wherein as determined by a method of USP 711, the composition is formulated to release at least 50% of endoxifen in the colon.

[0314] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to an oral solid dosage form composition comprising: 1 mg to 200 mg of endoxifen per unit dose;

wherein the endoxifen is at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen free base; and

wherein

the composition has an aerobic bacterial plate count of not more than 20,000 g/ml;

water content of the (Z)-endoxifen is not more than 1% as determined by Method Ic of the USP 921;

residue on ignition of the (Z)-endoxifen is not more than 0.10% as tested by a method of USP 281; or

a heavy metal is not more than 20 ppm as tested by Method II of USP 231; and wherein the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet and an enteric capsule; and

wherein the endoxifen is neat; or

wherein the composition further comprises an excipient selected from the group consisting of a binder, a filler, a disintegrating agent, a lubricant, a glidant, a control release agent, an enteric coating agent, a film forming agent, a plasticizer, a colorant, a sweetening agent, and a flavoring agent, or a combination thereof.

[0315] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to an enteric capsule, comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base prepared by a process described herein.

[0316] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to an enteric capsule comprising 1 mg to 200 mg of neat endoxifen per unit dose:

wherein the endoxifen is at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen free base; and

wherein

the composition has an aerobic bacterial plate count of not more than 20,000 g/ml;

water content of the (Z)-endoxifen is not more than 1% as determined by Method Ic of the USP 921;

residue on ignition of the (Z)-endoxifen is not more than 0.10% as tested by a method of USP 281; and

a heavy metal is not more than 20 ppm as tested by Method II of USP 231.

[0317] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the endoxifen salt is selected from the group consisting of arecoline, besylate, bicarbonate, bitartrate, butylbromide, citrate, camysylate, gluconate, glutamate, glycolylarsanilate, hexylresorcinolate, hydrabamine, hydrobromide, hydrochloride, hydroxynaphthanoate, isethionate, malate, mandelate, mesylate, methylbromide, methylbromide, methylnitrate, methylsulfate, mucate, napsylate, nitrate, pamaoate (Embonate), pantothenate, phosphate/diphosphate, polygalacturonate, salicylate, stearate, sulfate, tannate, Teoclate, triethiodide, benzathine, clemizole, chloroprocaine, choline, diethylamine,

diethanolamine, ethylenediamine, meglumine, piperazine, procaine, aluminum, barium, bismuth, lithium, magnesium, potassium, and zinc.

[0318] In yet another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the endoxifen salt is endoxifen gluconate.

[0319] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the endoxifen salt is endoxifen gluconate selected from the group consisting of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate, (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate, and (E)-endoxifen L-gluconate, or a combination thereof.

[0320] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the endoxifen salt is endoxifen gluconate, and wherein the endoxifen gluconate comprises 1%, 5%, 10%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99%, 99.5%, 99.99% or 100% (wt/wt) of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate or (Z)-endoxifen L-gluconate.

[0321] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the endoxifen salt is endoxifen gluconate, and wherein the endoxifen gluconate comprises (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate and (E)-endoxifen D-gluconate (wt/wt) at Z/E-ratio of 10:90, 20:80, 30:70; 40:60; 50:50, 60:40, 70:30, 80:20, 90:10; 91:9; 92:8; 93:7; 94:8; 95:5, 96:4, 97:3, 98:2, 99:1; 99.5:0.5; or 99.99:0.01.

[0322] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

[0323] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

[0324] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder is breast cancer.

[0325] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder is breast cancer and wherein the breast cancer is a pre-cancer, an early stage cancer, a non-metastatic cancer, a pre-metastatic cancer, a locally advanced cancer, or a metastatic cancer.

[0326] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant.

[0327] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject in need thereof.

[0328] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject in need thereof and wherein the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

[0329] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject in need thereof, wherein the subject's hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

[0330] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein

the composition is administered to a subject in need thereof, wherein the subject has breast cancer and wherein breast cancer is a pre-cancer, an early stage cancer, a non-metastatic cancer, a pre-metastatic cancer, a locally advanced cancer, or a metastatic cancer.

[0331] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject in need thereof, wherein the subject has prostate cancer and wherein the subject has or is about to initiate prostate cancer therapy.

[0332] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject in need thereof, wherein the subject has prostate cancer, and wherein the subject has or is at risk of having gynecomastia.

[0333] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject that has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, and wherein the subject's hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant.

[0334] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to the subject at a unit dose of 0.01 mg, 0.05 mg, 0.1 mg, 0.25 mg, 0.5 mg, 0.75 mg, 1.0 mg, 1.5 mg, 2.0 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 50 mg or 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

[0335] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to the subject at a dose of 0.01 mg, 0.05 mg, 0.1 mg, 0.25 mg, 0.5 mg, 0.75 mg, 1.0 mg, 1.5 mg, 2.0 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 50 mg or 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen.

[0336] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to the subject once a day, twice a day, thrice a day, four times a day, every other day, twice a week, weekly, fortnightly, twice a month, monthly, quarterly, once every six months, or annually.

[0337] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein administration of the composition orally maintains the subject's plasma endoxifen at a level greater than 30 nM.

[0338] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject as combination therapy.

[0339] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered as a primary therapy, a neo-adjuvant therapy, or an adjuvant therapy.

[0340] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject either alone in combination with a second therapeutic agent.

[0341] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared by any of the processes described herein, wherein the composition is administered to a subject either alone in combination with a second therapeutic agent, and wherein the second therapeutic agent is bicalutamide, enzalutamide, or an anticancer drug such as trastuzumab, antineoplastic such as capecitabine (Xeloda), carboplatin (Paraplatin), cisplatin (Platinol), cyclophosphamide (Neosar), docetaxel (Docefrez, Taxotere), doxorubicin (Adriamycin), PEGylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil), epirubicin (Ellence), fluorouracil (5-FU, Adrucil), gemcitabine (Gemzar), methotrexate (multiple brand names), paclitaxel (Taxol), protein-bound paclitaxel (Abraxane), vinorelbine (Navelbine), eribulin (Halaven), ixabepilone (Ixempra), or inhibitors of ATP-binding cassette transporters.

[0342] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein.

[0343] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein.

[0344] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph

thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both.

[0345] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the subject has or is at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

[0346] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the subject has breast cancer.

[0347] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the subject has breast cancer, and wherein the breast cancer is a pre-cancer, an early stage cancer, a non-metastatic cancer, a pre-metastatic cancer, a locally advanced cancer, or a metastatic cancer.

[0348] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the subject has prostate cancer and wherein the subject further has or is at risk of having gynecomastia.

[0349] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the subject has tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder.

[0350] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the composition is

administered to the subject at a unit dose of 0.01 mg, 0.05 mg, 0.1 mg, 0.25 mg, 0.5 mg, 0.75 mg, 1.0 mg, 1.5 mg, 2.0 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg, 6 mg, 8 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg, 25 mg, 50 mg, 100 mg or 200 mg.

[0351] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the composition is administered once a day, twice a day, thrice a day, four times a day, every other day, twice a week, weekly, fortnightly, twice a month, monthly, quarterly, once every six months, or annually.

[0352] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein administration of the composition orally maintains the subject's plasma endoxifen at a steady state level greater than 30 nM.

[0353] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein administration of the composition orally achieves the subject's plasma endoxifen at a steady state level greater than 30 nM by day 14 after the administration of the first dose (on day 1).

[0354] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof, wherein administration of the composition orally achieves the subject's plasma endoxifen at a steady state level greater than 30 nM by day 14 after the administration of the first dose (on day 1).

[0355] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein administration of the composition orally achieves a time to maximal plasma levels of endoxifen in the subject from 2 to 10 hours after administration (post-dose).

[0356] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof, wherein administration of the composition orally achieves a time to maximal plasma levels of endoxifen in the subject from 2 to 10 hours after administration (post-dose).

[0357] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph

thereof, wherein the mean terminal elimination half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranges from 30 to 60 hours post dose.

[0358] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof, wherein the mean terminal elimination half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranges from 40 to 55 hours post dose.

[0359] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, the method comprising administering an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

[0360] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer, the method comprising administering an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

[0361] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian

cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer and vulvar cancer, the method comprising administering an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet, or a delayed-release capsule, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

[0362] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer, the method comprising administering an oral composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet, or a delayed-release capsule, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM; and

wherein at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80% or at least 90% of the endoxifen is released in the intestines.

[0363] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer, the method comprising

administering an oral composition comprising 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet, or a delayed-release capsule, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM; and

wherein at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80% or at least 90% of the endoxifen is released in the intestines.

[0364] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer, the method comprising administering daily an oral composition comprising 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet, or a delayed-release capsule, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM.

[0365] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer, the method comprising administering daily an oral composition comprising 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or

polymorph thereof formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet, or a delayed-release capsule, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM; and

wherein at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80% or at least 90% of the endoxifen is released in the intestines.

[0366] In another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder selected from the group consisting of benign breast disorders, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, and vulvar cancer, the method comprising administering daily an oral composition comprising 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof formulated as an enteric tablet, an enteric caplet, an enteric capsule, a delayed-release tablet, a delayed-release caplet, or a delayed-release capsule, wherein administration of the composition achieves:

- a. a mean half-life of endoxifen in the subject ranging from 30 hours to 60 hours after administration;
- b. a time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranging from 2 hours to 10 hours after administration; and
- c. a steady state plasma level of endoxifen greater than 30 nM;

wherein the mean area under the curve extrapolated to time infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) is 200 hr*ng/mL to 10000 hr*ng/mL, 300 hr*ng/mL to 8000 hr*ng/mL, 400 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL or 700 hr*ng/mL to 6000 hr*ng/mL; and

wherein at least 50%, at least 60%, at least 70%, at least 80% or at least 90% of the endoxifen is released in the intestines.

[0367] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph

thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein the method is a primary therapy, a neo-adjuvant therapy, or an adjuvant therapy.

[0368] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein a composition is administered to a subject as combination therapy.

[0369] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein a composition is administered to a subject either alone in combination with a second therapeutic agent.

[0370] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of treating a subject in need thereof comprising administering a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen or a salt or polymorph thereof prepared according to any one of the processes disclosed herein, wherein a composition is administered to a subject with a second therapeutic agent selected from the group consisting of bicalutamide, enzalutamide, or an anticancer drug such as trastuzumab, antineoplastics such as capecitabine (Xeloda), carboplatin (Paraplatin), cisplatin (Platinol), cyclophosphamide (Neosar), docetaxel (Docefrez, Taxotere), doxorubicin (Adriamycin), PEGylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil), epirubicin (Ellence), fluorouracil (5-FU, Adrucil), gemcitabine (Gemzar), methotrexate (multiple brand names), paclitaxel (Taxol), protein-bound paclitaxel (Abraxane), vinorelbine (Navelbine), eribulin (Halaven), ixabepilone (Ixempra), and ATP-cassette binding protein transport inhibitors.

[0371] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a use for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, in a subject, the use comprising:

dosing the subject with a first composition comprising tamoxifen;

determining the subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile in a test sample obtained from the subject;

determining a reduced level of subject's plasma endoxifen based on subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile as to compared to a level of plasma endoxifen in a reference tamoxifen-metabolites profile; and

administering to the subject a composition of the present disclosure.

[0372] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a use for the treatment and prevention of a hormone-dependent breast disorder, a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder, or both, in a subject, the use comprising:

- dosing the subject with a first composition comprising tamoxifen;
 - determining the subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile in a test sample obtained from the subject;
 - determining a reduced level of subject's plasma endoxifen based on subject's tamoxifen-metabolites profile as compared to a level of plasma endoxifen in a reference tamoxifen-metabolites profile; and
 - administering to the subject a composition of the present disclosure;
- wherein the composition is administered orally in a dose sufficient to maintain the subject's plasma endoxifen at a steady state level greater than 30 nM;
- wherein the tamoxifen-metabolites profile comprises a panel of at least tamoxifen, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, n-desmethyltamoxifen, or endoxifen;
- wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, DCIS, LCIS, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer;
- wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder is a pre-cancer, an early stage cancer, a non-metastatic cancer, a pre-metastatic cancer, a locally advanced cancer, or metastatic cancer;
- wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder is a non-metastatic cancer;
- wherein the subject has prostate cancer, and wherein the subject further has or is at risk of having gynecomastia; or
- wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant.

[0373] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a kit for treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone dependent reproductive tract disorder, in a subject in need thereof comprising: (a) a composition of the present disclosure; and (b) a sealed container for housing the composition; and c) instructions for use of the orally administered composition.

[0374] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a kit for treating a subject having or at risk of having a hormone-dependent breast disorder or hormone dependent reproductive tract

disorder, in a subject in need thereof comprising: (a) a composition of the present disclosure; and (b) a sealed container for housing the composition; and c) instructions for use of the orally administered composition, wherein the kit comprises a second therapeutic agent selected from the group consisting of bicalutamide, enzalutamide and anticancer drugs such as trastuzumab, antineoplastics such as capecitabine (Xeloda), carboplatin (Paraplatin), cisplatin (Platinol), cyclophosphamide (Neosar), docetaxel (Docefrez, Taxotere), doxorubicin (Adriamycin), PEGylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil), epirubicin (Ellence), fluorouracil (5-FU, Adrucil), gemcitabine (Gemzar), methotrexate (multiple brand names), paclitaxel (Taxol), protein-bound paclitaxel (Abraxane), vinorelbine (Navelbine), eribulin (Halaven), ixabepilone (Ixempra), and ATP-cassette binding protein transport inhibitors.

[0375] In still another aspect, the present disclosure relates to a method of administering a composition prepared in accordance with any of the processes described herein to a subject in need thereof in accordance with instructions for use comprised in a kit comprising the composition.

EXAMPLES

[0376] Abbreviations used herein

ACN/PPW = Acetonitrile/Process Purified Water

NaHCO₃ = Sodium hydrocarbonate

HCl = hydrochloric acid

THF = Tetrahydrofuran

MeTHF = 2-Methyltetrahydrofuran

CH₂Cl₂ = Dicholoromethane

EtOH = Ethanol

MeOH = Methanol

EtOAc = Ethyl acetate

IPA = Isopropyl alcohol; isopropanol

TFA = Trifluoroacetic acid

TCA = Trichloroacetic acid

PPW = Process Purified Water

IPA/PPW = Isopropyl alcohol/Process Purified Water

Example 1: *Enrichment and Preparation of (Z)-Endoxifen Free Base*

A. Fractional Crystallization

[0377] (Z)-Endoxifen free base (drug substance) can be prepared from a mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen by fractional crystallization described herein. Briefly, commercially available crude endoxifen mixture of (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen isoforms (Astatech Ltd. China) were used as starting material to prepare (Z)-endoxifen as free base.

[0378] i. An E/Z-endoxifen solution was prepared by suspending 1 g of endoxifen having (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen at ratios (E/Z ratio) of 51/1, 1/1.8, and 1/5.8, each in a 10x volume of the solvent, isopropanol (IPA). A second set of solutions was prepared by suspending 1 g each of endoxifen at E/Z ratios of 51/1, 1/1.8, and 1/5.8 in 10x volume of the solvent EtOAc. The solutions were heated to a first temperature of 50 °C creating a hot slurry and stirred overnight at 50 °C. The hot slurry samples were filtered using a cellulose filter pore size 0.5 µm. The mixtures were then cooled to a second temperature, room temperature 23 °C while stirring for 12 hours to effect crystallization. The aliquots of cooled samples were filtered using a cellulose filter pore size 0.5 µm. Aliquots of the solid and filtrates at each of temperatures 50 °C and 23 °C were taken and monitored by HPLC-UV to determine their E/Z-endoxifen ratio. The (Z)-endoxifen enriched filtrates and the E-endoxifen enriched filtrates were added back to their respective mother liquors.

[0379] HPLC-UV analyses of the samples was carried out using a Luna phenyl-hexyl column (4.6 mm x 150 mm x 3 µm of particle size). The column temperature was 40 °C and sample compartment temperature was maintained at ambient temperature. Samples were prepared by dissolving solids and filtrates at 0.2 mg/ml of sample in methanol as sample buffer. Samples were then injected into the column in an injection volume of 20 µl. Likewise, mildly acidic (pH 4.3) ammonium formate buffer/methanol in the mobile phase with gradient elution was used. Mobile phase system consisting of: Mobile Phase A (MPA) buffer was 10 mM HCOONH₄ with 0.03% HCOOH buffer in water, and Mobile Phase B (MBP) buffer was 10 mM HCOONH₄ in methanol with a gradient program used.

[0380] **Table 1:** Gradient Program

Time (m)	MPA (%)	MPB (%)
0	50	50
15	30	70
25	5	95
30	50	50

[0381] The run time was 30 m, the flow rate was 1.0 mL/m, and the delay time was 5 m. Samples were detected by UV detection at 243 nm. Retention times were typically from 12.95 to 13.20 m for (E)-endoxifen and from 14.0 to 14.33 m for (Z)-endoxifen. Relative Retention Time (RRT) for (E)-endoxifen was 0.4 to 0.9 and 1.0 for (Z)-endoxifen.

[0382] Table 2: Enrichment of Endoxifen (Z)- and (E)- isomers from hot slurry of E/Z-endoxifen mixture in IPA and EtOAc.

		Sample					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
E/Z-endoxifen ratio		51/1	1/1.8	1/5.8	51/1	1/1.8	1/5.8
E/Z-endoxifen		1 g	1 g	1 g	1 g	1 g	1 g
Solvent		IPA (10 X)			EtOAc (10 X)		
50 °C	Solid	85/1 (97.0%/1.1%)	N/A (dissolved)	1/4.2 (18.9%/79.6%)	≥100/1 (97.9%/0.7%)	1.9/1 (65.4%/34.2%)	1/24 (3.9%/94.8%)
	Filtrate	12/1 (87.0%/7.0%)	N/A (dissolved)	1/47 (2.1%/97.4%)	5.4/1 (66.2%/12.3%)	1/2.4 (29.2%/68.7%)	1/2.5 (28.0%/70.1%)
23 °C	Solid	≥100/1 (98.2%/0.3%)	1/2.1 (31.8%/67.2%)	1/90 (1.1%/98.1%)	≥100/1 (99.0%/0.4%)	1.3/1 (55.9%/43.1%)	1/6.9 (12.6%/86.9%)
	Filtrate	3.6/1 (70.1%/19.6%)	1/1.7 (36.5%/60.6%)	1/1.3 (43.4%/54.9%)	1.6/1 (37.7%/23.0%)	1/6.7 (12.6%/84.3%)	1/2.6 (26.2%/84.3%)

[0383] Results (**Table 2**) show that Z-endoxifen can be enriched using a commercial crude E/Z-endoxifen starting material from a hot slurry of the endoxifen mixtures made with IPA and EtOAc. Z-endoxifen can be purified from E/Z-endoxifen mixtures having E/Z at 1:1 and with higher Z-endoxifen levels in the mixture, for example, 1:8, and 1:5.8. Substantial Z-endoxifen enrichment was achieved in a single step using fractional crystallization method, for example with an E/Z ratio of 1:90 described herein Example 1A. (Z)-endoxifen was seen to be more soluble than (E)-endoxifen in EtOAc. (Z)-endoxifen also tended to remain in the filtrate in greater amounts in EtOAc as compared with IPA. Both solids and filtrates are useful for the preparation of (Z)-endoxifen free base. Serial enrichment of Z-endoxifen by adding filtrates back to the first filtrate (first mother liquor) can also be performed.

[0384] Similarly, E-endoxifen can be purified from E/Z-endoxifen mixture having higher E-endoxifen levels in the E/Z mixture.

[0385] ii. Similar results were obtained in experiments where an E/Z-endoxifen mixture was suspended in a hot slurry prepared with a mixture of IPA/PPW (1:1 v/v) and extracted and washed with precooled IPA/PPW (1:1) to form crystalline solids and filtrates with enriched (Z)-endoxifen.

B. Recrystallization from Solid Fraction

[0386] Serial enrichment of (Z)-endoxifen can be performed by subjecting the endoxifen mixture with E/Z-endoxifen ratio of 51:1, 1:1.8 and 1:5.6, and the solids and mother liquors obtained from the fractional crystallization to one or more rounds of recrystallization.

[0387] The (Z)-endoxifen can be enriched in substantially purified form from crude E/Z-endoxifen mixtures, (Z)-enriched crystalline solids and (Z)-enriched mother liquors by recrystallization with solvents such as ethanol, ethyl acetate/n-heptane, Acetone/MTBE, IPA, IPA/PPW, and the like under the conditions as described herein.

[0388] *Ethanol*. Crystalline solids obtained from E/Z-endoxifen hot IPA slurry mixture above were used to obtain further purified Z-endoxifen. After cooling to 23 °C, the solid fractions of sample 2 (80 g) and sample 3 (79 g) of **Table 2** above were combined and recrystallized using 1000 mL (1L) EtOH. The ethanol mixture was heated to reflux. The dissolution point was at 75 °C. The heated solution was filtered using a cellulose filter (pore size 0.5 µm) to remove foreign impurities such as cotton fibers by polish filtration. The filtrate solution was then stirred initially at 70 °C for 30 minutes. The solution was then cooled to 0 °C – 5 °C and stirred continually for 5 h at 0 °C – 5 °C. The solution was filtered again. The crystals on the filter were washed with 200 mL of EtOH.

[0389] Results show that solid crystals of endoxifen had E/Z ratio of $\geq 1/100$ (0.22%/99.48%) and endoxifen in the filtrate had E/Z ratio of 1/5.9 (13.93%/82.48%) when recrystallized with EtOH. HPLC analysis of at least 3 different experiments conducted by this method showed that (Z) endoxifen retention time was 14.00 m, E-endoxifen retention time was 13.14 m. (Z)-endoxifen levels ranged from 97% to 99.48% while (E)-endoxifen levels ranged from 0.22% to 2.14%. Other impurities were <1%.

[0390] *Ethyl Acetate/n-heptane*. Feasibility of recrystallization with EtOAc/n-heptane was studied as described below.

[0391] 5 g Endoxifen (E/Z ratio 1/5.8) was added to EtOAc/n-heptane (140 mL, 1/1 v/v) and heated to reflux (~82 °C) while stirring overnight to obtain a clear solution. The cloud point of the mixture was 30 °C. The mixture was then cooled to room temperature to precipitate the product and filtered. After isolation as described above, endoxifen of the solid product was determined by HPLC to have an E/Z ratio of 1/8.1 (10.9%:88.60%) with a product yield of 66% (3.3 g). (Z)-Endoxifen in the

filtrate was enriched with E/Z ratio of 1:3 (23.94%:**74.47%**). The recrystallization using EtOAc/n-heptane can also provide purified Z-endoxifen in ratios similar to the hot IPA slurry as shown in **Table 3**.

[0392] Table 3: Recrystallization of (Z)-endoxifen from E/Z-endoxifen mixture using EtOAc/n-heptane solvent.

Parameter		Result
E/Z endoxifen – E/Z ratio 1/5.8		5 g
EtOAc/n-heptane solvent (1:1)		140 mL
Heat to dissolution		~82 °C (reflux)
Cloud point		~30 °C
Cool to RT and filtration		23 °C, 1 hr
E/Z ratio of the product	Solid	3.3 g, 1/8.1 (10.90%/ 88.60%)
	Filtrate	1/3.0 (23.94%/ 72.47%)

[0393] Acetone/MTBE. 0.5 g Endoxifen (E/Z ratio 1/1.8) was added to Acetone (10 v; 5 mL) solvent, and antisolvent MTBE (9 mL) was added to the solution and heated to reflux (~82 °C) while stirring overnight to obtain a clear solution. The cloud point of the mixture was ~22 °C. The mixture was then cooled to room temperature to precipitate the product and filtered. Endoxifen in the solid product was determined by HPLC to have an E/Z ratio of 39/1 while the filtrate was enriched with (Z)-endoxifen with E/Z ratio of 1:2.6. Acetone/MTBE solvent system is useful to separate E-endoxifen to solid from the (Z)-endoxifen in the filtrate.

C. Recrystallization from Mother Liquor

[0394] Purified (Z)-endoxifen can be recovered from mother liquor enriched with (Z)-endoxifen as shown in the following **Tables 4** and **5**.

[0395] i. Starting material of crude E/Z-endoxifen mixture can be dissolved in a first solvent, ethyl acetate, to form a first mother liquor from which (Z)-endoxifen can be recovered by a second step of addition of a second solvent such as n-heptane or ethanol as shown in **Table 4**.

[0396] Table 4. Recrystallization of Z-endoxifen

Parameter	Results	
	Lot Number	
	1	2
E/Z-endoxifen (E/Z = 1/1.8)	5 g	10 g
EtOAc (First solvent)	50 mL	50 mL
Heat to dissolution	~68 °C	~78 °C (reflux)
Cloud Point°	~33 °C	~38 °C
Cool to RT and filtration	23 °C, 1 h	23 °C, 1 h

E/Z ratio of product	Solid	0.87g, 8.5/1 (89.37%/10.49%)	1.53 g, 1/1 (49.32%/49.80%)
	Filtrate	1/3.8 (20.13%/76.86%)	1/ 2.6 (27.29%/70.09%)
Filtrate concentration		To 5 mL, 25 mL	To dryness
Heat to dissolution		~68 °C	~68C
Add solvent/anti-solvent (second solvent)		n-heptane, 40 mL, no precipitation observed	EtOH, 50 mL, heat to dissolution
Cool to RT and filtration		23 °C, overnight	23 °C (cloud point ~28C)
E/Z ratio of product	Solid	3.0g, 1/4.2 (18.70%/78.95%)	3.2 g, 1/12 (7.52%/90.24%)
	Filtrate	1/3.2 (21.65%/70.35%)	1/1.5 (39.35%/57.76%)

[0397] ii. (Z)-endoxifen was prepared by a process involving: a first step of dissolving crude E/Z-endoxifen mixture in a first solvent, ethyl acetate, enriching (Z)-endoxifen to first mother liquor; a second step of addition of a second solvent, IPA to form crystalline (Z)-endoxifen and a second mother liquor; and a step of addition of a third solvent ethanol to recrystallize and recover (Z)-endoxifen from the second mother liquor.

[0398] Briefly, endoxifen (E/Z = 1/1.8, 30 g) and (E/Z = 1.2/1, 50 g non-GMP) was dissolved in EtOAc 300 mL and 500 mL respectively, heated to dissolution (~70 °C). The mixture was then cooled to 25 °C while stirring overnight for precipitation. The suspension was filtered and E/Z ratio of solid and the filtrate was determined by HPLC.

[0399] Next, the filtrates were concentrated to dryness and IPA 230 mL and 900 mL respectively were added to form hot slurries (50 °C) while stirring. The hot slurries were continuously stirred at 50 °C overnight. The slurries were then cooled to 25 °C for 0.5 h and 1 h respectively, and filtered. Z-endoxifen in the solid and the filtrates were determined again.

[0400] The solids of each sample (14.8 g and 21.6 g) were further recrystallized from 148 mL and 220 mL EtOH by heating to dissolution at NMT 70 °C and cooling to 25 °C for 0.5 h and 1 h respectively. The samples were further cooled to 0 °C – 5 °C for 1 h and filtered. The E/Z ratio of the solid and the filtrates were again determined by HPLC. E/Z ratios of each sample and purity are provided below in **Table 5**.

[0401] **Table 5:** Recovery of (Z)-endoxifen from (Z)-endoxifen enriched mother liquor

Parameter	Results	
	Lot Number	
	1	2
E/Z-endoxifen ratio	1/1.8	1.2/1
E/Z-endoxifen amount	30 g	50 g
EtOAc	300 mL	500 mL

Heat to Dissolution		~70 °C	~70 °C
Cloud Point		~33 °C	~33 °C
Cool to RT		25 °C, 3 h	25 °C, overnight
E/Z ratio of product	Solid	4.5/1 (80.52%/17.73%)	13.5/1 (92.44/6.83%)
	Filtrate	1/5.0 (16.02%/80.71%)	1/6.8 (12.34%/84.45%)
Filtrate concentration		To remove EtOAc	Swap with IP (400 ml X 2)
Add IPA		230 mL	900 mL
Final Volume			250 mL
Hot Slurry		50 °C overnight	50 °C, overnight
Cool to RT and filtration		25 °C, 4 h	25 °C, 4 h
E/Z ratio of product	Solid	1/31.7 (3.0%/95.15%)	1.31.9 (2.94%/93.74%)
	Filtrate	1/1.6 (36.16%/58.78%)	1/1.7 (32.17%/55.92%)
E/Z-endoxifen for recrystallization		14.8 g	21.6 g
EtOH		148 mL	220 mL
Heat to Dissolution		~70 °C	~70 °C
Cool to RT		25 °C, 0.5 h	25 °C, 1 h
E/Z ratio of Product	Solid	-	1/76.9 (1.26%/91.91%)
	Filtrate	-	1/20.1 (4.57%/91.91%)
Cool to 0 °C-5 °C and filtration		0 °C-5 °C, 1 h	0 °C-5 °C, 1 h
E/Z ratio of product	Solid (?)	1/51.8 (1.86%/96.31%)	1/118.7 (0.82%/97.30%)
	Filtrate (?)	1/6.8 (12.72%/86.23%)	1/8 (10.54%/84.66%)
Total Yield		31%	29%

[0402] Results show that purified crystalline (Z)-endoxifen of greater than 90% can be obtained by subjecting an E/Z-endoxifen mixture to fractional crystallization with a first solvent, ethyl acetate, to form crystalline solid and a first mother liquor, subjecting the first mother liquor to crystallization with a second solvent such as hot IPA to form a second crystalline solid and second mother liquor, and then recrystallization of the solids from a third solvent such as ethanol. A yield of (Z)-endoxifen of greater than 95% is also feasible. The ratio of (E)/(Z)-endoxifen can be improved from ~1.2:1 and 1:1.8 to 1:51 to over 1:118. The impurity profile of (Z)-endoxifen was analyzed by an HPLC method as described above and was found to be less than <2%. Retention time of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen were 14.19 m and 13.2 m respectively.

Example 2: Reequilibration of (E)-endoxifen-rich E/Z-mixture

[0403] (E)-endoxifen-rich E/Z-endoxifen mixture is also useful for the preparation Z-endoxifen free base (in addition to being useful for the preparation of purified (E)-endoxifen). (E)-endoxifen-rich E/Z-endoxifen mixture is reequilibrated from a E/Z ratio of $\geq 1.5:1$ (for example, E/Z ratio of 51:1) to about ~1:1 mixture. The present disclosure embraces the idea that reequilibration may be

performed with a starting E/Z-endoxifen mixture having any E/Z ratio, such as 99:1 to 1:99. Such reequilibration is useful for preparation of stable (E)/(Z)-endoxifen ~1:1 mixture as well as further enrichment and purification of Z-endoxifen free base as described in Example 1 above.

[0404] Briefly, (E)-endoxifen is converted to (Z)-endoxifen by dissolving crude E/Z-endoxifen in an inert solvent such as acetonitrile/water (8:1) or dichloromethane in the presence of an acid such as hydrochloric acid, trichloroacetic acid or trifluoroacetic acid. The reaction mixture with ACN/PPW was stirred at 60 °C for 1 hour while the reaction mixture with dichloromethane and TFA was stirred at RT for 1 hour. After work up was performed as described in **Table 6**, the E/Z ratio of the product was determined to be E/Z-endoxifen (ratio about 1:1) with a purity greater than 90%.

[0405] **Table 6:** Reequilibrium of E/Z-endoxifen (E/Z ratio 51/1) to E/Z ratio of about 1:1

Parameter	Results	
	Sample	
	1	2
E/Z-endoxifen (E/Z ratio = 51/1)	0.5 g (off-white powder)	0.5 g (off-white powder)
Solvent	ACN/PPW = 8/1, 5 mL (white slurry)	CH ₂ Cl ₂ , 5 mL (White slurry)
Acid	6N HCl, 5 mL	TFA, 5 mL
Stir	~60 °C, 6 h (Pink solution to clear solution)	~23 °C, 1 h (orange clear solution)
Work up	Quench with saturated solution of NaHCO ₃ , wash the organic layer with brine and organic layer is evaporated to dryness	Quench with saturated solution of NaHCO ₃ , wash the organic layer with brine and organic layer is evaporated to dryness
Product	Beige solid	Off-white solid
E/Z ratio	~1/1 (49.28%/47.70%)	~1.3/1 (54.51%/41.9%)
Purity	96.98%	96.20%

Example 3: Purification of (E)-endoxifen

[0406] (E)-endoxifen was similarly purified by recrystallization in EtOH (500 mL) by heating the reaction mixture to NMT 70 °C to get a clear solution, cooled to 0 °C – 5 °C to precipitate the product. After purification by methods described herein, 38.1 g of (E)-endoxifen was obtained in 76% yield with 97.6% purity.

Example 4: Scale up

[0407] Synthetic and purification methods disclosed herein also are useful in scaling up the preparation of (Z)-endoxifen for making industrial drug product dosage forms, for example, oral, transdermal/topical, nasal, intraductal parenteral dosage forms, for use clinical use in subjects. Feasibility studies of crystallization using 5 g, 100 g, and 110 g of E/Z-endoxifen mixture,

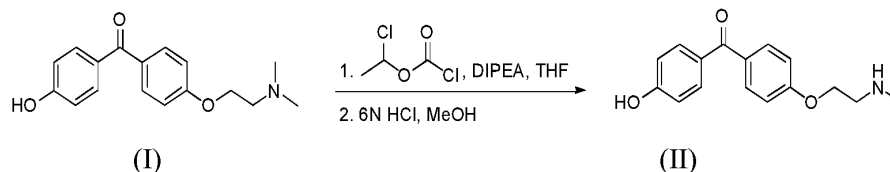
compounds of Formula (III) at an E/Z ratio of 1/5.8 were performed by suspending the E/Z-endoxifen mixtures in 10x volume of IPA and heated to 50 °C and stirred for 4 h at 50 °C. The samples were filtered using a cellulose filter pore size 0.5 µm and the E/Z ratio was determined in the solids. Following filtration, the samples were cooled to 23 °C and stirred continuously for 4 h at 23 °C. The samples were filtered again. Solids and the filtrates were monitored for (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen levels by HPLC as described above and the results are provided below in **Table 7**.

[0408] Table 7. Scale up Preparation of (Z)-endoxifen

Parameter		Results		
		Sample		
		1	2	3
E/Z-endoxifen ratio 1/5.8		5 g	100 g	110 g
IPA (10 X)		50 mL	1000 mL	1100 mL
50 °C	Solid	1/20 (4.71%/94.50%)	1/22 (4.25%/94.88%)	1/16 (5.85%/93.24%)
	Filtrate	1/3.1 (26.54%/72.23%)	1 /2.2 (30.62%/67.52%)	1/2.3 (29.94%/68.04%)
Cooling to 23 °C stirring for 4 h	Solid	1/78 (1.26%/97.69%)	1/78 (2.14%/97.24%)	1/74 (1.32%/98.12%)
	Filtrate	1/1.1 (50/0.75%/47.1%)	1.1/1 (51.47%/45.88%)	1.2/1 (53.03%/43.81%)

[0409] Results show that Z-endoxifen can be obtained from an E/Z-endoxifen mixture from IPA solvent at concentrations higher than $\geq 90\%$ as crystalline solid as well as $\geq 65\%$ (Z)-endoxifen free base in the filtrate. IPA is thus useful as a first solvent, or second solvent or both.

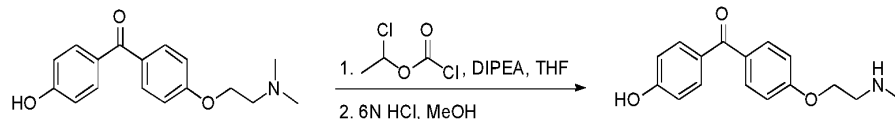
Example 5: Industrially Scalable Preparation of [4-[2-(methylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone



[0410] A suitable 10L reactor was charged with starting material [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (I) (0.5 kg, 1.0 equiv.), DIPEA (1.5 kg, 6.65 equiv., 3.0 wt./wt.) and tetrahydrofuran (5 L, 10 vol./wt., 8.9 wt./wt.) under N₂ atmosphere. 1-Chloroethyl chloroformate (1.7 kg, 6.65 equiv., 3.3 wt./wt.) was added slowly while maintaining the internal temperature at NMT 20 °C. The mixture was heated to

reflux and stirred at reflux for NLT 12 hr. The mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume. Methanol (2.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.0 wt./wt.) was added slowly and the mixture was distilled under reduced pressure at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume. Methanol (2.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.0 wt./wt.) was added and the mixture was distilled under reduced pressure at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume. Methanol (2.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.0 wt./wt.) was once again added and the mixture was further distilled under reduced pressure at NMT 75 °C until the volume once again reached the lowest agitateable volume. Methanol (2 L, 4 vol./wt., 3.2 wt./wt.) and 6N HCl (2 L, 4 vol./wt., 4.0 wt./wt.) were added to the mixture and the mixture was heated to reflux. The mixture was stirred at reflux for NLT 12 hr. After reaction completion, the mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure at NMT 75 °C until most of MeOH was removed. The mixture was cooled to 25±5 °C and 8N NaOH (2.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 5.0 wt./wt.) was added slowly until the pH of the mixture was 11-12. The mixture was stirred at 0–5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with H₂O (1 L, 2 vol./wt.) and ethyl acetate (1 L, 2 vol./wt., 1.8 wt./wt.). The wet cake was dried at NMT 50 °C under reduced pressure to afford (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (II). **Yield: 297 gm, 63%; Purity: 100% (Expected Yield – 60 – 90%)**

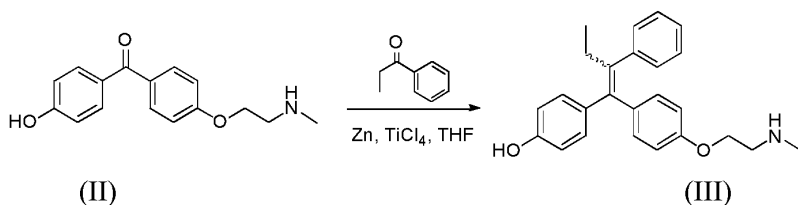
Example 6: Industrially Scalable Preparation of [4-[2-(methylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone)



[0411] A suitable 2 L reactor was charged with starting material [4-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl](4-hydroxyphenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (I) (70 gm, 1.0 equiv.), N-Ethyldiisopropylamine (126 gm, 4.0 equiv., 1.8 wt.) and tetrahydrofuran (700 mL, 10.0 vol., 8.9 wt.) under N₂ atmosphere. The mixture was heated to NLT 60 °C and 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (140 gm, 4.0 equiv., 2.0 wt.) added. The mixture was heated to reflux and stirred for NLT 12 hr. The mixture was concentrated until the volume reached 3 vol. Methanol (350 mL, 5.0 vol., 4.0 wt.) was added slowly and the mixture was concentrated until the volume reached 3 vol. (210 mL). Next, methanol (350 mL, 5.0 vol., 4.0 wt.) was added and the mixture was concentrated until the volume reaches 4 vol. (280 mL). 6N HCl (280 mL, 4.0 vol., 4.0 wt.) was added and the mixture was heated to reflux. The mixture was stirred at reflux for NLT 12 hr. After reaction completion, the mixture was concentrated until the volume reaches ~4 vol. (280 mL). The mixture

was cooled to ambient temperature, and 8N NaOH (NLT 350 mL, 5.0 vol., 5.0 wt.) was added slowly until the pH of the mixture is NLT 13. Ethyl acetate (280 mL, 4.0 vol., 3.6 wt.) was added to the mixture for extraction. After phase separation, to the aqueous layer was added 6N HCl (NLT 42 mL, 0.6 vol., 0.6 wt.) until the pH was 8-10. The mixture was cooled to 0 ± 5 °C and stirred for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with purified water (NLT 140 mL, 2.0 vol., 2.0 wt.) and ethyl acetate (NLT 140 mL, 2 vol., 1.8 wt.). The wet cake was dried at NMT 60 °C under reduced pressure to afford (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (II). **Yield: 55.2 gm, 83%; Purity: 100% (Expected Yield – NLT 70%).**

Example 7: Industrially Scalable Preparation of E/Z-endoxifen mixture in a McMurry Reaction



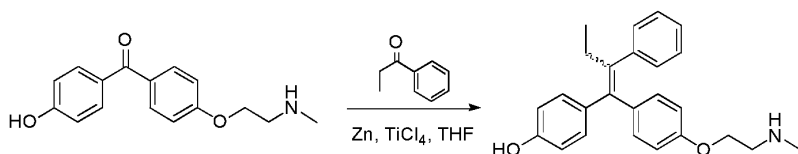
[0412] A suitable 10 L reactor was charged with Zn powder (0.27 kg, 4.0 equiv., 0.9 wt./wt.) and tetrahydrofuran (1.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.4 wt./wt.) under N₂ atmosphere. TiCl₄ (0.42 kg, 2.0 equiv., 1.4 wt./wt.) was added slowly while maintaining the internal temperature at NMT 15 °C. The reaction was heated to reflux and stirred at reflux for NLT 2 hr. A suspension of (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (II) obtained from Step 1, (0.297 kg, 1.0 equiv.) and propiophenone (0.21 kg, 1.5 equiv., 0.7 wt./wt.) in tetrahydrofuran (3.0 L, 10 vol./wt., 8.9 wt./wt.) was added and the reflux was continued for NLT 8 hr. The mixture was cooled to 20-30 °C and added into 25% ammonium chloride (5.9 L, 20 vol./wt., 20 wt./wt.)/silica (diatomaceous earth/silicon dioxide; tradename Celite® S) available from Sigma Aldrich (0.3 kg, 1.0 wt./wt.) mixture. The mixture was filtered and washed with tetrahydrofuran (0.9 L, 3 vol./wt., 2.7 wt./wt.).

[0413] The mixture was settled for phase separation. The organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was washed with tetrahydrofuran (0.9 L, 3 vol./wt., 2.7 wt./wt.). The organic layer was again collected and combined with the first organic layer. The combined organic layer was washed with 40% K₂CO₃ (1.2 L, 4 vol./wt., 5.6 wt./wt.). The organic layer was concentrated at NMT 75 °C under reduced pressure until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume. Ethyl acetate (1.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.5 wt./wt.) was added and the mixture was distilled under reduced pressure at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume. Ethyl acetate (1.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.5 wt./wt.) was added and the mixture was distilled under reduced pressure at NMT 75

°C until the volume reached 5 vol. (1.5 L). The mixture was heated to dissolution and n-heptane (3.0 L, 10 vol./wt., 6.8 wt./wt.) was added. The mixture was cooled to 0±5 °C and stirred at 0±5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and the residue was washed with ethyl acetate/n-heptane=1/2 (v/v, 1.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 3.7 wt./wt.). The residue wet cake was dried under reduced pressure at NMT 60 °C to afford a mixture of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen, (E/Z)-4-[1-[4-[2-(Methylamino)ethoxy]phenyl]-2-phenyl-1-buten-1-yl]-phenol, compounds of Formula (III). Yield: 176 g, 42%; Purity: 81.96%. E/Z ratio: **3.1:1** (Expected yield – 40 – 60%).

[0414] A suitable 10 L reactor was charged with the above (E/Z)-endoxifen (0.250 kg, 1.0 wt.), isopropanol (1.25 L, 5 vol./wt., 3.9 wt./wt.) and purified water (1.25 L, 5 vol./wt., 5.0 wt./wt.). The mixture was heated to 70±5 °C and stirred at 70±5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was cooled to 0±5 °C and stirred at 0-5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with pre-cooled isopropanol/ purified water=1/1 (0.5 L, 2 vol./wt., 3.6 wt./wt.). The residue wet cake was dried at NMT 60 °C to afford a mixture of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen, (E/Z)-4-[1-[4-[2-(Methylamino)ethoxy]phenyl]-2-phenyl-1-buten-1-yl]-phenol, compounds of Formula (III). Yield: 105 g, 41%; Purity: 96.79%. E/Z ratio: **48.6:1** (Expected yield – 40 – 60%).

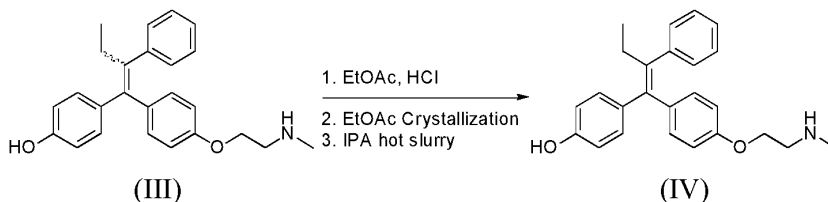
Example 8: Industrially Scalable Preparation of E/Z-endoxifen mixture in a McMurry Reaction



[0415] To a suitable reactor was charged zinc powder (10 gm, 4.0 equiv., 1.0 wt.) and tetrahydrofuran (50 mL, 5.0 vol., 4.3 wt.) under N₂ atmosphere. Titanium(IV) chloride (14 gm, 2.0 equiv., 1.4 wt.) was added slowly while maintaining the internal temperature at NMT 45 °C. The reaction was heated to 65±5 °C and stirred for NLT 2 hr. A suspension of (4-hydroxyphenyl)(4-(2-(methylamino)ethoxy)phenyl)methanone, the compound of Formula (II) obtained from Example 5, (10 gm, 1.0 equiv.) and propiophenone (5 gm, 1.0 equiv., 0.5 wt.) in Tetrahydrofuran (100 mL, 10.0 vol., 8.5 wt.) was added to the above mixture and stirred at 65±5 °C for NLT 8 hr. The mixture is cooled to NMT 30 °C and 40% K₂CO₃ (20 mL, 2.0 vol., 2.0 wt.) is added. The mixture was stirred for NLT 1 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with Me-THF (40 mL, 4.0 vol., 3.5 wt.). The filtrate was added to 40% K₂CO₃ (30 mL, 3.0 vol., 3.0 wt.) and stirred for NLT 30 min. The mixture was filtered and washed with Me-THF (20 mL, 2.0 vol., 1.7 wt.). The filtrate was settled for phase separation and the organic layer is concentrated until the volume reached 3 vol. (30 mL). The mixture was extracted with 1N NaOH (100 mL, 10.0 vol., 10.0 wt.) and the organic layer was

discarded. The aqueous layer was added sodium chloride (1 gm, 0.10 wt.) and then extracted 4 times with Me-THF (50 mL, 5.0 vol., 4.3 wt.). The 4 organic layers are combined and concentrated until the volume reached 5 vol. The mixture is extracted with 20% NaCl (50 mL, 5.0 vol., 5.0 wt.). The organic layer was added isopropanol (50 mL, 5.0 vol., 3.9 wt.) and the mixture was concentrated until the volume reached 3 vol. isopropanol (50 mL, 5.0 vol., 4.5 wt.) was added and the mixture is concentrated until the volume reached 3 vol. (30 mL). The mixture was heated to 65 ± 5 °C and n-Heptane (120 mL, 12.0 vol., 8.2 wt.) was added. The mixture was cooled to NMT 5 °C and stirred at NMT 5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with n-Heptane (50 mL, 5 vol., 3.4 wt.). The wet cake was dried at NMT 70 °C under reduced pressure to afford a mixture of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen, (E/Z)-4-[1-[4-[2-(Methylamino)ethoxy]phenyl]-2-phenyl-1-buten-1-yl]-phenol, compounds of Formula (III). Yield: 6.7 g, 45%; Purity: **96.79%**. E/Z ratio: **48.6:1** (Expected yield – NLT 30%).

Example 9: Industrially Scalable Enrichment of Z-Endoxifen



[0416] A suitable reactor was charged with the mixture of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula III, (0.105 kg, 1.0 wt.) and first solvent, ethyl acetate, (1.1 L, 10 vol./wt., 9.0 wt./wt.). The mixture was cooled to 0-5 °C and 6N HCl (0.3 L, 3 vol./wt., 3.0 wt./wt.) was added slowly to the mixture. The mixture was heated to 60 ± 5 °C and stirred at 60 ± 5 °C for NLT 6 hr. The mixture was cooled to 0 ± 5 °C and 8N NaOH (0.3 L, 3.0 vol./wt., 3.0 wt./wt.) was added slowly until the pH of the mixture was ≥ 12 .

[0417] The mixture was settled for phase separation, the organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was washed with the first solvent, ethyl acetate (0.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.5 wt./wt.). The organic layer was collected. The combined organic layers were washed with 20% NaCl (0.3 L, 3 vol./wt., 3.0 wt./wt.). The organic layer was treated with activated carbon (charcoal) (0.005 kg, 0.05 wt.) and stirred at 50 ± 5 °C for NLT 1 hr. The mixture was filtered through a bed of diatomaceous earth/silica (Celite® S) and washed with ethyl acetate (0.5 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.5 wt./wt.). The filtrate was concentrated at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached 10 vol. (1.1 L). The mixture was cooled to 0-5 °C and stirred at 0-5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate was collected. The filtrate was concentrated at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume.

[0418] A second solvent, isopropanol, (1.1 L, 10 vol./wt., 7.9 wt./wt.) was added and the mixture was concentrated at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume.

Isopropanol (1.1 L, 10 vol./wt., 7.9 wt./wt.) was again added and the mixture was concentrated at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached the lowest agitateable volume. Isopropanol (1.1 L, 10 vol./wt., 7.9 wt./wt.) was added and the mixture was concentrated at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached 5 vol. (0.5 L). The suspension was stirred at 50±5 °C for NLT 6 hr. The mixture was cooled to 20±5 °C and stirred at 20±5 °C for NLT 4 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with isopropanol (0.2 L, 2 vol./wt., 1.6 wt./wt.). The wet cake was dried at NMT 60 °C to afford purified (Z-endoxifen) solid compound of Formula (IV) as an off-white solid. Yield: 39.5 g, 36%, (E)/(Z) ratio: **1/12.2**; Purity (Z): **89.59%** by HPLC, Expected Yield (20-40%).

[0419] A suitable 1 L reactor was charged with the above Z-endoxifen (39 g) solid compound of Formula (IV) and a third solvent, isopropanol (390 mL, 10 vol./wt.). The suspension was stirred at 50±5 °C for NLT 6 hr. The mixture was cooled to 20±5 °C and stirred at 20±5 °C for NLT 4 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with isopropanol (78 mL, 2 vol./wt.). The wet cake was dried at NMT 60 °C to afford purified (Z-endoxifen) solid compound of Formula (IV) as an off-white solid. Yield: 25 g, 61%, (E)/(Z) ratio: 1/55.1; Purity (Z): **95.81%**, Expected Yield (50-70%).

[0420] In this manner, polymorph Form I of endoxifen was prepared. XRPD patterns for two batches of the resultant polymorph are provided in **Figs. 9** and **10**. The XRPD peaks from **Figs. 9** and **10** are provided in **Table 8**.

[0421] **Table 8:** XRPD peaks from **Figs. 9** and **10**.

Fig. 9	
Peak Position (°2θ)	Relative Intensity (%)
7.1	15
9.3	22
12.4	8
14.2	26
15.2	14
16.0	20
16.8	58
17.1	100
18.2	40
18.6	15
18.9	12
19.8	14
20.9	32
21.3	24

Fig. 10	
Peak Position (°2θ)	Relative Intensity (%)
7.1	8
9.3	13
12.3	4
14.2	16
15.2	10
16.0	14
16.8	49
17.1	100
18.2	35
18.6	8
18.8	8
19.9	6
20.9	31
21.3	19

21.7	53
22.5	15
23.2	19
24.3	30
25.3	15
26.5	13
26.8	20
28.0	9
29.0	9

21.8	55
22.5	9
23.2	9
24.4	29
25.3	12
26.5	11
26.9	23
28.0	7
29.0	9

Example 10: Industrially Scalable Enrichment of ~1:1 E/endoxifen/Z-Endoxifen Mixture

[0422] A suitable reactor was charged with the mixture of (Z)-endoxifen and (E)-endoxifen, compounds of Formula III, (0.420 kg, 1.0 wt.) and ethyl acetate (4.2 L, 10 vol./wt., 9.0 wt./wt.). The mixture was cooled to 0-5 °C and 6N HCl (1.3 L, 3 vol./wt., 3.0 wt./wt.) was added slowly. The mixture was heated to 60±5 °C and stirred at 60±5 °C for NLT 6 hr. The mixture was cooled to 0±5 °C and 8N NaOH (1.3 L, 3.0 vol./wt., 3.0 wt./wt.) was added slowly until the pH of the mixture was ≥ 12.

[0423] The mixture was settled for phase separation, the organic layer was collected and the aqueous layer was washed with ethyl acetate (2.0 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.5 wt./wt.). The organic layer was collected. The combined organic layers were washed with 20% NaCl (1.3 L, 3 vol./wt., 3.0 wt./wt.). The organic layer was treated with activated carbon (charcoal) (0.02 kg, 0.05 wt.) and stirred at 50±5 °C for NLT 1 hr. The mixture was filtered through diatomaceous earth/silica (Celite® S) bed and washed with ethyl acetate (2.0 L, 5 vol./wt., 4.5 wt./wt.). The filtrate was concentrated at NMT 75 °C until the volume reached 5 vol. (2.0 L). The mixture was heated to reflux and then cooled to 50±5 °C. n-Heptane was added slowly at 50±5 °C. The mixture was cooled to 0±5 °C and stirred at 0±5 °C for NLT 2 hr. The mixture was filtered and washed with EtOAc/n-Heptane=1/2 (v/v). The wet cake was dried under reduced pressure at NMT 60 °C to afford substantially pure ~1:1 E/Z-endoxifen. [Yield: 106 g, 25%; (E)/(Z) ratio: 1.1/1; Purity (E/Z): 97.94%, Expected Yield (20-40%)].

[0424] In this manner, polymorph Forms II and III of endoxifen were prepared. Detailed parameters for the preparation of polymorph Forms II and III are provided in **Table 9**, and XRPD patterns are provided in **Figs. 11-13**. The XRPD peaks from **Figs. 11-13** are provided in **Table 10**

[0425] **Table 9:** Parameters for isolation of polymorph Form II and Form III

Entry	1	2	3
Reactor capacity	10 L	10 L	50 L
E/Z-endoxifen input	0.37 kg	0.17 kg	0.83 kg

Entry	1	2	3
6N HCl	1.1 kg (3 vol.)	0.68 kg (4 vol.)	3.32 kg (4 vol.)
Reaction time	60 °C, 6 hr	60 °C, 6 hr	60 °C, 6 hr
E/Z ratio in IPC	1.1	1.1	1.1
pH after 8N NaOH neutralization	14	13	14
NaCl extraction	20% NaCl, 1.1 kg	20% NaCl, 1.0 kg	5% NaCl, 2.5 kg
Org. layer concentrate to 5 vol.	to 1.9 L (5.1 vol.)	to 1 L (5.8 vol.)	to 4 L (4.8 vol.)
n-Heptane (10 vol.) addition at 50 °C	2.5 kg, 40 min	1.2 kg, 30 min	5.6 kg, 36 min
Agitation at 50 °C	150 rpm, 40 min	130 rpm, 1 hr	150 rpm, 2 hr
Cool to 0 °C	2 hr	4 hr	5 hr
Agitation at 0 °C	150 rpm, 2 hr	140 rpm, 6 hr	150 rpm, 6 hr
Filtration time	10 min	10 min	20 min
Drying	50 °C, 4 hr	68 °C, 18 hr	69 °C, 26 hr
E/Z ratio of API	1.1	0.92	1.1
XRPD pattern	Form II (Fig. 11)	Form III (Fig. 13)	Form II (Fig. 12)

[0426] Table 10: XRPD peaks from Figs. 11, 12 and 13.

Fig. 11		Fig. 12		Fig. 13	
Peak Position (°2θ)	Relative Intensity (%)	Peak Position (°2θ)	Relative Intensity (%)	Peak Position (°2θ)	Relative Intensity (%)
6.6	31	6.6	33	6.6	24
7.0	42	7.0	35	7.0	21
9.3	16	9.3	24	9.2	19
11.9	100	11.9	100	9.6	17
13.3	20	13.3	27	11.9	55
14.0	96	14.0	85	13.3	20
14.1	22	14.2	34	13.9	39
15.1	11	15.1	16	16.8	50
16.8	13	16.8	12	17.1	100
17.1	22	17.1	20	17.7	56
17.7	14	17.7	15	18.2	38
18.4	69	18.4	65	18.3	37
18.6	13	18.5	17	19.9	22
20.0	16	20.0	20	20.2	18
20.8	35	20.8	46	20.8	38
21.3	17	21.3	29	21.3	24
21.7	59	21.7	82	21.7	56
22.0	16	22.0	18	22.5	19

22.9	14	22.9	19	22.9	17
23.2	9	23.2	16	23.9	26
23.9	17	23.9	17	24.3	29
24.3	12	24.3	14	25.3	15
				26.8	20

Example 11: Stability of Z-endoxifen Free Base

[0427] Commercially, endoxifen is available as an E/Z isomer free base mixture, as well as $\geq 98\%$ (Z)-endoxifen HCl and (Z)-endoxifen citrate salts. Stability of Z-endoxifen HCl salt in aqueous and solid forms has been previously published (Elkins et al. J Pharm Biomed Anal. 2014 January; 88: 174–179). Elkins et al. provide predicted t₉₀ values for 10% conversion of (Z)-endoxifen HCl to (E)-endoxifen in the solid state of 53 months at 25 °C/60% RH and 4.3 months at 40 °C /75% RH. Conversion is expected to be more rapid in a solution environment. In an aqueous medium, Elkins et al. provide (Z)-endoxifen HCl t₉₀ values of 149 days at room temperature and 9 days at 45 °C. There remains a need for (Z)-endoxifen free base preparations that are sufficiently stable for preparation of pharmaceutical compositions that are suitable for administering to subjects, for example, at ambient temperatures as well as at higher temperature and humidity.

[0428] Provided herein in the present disclosure are preparations of endoxifen free base that are substantially pure, at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen free base, and stable for at least 9 months under conditions of ambient and high temperature and humidity. Stability, for the purpose of this disclosure, is defined as the continued presence of at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen in a composition for at least 6 months, and is measurable by (Z)-endoxifen conversion to (E)-endoxifen starting from the date of synthesis.

A. Accelerated 10-day Stability Study of (Z)-Endoxifen Free Base

[0429] The stability of (Z)-endoxifen free base Sample 1 of **Table 11** was studied when stored at various temperatures in solid form and in ethanol (EtOH) solution. The (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen levels were measured on days 2, 7 and 10 following placement of 1 g aliquots of purified (Z)-endoxifen free base in 180 mL HDPE bottles under dry N₂, which were then placed in double LDPE bags. The double bagged HDPE bottles containing each sample were individually packed in aluminum foil bags and thermally sealed until they were opened for testing the stability of the samples. The (E)- and (Z)-isomers of endoxifen were monitored by HPLC as disclosed above. The purity of (Z)-endoxifen in solid form remained at about 97% at 40 °C, 60 °C, and 80 °C up to 10 days. The results of the accelerated 10 days study indicate that (Z)-endoxifen in solid form does not interconvert to (E)-endoxifen at the tested temperatures up to 10 days.

[0430] Table 11: Accelerated Stability Test of Solid (Z)-endoxifen Free Base

No.		1	2	3
Z-endoxifen		1 g	1 g	1 g
Temperature		40 °C	60 °C	80 °C
2 days	E/Z ratio	1/76 (1.27%/97.45%)	1/75 (1.30%/97.43%)	1/76 (1.28%/97.42%)
	Total Impurity	1.28%	1.27%	1.30%
7 days	E/Z ratio	1/81 (1.2%/97.11%)	1/83 (1.17%/87.11%)	1/72 (1.34%/96.92%)
	Total Impurity	1.69%	1.72%	1.74%
10 days	E/Z ratio	1/75 (1.29%/97.31%)	1/82 (1.27%/97.48%)	1/77 (1.27%/97.33%)
	Total Impurity	1.40%	1.33%	1.40%

[0431] Table 12: Accelerated Stability Study of (Z)-endoxifen Free Base Solution in Ethanol

No.		1	2	3	4
(Z)-endoxifen		0.1 g	0.1 g	0.05	0.05 g
Solvent		10 mL 99.5% EtOH	10 mL 99.5% EtOH	18 mL 70% EtOH	18 mL 70% EtOH
Concentration		10 mg/mL	10 mg/mL	2.8 mg/mL	2.8 mg/mL
Temperature		25 °C	40 °C	25 °C	40 °C
2 days	E/Z Ratio	1/71 (1.37%/97.33%)	1/57 (1.70%/96.98%)	1/46 (2.09%/96.59%)	1/21 (4.43%/94.23%)
	Total Impurity	1.3%	1.32%	1.33%	1.34%
7 days	E/Z Ratio	1/50 (1.91%/96.37%)	1/34 (2.82%/95.45%)	1/17 (5.62%/92.67%)	1/5.5 (15.23%/83.04%)
	Total Impurity	1.72%	1/73%	1.71%	1.73%
10 days	E/Z Ratio	1/37 (2.58%/96.03%)	1/27 (3.56%/95.10%)	1/8.4 (10.46%/88.20%)	1/3.4 (22.59%/76.09%)
	Total Impurity	1.39%	1.34%	1.34%	1.32%

[0432] Results show that (Z)-endoxifen free base is surprisingly stable in alcoholic (for example ethanol and isopropanol (data not shown)) solutions even at elevated temperatures (40 °C) at higher

concentrations over 10 days. Accelerated stability at higher temperatures are generally considered predictive of long term (at least 18 m) stability at ambient temperatures.

B. Bulk Drug Stability Study

[0433] (Z)-endoxifen free base of the instant disclosure prepared by methods disclosed herein is surprisingly stable in bulk form. For bulk stability studies, ~1 g aliquots of (Z)-endoxifen free base were placed inside individually in double LDPE bags tied with a nylon cable tie. The LDPE bags were then placed in aluminum foil bags and thermally sealed. The samples for stability were placed in tightly capped, 180 mL HDPE bottles under inert conditions (dry nitrogen) at 5 °C and 25 °C/60% RH for 12 months, and at 40 °C/75% RH for 3 months. The samples were tested for (E)-endoxifen and (Z)-endoxifen concentrations and impurities, moisture or water content by Karl Fischer titration, aerobic bacterial colony forming units and appearance at time points day 0, 10 days, 1 m and 3 m. **Table 13** below provides bulk drug stability data at 9 m on endoxifen free base at varying storage conditions.

[0434] Table 13: Bulk Drug Stability of (Z)-endoxifen Free Base

Endoxifen (Free Base)	%Purity Storage (5 °C)				%Purity Storage 25 °C/60%RH				%Purity Storage 40 °C/75%RH	
	0 m	3 m	6 m	9 m	0 m	3 m	6 m	9 m	0 m	3 m
(Z)-endoxifen	99.5	99.6	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.6	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5
(E)-endoxifen	0.19	0.17	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.17	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.17
Water content (Karl Fischer)	0.06	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.06	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.06	0.07
Max Indiv. Impurity	0.11	0.10	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11	0.11
(Z)-endoxifen USP <921≥ Plate Count (cfu g/mL)	13990				14030				13776	

[0435] Results show that solid Z-endoxifen free base is stable for at least 9 months at 5 °C and 25 °C/60% RH. Accelerated stability at high temperatures is considered to be predictive of long term (at least 18 m) stability at ambient temperatures. (Z)-to-(E) endoxifen interconversion is minimal at the storage conditions studied, water content was not more than 1% and aerobic bacterial plate count TAC (cfu) is less than 20,000 cfu g/mL. Maximum individual impurities were determined at each time point and ranged from 0.10% to 0.11%.

Example 12: Characteristics of Purified Solid Z-endoxifen Free Base

[0436] (Z)-endoxifen free base, produced by methods disclosed herein, was a white to off-white powder. The water content of such a powder was not more than 1% as determined using Method 1c (Karl Fischer titration) of USP 921. The residual solvents were measured. Methanol was not more than (NMT) 3000 ppm, tetrahydrofuran NMT 720 ppm, isopropanol, ethyl acetate, n-heptane, and ethanol were each NMT 5000 ppm.

[0437] Residue on ignition of (Z)-endoxifen was not more than 0.1% as determined by Method II of USP 281. Residue on ignition of (Z)-endoxifen ranged from 0.02% to 0.099%. In some embodiments, the residue upon ignition is not more than 0.02%, 0.03%, 0.04%, 0.05%, 0.06%, 0.07%, 0.08%, 0.09%, and 0.1%. In another aspect, the heavy metals were NMT 20 ppm as tested by Method II of USP 231.

[0438] Elemental levels in solid (Z)-endoxifen free base is tested using test methods of USP 232 and USP 40.

[0439] Thus, the processes described herein and endoxifen prepared using these processes are suitable for manufacture of clinical and commercial grade (Z)-endoxifen.

[0440] *FTIR spectrum of Z-endoxifen*

[0441] (Z)-endoxifen was analyzed using Fourier Transform Infra-Red Spectroscopy (Instrument type: FT/IR4600Type A; Jasco: S/N ratio 25,000:1, Max resolution 0.7 cm^{-1}) with standard light source and a TGS detector. Infrared spectra were recorded on a FTIR spectrometer (Model FT/IR 4600 Type A; manufacturer Jasco), equipped with triglycine sulfate (TGS) detector and KBr beam splitter, using AgBr windows. About 10 mg of (Z)-Endoxifen free base was placed onto the ATR crystal, pressure was applied with the tip, and the sample spectrum was collected. Spectra were collected with a scan speed to 2 mm/sec using hydrated films. Interferograms were accumulated over the spectral range $4000\text{--}650\text{ cm}^{-1}$ with a nominal resolution of 0.4 cm^{-1} and 32 scans. Fig 2 shows a representative IR Spectrum of (Z)-endoxifen free base.

[0442] Figure 2 shows that purified (Z)-endoxifen has peaks at 702.0, 730.9, 794.5, 825.4, 907.3, 1027.9, 1167.7, 1238.1, 1278.6, 1508.1, 1575.6, 1607.4, 3310.2 wavelengths cm^{-1} $\pm 0.4\text{ cm}^{-1}$. A previously published FT/IR spectrum of free endoxifen showed peaks are at 706, 831, 1053, 1171, 1240, 1465, 1507 and 1604 wavelength cm^{-1} (Agudelo et al. PLoS ONE 8(3): e60250. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0060250).

[0443] **Table 14:** Spectral Assignments for IR spectrum of (Z)-endoxifen free base

Assignment	Frequency	Strength
N-H stretching O-H stretching	3200 – 3500	weak
C=C stretching	1500 – 1680	Medium
CH ₂ & CH ₃ bending	1200 - 1500	Medium
C-N stretching C-O stretching	1000 - 1200	Medium
=C-H bending =CH ₂ bending	690 - 1000	Medium

Example 13: Oral Compositions of Z-endoxifen

[0444] *API-in-Capsule*. $\geq 90\%$ Z-endoxifen free base was prepared as disclosed above. Dry white-to-off-white powder is formulated as stable free-flowing powder and filled neat into a capsule as a Drug-in-Capsule (DIC, also called API-in-capsule, AIC) oral solid dosage form. 1 mg, 2 mg, and 4 mg of endoxifen which was at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen was filled neat in a VCaps® Plus enteric capsule using Xcellodose technology (Capsugel). AIC were of size 0, Swedish orange in color.

[0445] The VCaps® Plus enteric capsules (Capsugel) are made with gluten free, non-animal self-gelling product hypromellose (methyl and hydroxypropyl mixed ether of cellulose), with low-moisture content that is suitable for moisture-sensitive ingredients such as (Z)-endoxifen. The capsules are coated with an enteric coating designed to achieve intestinal targeting (upper GI and colon), by the method of Cole et al. (Cole et al., Int. Journal of Pharmaceutics Vol. 231 83–95, 2002). Eudragit FS D30 is used as enteric coating for colonic targeted release and Eudragit L30 D55 is used as enteric coating for upper gastrointestinal targeted release.

[0446] (Z)-endoxifen free base in the AIC is released in predominantly in the intestines (upper GI and colon) and is protected from the acidic environment in the stomach for at least 6 hours. Enteric coating of the capsule prevents the release of (Z)-endoxifen in the stomach for at least 6 hours as tested by a method of USP 711.

[0447] Enteric AIC disclosed herein is stable for at least 6 months.

[0448] *Standards and testing for microbial contamination of the oral solid dosage forms of the instant disclosure*. For formulations of the solid dosage compositions disclosed herein, as the water content is NMT 1% and water activity (Aw) is less than 0.75, testing TAC and USP indicator organism is not necessary. The publication, “Microbial Bioburden on Oral Solid Dosage Form,” by Jose E. Martinez, Pharmaceutical Technology, February 2002, pages 58 to 70, is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

[0449] Furthermore, since formulations of the compositions disclosed herein also have water activity of less than 0.75, then no detailed microbial testing of that need be done. Total Aerobic Plate Count (TAC) is an estimation of the total viable aerobic bacteria present in a sample of raw material, in-process material, or finished product. Samples are analyzed in accordance with the most current USP Guidelines Chapter 61 (Microbial Limits Tests).

[0450] Acceptable TAC for oral solid dosage forms (OSDFs) are established for the formulation of the inventive compositions in terms of alert and action levels, which could be 1000 cfu g/ml, and 10,000 cfu g/mL respectively. A TAC that is 20,000 cfu g/mL is considered unacceptable.

Example 14: Preparation of (Z)-endoxifen Salt

[0451] (Z)-Endoxifen D-gluconate salt is prepared by mixing an ethanolic slurry of (Z)-endoxifen as the free base with an aqueous solution of D-gluconic acid, followed by hydrolyzing a 20% w/v solution of D-gluconolactone in water and heating at 70 °C for 15 to 30 min. Minimum volume of ethanol is used and 5 ml of the aqueous D-gluconic acid solution is added per 1 g of endoxifen free base. Stirring is then continued until a clear solution is obtained. (Z)-Endoxifen D-gluconate is crystallized using the methods disclosed above in Examples 1 to 4 to provide (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate salt.

[0452] 1 mg, 2 mg, 5 mg, 10 mg, 20 mg and 40 mg AIC enteric capsules will be prepared as described above. Similarly, 1 mg to 50 mg tablets will be prepared using (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate salt with enteric coatings EUDRAGIT ® FS D30 and EUDRAGIT ® L30D 55 to target small intestine and colon.

[0453] **Table 15:** Exemplary Tablet

Ingredient	wt/wt of composition
(Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate	0.1% to 20%
croscarmellose sodium	0.5% to 15%
microcrystalline cellulose	15% to 90%
mannitol	5% to 30%
Enteric coating EUDRAGIT ® L30D 55	0.01% to 3%

Example 15: Placebo Controlled, Dose Escalation Safety and Pharmacokinetic Study of Oral (Z)-Endoxifen

[0454] An objective of the study was to assess the safety and tolerability of oral (Z)-Endoxifen when administered as a topical application to the breast or orally as a capsule to healthy female

volunteers. A secondary objective was to assess the pharmacokinetics of multiple doses of oral (Z)-Endoxifen in the subjects.

[0455] Generally, healthy female volunteers aged ≥ 18 years and ≤ 65 years were enrolled. 24 participants were enrolled in 3 cohorts and will be administered study drug orally. Three dose levels of orally administered (Z)-Endoxifen were investigated in 3 cohorts. In each cohort participants were randomized to receive an oral (Z)-Endoxifen or placebo in a blinded fashion. Enteric-resistant capsules used in the study were designed as delayed release capsules to resist rupture for at least 30 minutes, but typically, for about 2 hours, under gastric conditions and then open fully in intestinal fluid (DRCaps; Capsugel, a Lonza Company, USA). Enteric-resistant (Swedish Orange size Zero (0); Capsugel, USA) DRCaps capsules manually filled with 1, 2 or 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen neat in compliance with GMP requirements were used. Placebo capsules contained microcrystalline cellulose an inert common capsule and tablet excipient.

[0456] Each cohort enrolled 8 participants, with 6 participants receiving (Z)-Endoxifen 1 mg capsules orally at 1 mg (Cohort 1), 2 mg (Cohort 2) or 4 mg (Cohort 3) doses and 2 participants receiving matching placebo capsules. In Cohort 1 (Dose Level = 1 mg) two participants (sentinels) were dosed 24 hours prior to the remaining participants. One sentinel was dosed with (Z)-Endoxifen and the other with placebo. The remaining six participants in Cohort 1 were dosed as no safety concerns were identified in the sentinel participants. The non-sentinel participants in Cohort 1 were admitted to the clinical research facility at least one day later than the sentinels. There were no sentinels in Cohorts 2 and 3.

[0457] Participant engagement in this study was for a period of 56 days. These included a 28 day screening period, and a 7 day post treatment period for Pharmacokinetic (PK) sampling. There were two confinement periods, one at the beginning and one at the end of the dosing periods. Participants were confined to the clinical facility on Days -1 through to Day 2 and Days 21 and 22. If participants were to experience any clinically significant adverse events during the study, they would have been required to remain in the clinical facility for further observation at the discretion of the Principal Investigator (PI).

[0458] Healthy female volunteers were screened within 28 days prior to commencement of dosing. Participants were admitted to the clinical facility on Day -1 for up to 3 days. The first dose of (Z)-Endoxifen or placebo capsules was administered on Day 1. Following completion of all safety assessments and sampling for PK analyses, participants were discharged from the clinical facility on Day 2. The first dose on Day 1 was followed by a 6-day treatment free period (Days 2-7). Each participant returned to the clinical facility for PK blood draws and safety assessments during the

treatment free period on study Days 4 and 6. On Day 8 participants commenced daily administration of (Z)-Endoxifen capsules or placebo capsules for 14 consecutive days (Days 8-21). Participants were supplied with study drug capsules and asked to self administer daily. Participants visited the clinical facility on Days 11, 14 and 17, prior to dose administration, for PK blood draws and safety assessments. On the morning of Day 21 each participant returned to the clinical facility prior to dose administration and were confined to the facility until Day 22 to allow for the collection of PK blood draws and safety assessments. The Day 21 dose was the last administration of study drug.

Participants were discharged from the clinical facility on Day 22 and returned for PK blood draws and safety assessments on study Days 24, 26, and 28.

[0459] Study assessments included taking the subjects medical history, including evaluation of any on-study adverse events and concomitant medication use; height and weight; physical examination; periodic vital signs (body temperature, heart rate, respiratory rate, blood pressure); periodic 12-lead ECGs. Laboratory tests included hematology, coagulation, urinalysis, serum chemistry and biomarker analysis (e.g., CYP2D6, BRCA1/2, Ki67, tamoxifen metabolites, etc.). Specific assessments to evaluate treatment safety included the following: the frequency and type of adverse events, clinical laboratory testing, 12-lead ECGs and vital signs. A modified FACT-ES® scoring questionnaire was used to assess symptomatology.

[0460] Blood draws for PK analysis were collected pre-dose (within 10 min) and 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12 and 24 hours following study drug administration on Days 1 and 21. PK samples for all other study days were collected within 10 min prior to dose administration. PK samples were obtained during the treatment free period on Days 4 and 6. Additional, PK samples were collected during the daily dosing period on Days 8, 11, 14 and 17 (within 10 min pre-dose). PK samples following completion of treatment will be collected on Days 24, 26 and 28. AUC(inf) was measured on Day 1 blood draw samples. Steady state plasma levels were determined starting from Day 8 onwards (which served as Day 0) for this determination.

Safety and Tolerability

[0461] Safety endpoints were summarized by dose cohort, with placebos pooled across cohorts. Treatment-emergent AEs were coded using the latest version of MedDRA by System Organ Class (SOC) and Preferred Term, classified from verbatim terms. The incidence and frequency of AEs, and SAEs, were summarized by cohort according to SOC and Preferred Terms, and by severity and relationship. The duration of AEs was determined and included in listings, along with the action taken and outcome. Vital signs, ECG and safety laboratory parameters were summarized at each

scheduled time point using descriptive statistics. Post-dose assessments were compared with baseline measurements. The incidence of laboratory abnormalities was summarized. Physical examination findings were presented in listings.

[0462] Treatment-emergent AEs deemed to be related to study drug (probably or possibly) were reported in 15 of 18 subjects (83%, 41 AEs) who received (Z)-Endoxifen and in 4 of 6 subjects (67%, 20 AEs) who received placebo. Most treatment-related AEs were mild in severity, with treatment related AEs of moderate severity reported in 5 of 18 subjects (28%, 6 AEs) who received (Z)-Endoxifen and in 2 of 6 subjects (33%, 2 AEs) who received placebo.

[0463] All AEs were classified as mild (75 of 84 AEs) or moderate (9 of 84 AEs) in severity, with no AEs classified as severe. Common adverse events of tension headache, headache, abdominal pain, nausea, dysmenorrhea and fatigue were reported both in subjects who received oral (Z)-Endoxifen and subjects who received placebo. Upper respiratory infection, hot flush, abdominal distension, dry mouth, and menstruation delayed were reported only in subjects who received (Z)-Endoxifen.

[0464] There were no clear differences in safety as assessed by clinical laboratory tests, vital signs, ECG assessments, FACT-ES responses in subjects who had received either topical or oral (Z)-Endoxifen compared with those who received placebo, and no dose-related trends in these safety assessments in those subjects who received (Z)-Endoxifen.

Pharmacokinetics

[0465] Mean and individual (Z)-Endoxifen serum concentration-time curves were tabulated for each dose cohort, and presented graphically with concentration displayed on a linear and logarithmic scale. Pharmacokinetic parameters were determined for each participant and summarized by cohort using descriptive statistics (arithmetic means, standard deviations, coefficients of variation, sample size, minimum, maximum and median). In addition, geometric means was calculated for AUC and Cmax. Analyses using linear models was performed to assess dose proportionality (both after a single dose and multiple dose), time dependence and accumulation (oral multiple dose), and attainment of steady state (multiple dose).

[0466] Parameters determined for the first and last dose (Days 1 and 21) included time to maximum concentration (Tmax), maximum concentration (Cmax), area under the concentration-time curve from time 0 to 24 hours following drug administration (AUC_{0-24h}), terminal elimination rate constant (kel), terminal half-life (t_{1/2}), terminal clearance (CL/F) and volume of distribution (Vd/F). Area

under the concentration-time curve from time 0 to infinity ($AUC_{0-\infty}$) was also determined for the first dose, on Day 1.

[0467] The pharmacokinetic parameters were determined using non-compartmental method(s). Descriptive statistics of pharmacokinetic parameters included mean, standard deviation (SD), and coefficient of variation (CV), minimum (min) and maximum (max). Dose related trends in pharmacokinetic parameters were assessed.

[0468] Mean and individual endoxifen serum concentration-time curves were tabulated for each dose cohort. Pharmacokinetic parameters, were determined for each participant and summarized by cohort using descriptive statistics (arithmetic means, SD, CV, sample size [N], min, max and median). In addition, geometric means were calculated for AUC and Cmax. Analyses using linear models were performed to assess dose proportionality (both after a single dose (oral) and multiple dose (topical and oral)). Statistical analysis was performed on the pharmacokinetic parameters using SAS v9.3 and Phoenix WinNonLin version 7.0 or higher.

[0469] Abbreviations used:

CV	Coefficient of Variance
Tmax	time to maximum concentration
Cmax	maximum concentration,
AUC_{0-24h}	(“AUC24hr”) area under the concentration-time curve from time 0 to 24 hours following drug administration
kel	terminal elimination rate constant, and volume of
$t_{1/2}$	terminal half-life
CL/F	terminal clearance
Vd/F	distribution.
$AUC_{0-\infty}$	(“AUC _{0-inf} ”) Area under the concentration-time curve from time 0 to infinity

was also determined for the first dose, on Day 1.

[0470] A summary of serum pharmacokinetic parameters with terminal half-life of (Z)-endoxifen, terminal elimination half-life, Tmax, Cmax, and AUC are provided below in **Table 16**.

[0471] Table 16: Model Serum Pharmacokinetic Parameters

Day	(Z)- Endoxifen Dose/Day (mg)	Median (Range)	Arithmetic Mean (CV%)		
		T _{max} (hr)	C _{max} (ng/mL)	AUC _{24hr} (hr*ng/mL)	t _{1/2} (hr)
Day 1	1 mg (n = 5)	6.0 (2.0 – 8.08)	9.6 (18.9%)	158 (20.3%)	41.1 (15.8%)
	2 mg (n = 6)	4.17 (3.0 – 6.0)	17.7 (23.4%)	305 (17.9%)	49.0 (26.0%)
	4 mg (n = 6)	5.08 (3.0 – 6.0)	32.5 (52.3%)	587 (53.3%)	41.6 (22.9%)
Day 21	1 mg (n = 5)	8.0 (4.0 – 6.05)	24.6 (35.0%)	458 (36.3%)	52.6 (20.8%)
	2 mg (n = 6)	4.0 (2.0 – 6.05)	50.0 (23.7%)	911 (19.7%)	43.4 (17.1%)
	4 mg (n = 6)	5.0 (2.0 – 10.0)	115.0 (49.0%)	2041 (50.4%)	45.1 (15.2%)

[0472] For once daily oral administration of the delayed-release (acid-resistant) (Z)-endoxifen capsules, there was dose-proportionality (linear dose response) in C_{max} and AUC_{24hr} of endoxifen across the three dose levels used in the study. C_{max} increased from 9.6 ng/mL to 32.5 ng/mL for the 1 mg to 4 mg doses on day 1 and from 24.6 ng/mL to 115.0 ng/mL on Day 21. Median T_{max} by dose level on Days 1 and 21 ranged from 4 to 8 hours. The apparent terminal half life (t_{1/2}) by dose level ranged between 42 and 53 hours, and steady state appeared to be attained after approximately 7 days (Figure 5 – dosing at Day 8 and C_{ss} at Day 14). Time to reach maximum blood levels ranged from 4 to 8 hours (Figure 4).

[0473] Table 17: Model AUC_(0-inf): 1 mg, 2 mg, and 4 mg (Z)-endoxifen

AUC _(0-inf) hr* ng/mL		
Dose: 1 mg	Dose: 2 mg	Dose: 4 mg
441	755	736
534	954	1883
739	1242	2116
527	1489	4624
593	1009	1098
	1188	1642

[0474] Table 18A: Model Serum Concentrations (nM) Over Time by Treatment, Dose: 1 mg (Z)-Endoxifen

Statistic	Pre-dose	Day 1										Day 4 Hr 72	Day 6 Hr 120	Day 8 Pre-dose	Day 11 Pre-Dose	Day 14 Pre-dose	Day 17 Pre-Dose
		hr 0.5	hr 1	hr 2	hr 3	hr 4	hr 5	hr 8	hr 10	hr 12	hr 24						
Mean	2.68	2.68	3.75	17.1	17.1	20.3	23.6	22.0	22.5	18.2	15.0	8.03	3.75	2.68	38.5	43.4	43.4
Std Dev	0.0	1.89	2.39	2.4	1.5	3.6	4.4	6.9	6.7	5.8	3.1	1.89	1.47	0.00	8.6	22.8	19.1
CV (%)	0	71	64	14	9	18	19	32	30	32	20	24	39	0	22	53	44
Median	2.68	2.68	2.68	18.7	16.1	18.7	24.1	21.4	21.4	21.4	16.1	8.03	2.68	2.68	42.8	40.2	45.5
Min	2.68	0.00	2.68	13.4	16.1	18.7	16.1	13.4	13.4	8.03	10.7	5.35	2.68	2.68	26.8	13.4	13.4
Max	2.68	5.35	8.03	18.7	18.7	26.8	26.8	32.1	32.1	21.4	18.7	10.7	5.35	2.68	45.5	75.0	64.2
GeoMean	2.68	3.18	3.33	17.0	17.1	20.1	23.2	21.1	21.6	17.1	14.7	7.84	3.53	2.68	37.7	37.6	38.5

[0475] Table 18B: Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 2 mg (Z)-Endoxifen (n=6).

Mean	0.17	0.00	2.17	10.2	14.5	17.2	17.2	14.3	14.5	14.2	10.3	5.67	2.86	2.83	22.8	29.2	32.2
Std Dev	0.41	0.00	1.47	3.8	2.3	4.8	3.7	3.8	3.4	2.0	2.3	1.53	1.10	0.41	3.3	4.7	7.7
CV (%)	245%	0%	68%	37%	16%	28%	21%	26%	23%	14%	22%	29%	39%	49%	15%	16%	24%
Median	0.00	0.00	2.50	10.0	14.5	17.5	17.0	14.5	14.5	14.0	10.5	5.50	3.00	1.00	22.5	28.5	29.5
Minimum	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	11.0	11.0	13.0	8.00	10.0	12.0	8.00	4.00	1.00	0.00	19.0	23.0	27.0
Maximum	1.00	0.00	4.00	16.0	17.0	22.0	22.0	18.0	18.0	18.0	18.0	8.00	4.00	1.00	28.0	37.0	47.0
GeoMean	1.00		2.35	9.55	14.3	15.6	15.8	13.8	14.2	14.1	10.1	5.47	2.55	1.00	22.5	28.9	31.5

[0476] Table 18C: Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 4 mg (Z)-Endoxifen (n=6)

N	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
Mean	0.53	0.83	3.17	20.0	27.8	26.5	30.5	25.5	30.3	27.8	21.3	10.5	5.00	2.33	50.4	69.0	68.8
Std Dev	0.41	0.41	1.70	5.0	13.7	12.1	18.0	11.3	17.8	14.3	13.2	6.8	4.64	1.27	25.1	45.8	43.0
CV (%)	49%	49%	54%	40%	49%	45%	59%	43%	59%	53%	62%	68%	93%	54%	50%	66%	62%
Median	1.00	1.00	4.00	19.0	24.5	24.0	25.5	25.0	28.0	25.5	19.5	8.00	4.00	1.50	45.0	64.0	73.0
Minimum	0.00	0.00	1.00	11.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	13.0	13.0	11.0	8.00	4.00	1.00	1.00	23.0	3.00	1.00
Maximum	1.00	1.00	5.00	35.0	52.0	49.0	52.0	42.0	52.0	52.0	43.0	23.0	13.0	5.00	77.0	145	115
GeoMean	1.00	1.00	2.62	18.9	25.3	24.5	26.7	22.5	26.4	24.5	18.0	8.54	3.62	1.92	45.2	44.9	37.5

[0477] Table 19A: Day 1 Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 1 mg (Z)-Endoxifen. N= 5

Statistic	Day 1								
	Cmax (ng/mL)	Tmax (hr)	AUC _{Tlast} (hr*ng/mL)	Kel (1/hr)	Thalf (hr)	AUC _{0-inf} (hr*ng/mL)	AUC _{24hr} (hr*ng/mL)	CL/F (L/hr)	Vz/F (L)
Mean	9.6	5.62	471	0.015	46.1	567	158	1.82	119.9
Std Dev	1.8	2.21	76	0.002	7.3	110	32	0.33	27.4
CV (%)	18.9	39.4	16.2	16.2	15.8	19.10	20.8	18.4	22.9
Median	10.0	6.0	472	0.015	47.2	534	171	1.87	107.6
Min	7.0	2.0	367	0.013	37.5	441	102	1.35	102.7
Max	12.0	8.08	582	0.018	54.4	739	183	2.27	168.4
GeoMean	9.5	5.11	466	0.015	45.6	559	155	1.79	117.8

GeoCV%	19.9	58.2	16.5	16.2	16.2	19.1	24.0	19.1	20.6

[0478] Table 19B: Day 1 Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 2 mg

N	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Mean	17.7	4.28	889	0.015	49.0	1108	305	1.89	130.6
Std Dev	4.1	0.96	225	0.003	12.7	256	55	0.45	34.9
CV (%)	23.4	22.5	25.3	23.3	25.9	23.1	17.9	24.1	26.7
Median	17.5	4.17	955	0.016	44.0	1099	303	1.83	118.0
Minimum	13.0	3.02	537	0.010	37.8	755	248	1.34	98.2
Maximum	22.0	6.00	1137	0.018	68.1	1489	380	2.65	194.8
GeoMean	17.3	4.19	862	0.015	47.7	1081	301	1.85	127.3
GeoCV%	24.1	22.2	28.7	25.3	25.3	24.0	18.0	24.0	24.7

[0479] Table 19C: Day 1 Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 4 mg

N	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Mean	32.5	5.56	1854	0.017	41.6	2017	557	2.73	154.5
Std Dev	17.0	2.47	1047	0.004	9.5	1075	313	1.60	79.9
CV (%)	52.3	44.5	56.3	21.8	22.9	53.2	53.3	58.5	51.7
Median	29.5	5.08	1423	0.017	39.9	1763	539	2.28	130.7
Minimum	14.0	3.00	691	0.012	31.6	735	258	0.87	69.9
Maximum	62.0	10.00	3574	0.022	56.0	4524	1115	5.43	258.4
GeoMean	29.1	5.15	1424	0.017	40.7	1704	521	2.35	137.8
GeoCV%	55.7	43.6	64.4	22.8	22.8	69.1	57.8	69.1	56.6

[0480] Table 19D: Day 21 Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 1 mg (Z)-

Endoxifen. N= 5

N	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Mean	24.6	6.88	458	19.1	0.014	52.6	2.49	181.3
Std Dev	8.6	1.87	166	6.9	0.003	10.9	1.06	64.1
CV (%)	35.0	27.1	36.3	36.3	20.4	20.8	42.6	35.4
Median	29.0	8.00	527	22.0	0.014	49.3	1.90	170.1
Minimum	14.0	4.00	248	10.3	0.011	40.6	1.57	116.7
Maximum	34.0	9.42	636	26.5	0.017	65.8	4.03	286.8
GeoMean	23.3	6.64	431	17.9	0.013	51.7	2.32	173.3
GeoCV%	40.1	32.1	42.2	42.2	20.9	20.9	42.2	33.9

[0481] Table 19E: Day 21 Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 2 mg (Z)-

Endoxifen.

N	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Mean	50.0	4.01	911	38.0	0.016	43.4	2.27	139.1
Std Dev	11.9	1.50	179	7.5	0.003	7.4	0.44	22.7
CV (%)	23.7	44.9	19.7	19.7	18.9	17.1	19.4	16.3
Median	51.0	4.00	910	37.9	0.015	45.7	2.21	131.6
Minimum	35.0	2.00	716	29.8	0.014	33.0	1.70	119.6
Maximum	65.0	6.05	1177	49.1	0.021	50.8	2.79	179.4
GeoMean	48.8	3.64	897	37.4	0.016	42.6	2.33	137.7
GeoCV%	24.9	53.1	19.8	19.8	18.2	18.2	19.8	15.5

[0482] Table 19F: Day 21 Model Pharmacokinetic Parameters by Treatment; Dose 4 mg (Z)-Endoxifen.

	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
Mean	115.0	5.33	2041	85.1	0.015	45.1	2.83	189.0
Std Dev	55.3	2.73	1029	42.9	0.003	5.8	2.15	155.0
CV (%)	49.0	51.2	50.4	50.4	16.6	15.2	76.0	82.5
Median	131.0	5.00	2459	102.9	0.015	45.3	1.63	106.1
Minimum	42.0	2.00	616	25.7	0.013	34.0	1.35	73.0
Maximum	178.0	10.00	3034	126.4	0.020	54.3	5.49	461.5
GeoMean	100.5	4.75	1744	72.7	0.015	44.6	2.29	147.7
GeoCV%	57.4	58.5	75.1	76.1	15.9	15.9	76.1	84.6

[0483] Table 20: Mean Ratios of Pharmacokinetic Parameters (Day21)/(Day1)

(Z)-Endoxifen Dose	Mean Ratios of Pharmacokinetic Parameters (Day 21)/(Day1)		
	C _{max} (Day 21)/C _{max} (Day 1)	AUC _{24hr} (Day 21)/AUC _{24hr} (Day1)	AUC _{24hr} (Day21)/AUC _{0-inf} (Day1)
1 mg (n=5)	2.74 (SD 1.29)	3.09 (SD 1.49)	0.81 (SD 0.20)
2 mg (n=6)	2.92 (SD 0.88)	3.04 (SD 0.79)	0.85 (SD 0.20)
4 mg (n=6)	3.56 (SD 1.01)	3.47 (SD 1.08)	1.08 (SD 0.38)

[0484] The mean accumulation ratios ranged from 2.74 to 3.56 for C_{max} and from 3.04 to 3.47 for AUC_{24hr} as the ratio of parameters on Day 21 compared with Day 1. There was no marked trend by dose level in clearance (Cl/F) and volume of distribution (Vd/F) for Day 1 and Day 21.

[0485] Time to maximum serum endoxifen levels is achieved by about 10 hours and that there is dose-related increase in serum endoxifen levels (**Fig. 3** and **Fig. 4**). Serum endoxifen levels ranged from about 25 nM to about 80 nM.

[0486] Pharmacokinetic assessment of pre-dose trough concentration from Day 8 to Day 21 (**Fig. 4**) showed attainment of straight line after day 14. Steady state levels of serum endoxifen appear to be being achieved by Day 7 with daily dosing. The pre-dose serum concentrations indicate little accumulation after 17 days for 4mg of (Z)-Endoxifen.

[0487] Table 21: Parameter estimates of dose linearity for endoxifen

Pharmacokinetic Parameter (log)	Analyte	Day	β Estimate	Two-sided 95% Confidence Interval	r ²
C _{max}	Endoxifen	1	0.808	(0.487 – 1.130)	0.66
		21	1.055	(0.655 – 1.455)	0.68
AUC _{24hr}	Endoxifen	1	0.873	(0.548 – 1.199)	0.69
		21	1.008	(0.582 – 1.433)	0.63

[0488] Table 22. Comparison of (Z)-endoxifen concentrations (Oral) with published literature.

(Z)-Endoxifen Dose	Published Literature Result of Average Plasma (Z)-Endoxifen C _{ss}		Study Result of Average Serum (Z)-Endoxifen C _{ss}		% Ratio of C _{ss} Study/Literature
	ng/mL	nM	ng/mL	nM	
1 mg	12.4	33.1	19.1	51.1	154%
2 mg	18.6	49.8	38	101.7	204%
4 mg	56.8	152.1	85.1	227.9	150%
8 mg	96.8	259.2	-	-	-

C_{ss} = Average Concentration at Steady State (AUC_{tau}/tau)

[0489] Published literature

1. Wu X et al. Cancer Res. 2009 Mar 1;69(5):1722-7. PubMed PMID: 19244106
2. Ahmad A et al. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2010 Jul;122(2):579-84. PubMed PMID:20052538
3. Ahmad A et al. J Clin Oncol 30, 2012 (suppl; abstr 3089)
4. Goetz MP et al. San Antonio Breast Conference 2013 [PD3-4]
5. Goetz MP et al. San Antonio Breast Conference 2015. [PD203]
6. Ahmad A et al. Clin Transl Sci. 2016 Jun 27. doi:10.1111/cts.12407. PubMed PMID: 27346789
7. Lee O et al. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol. 2015 Dec;76(6):1235-46

[0490] Thus, data from this study suggest that safety and tolerability of oral endoxifen is generally comparable to oral tamoxifen and that subjects administered with (Z)-endoxifen compositions have plasma endoxifen levels that are within the range that has been shown to have therapeutic effect in the adjuvant setting in women with breast cancer. (Z)-Endoxifen is rapidly absorbed and systemically available and that it displays dose proportionality in peak drug concentrations in serum (C(max)) and area under the concentration-time curve extrapolated from 0 to infinity (AUC_{0-inf}) over the dose range 1mg - 4.0 mg.

Example 16: Therapeutic Treatment of Tamoxifen-Refractory Breast Cancer by Oral Administration of Z-Endoxifen Free Base

[0491] An objective of the study is to demonstrate that stable and therapeutic (Z)-endoxifen levels can be achieved in tamoxifen-refractory patients by supplementing tamoxifen with (Z)-endoxifen. Plasma endoxifen levels will be used as a surrogate endpoint to predict clinical benefit as well as the rate of recurrence in this population and to confirm the safety and tolerability of (Z)-endoxifen administration when compared with tamoxifen.

[0492] Generally healthy subjects with early stage estrogen receptor positive breast cancer who are on adjuvant therapy of tamoxifen for at least 30 days will be enrolled for the study for up to 6 months. At least seventy-five tamoxifen-refractory breast cancer subjects will be enrolled in the study to ensure an evaluable population consists of at least 25 tamoxifen and 25 (Z)-endoxifen subjects is achieved. Additional subjects may be enrolled to achieve the desired population of tamoxifen-refractory subjects. These subjects will have been diagnosed with breast cancer and undergone mastectomy or lumpectomy.

[0493] After at least 30 days of oral tamoxifen, endoxifen plasma levels will be measured. If the endoxifen level is below 30 or 40 nM, then 1 mg of oral (Z)-endoxifen will be added to the oral tamoxifen adjuvant regimen. Additional (Z)-endoxifen doses will be added until a stable endoxifen of at least 40 nM but not more than 80 nM is achieved. The endpoint is to establish a therapeutically stable endoxifen level in the tamoxifen+endoxifen group for at least 6 months.

Example 17: *Pre-surgical Treatment of Estrogen Receptor Positive Breast Cancer by Oral Administration of Z-Endoxifen-D-gluconate*

[0494] An objective is to determine if Z-Endoxifen-D-gluconate reduces tumor activity in pre-surgical estrogen receptor positive breast cancer patients. Upon the initial diagnosis of ER+ breast cancer, 8 patients will be assigned to one of 3 groups, where each patient will receive 1, 2, or 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen-D-gluconate for 21 days prior to surgery.

[0495] The biomarker KI-67 levels of the tumor will be compared from the time of initial biopsy and the surgical sample will be compared to determine if one of the 3 doses results in a decrease in tumor activity.

Example 18: *Therapeutic Treatment of Breast Cancer by Oral Administration of (Z)-Endoxifen D-Gluconate*

[0496] An objective of the study is to demonstrate that therapeutic (Z)-endoxifen levels in the subject's plasma can be achieved in tamoxifen-refractory patients initiating adjuvant breast cancer therapy. Plasma endoxifen levels will be used as a surrogate endpoint to predict clinical benefit as well as the rate of recurrence in this population and to confirm the safety and tolerability of oral (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate administration when compared with tamoxifen.

[0497] Generally healthy subjects with estrogen receptor positive breast cancer for whom tamoxifen is indicated as part of their complete treatment regimen will be enrolled for the study for up to 6 months. At least seventy five tamoxifen-refractory breast cancer subjects will be enrolled in the study to ensure an evaluable population consists of at least 25 tamoxifen and 25 (Z)-endoxifen

subjects is achieved. Additional subjects may be enrolled to achieve the desired population of tamoxifen-refractory subjects. These subjects will have been diagnosed with breast cancer and undergone mastectomy or lumpectomy.

[0498] Immediately after mastectomy or lumpectomy, 25 subjects will be assigned to the tamoxifen group and administered daily with oral 20 mg Tamoxifen for a period of 3 months. Additional 25 subjects will be assigned to the (Z)-endoxifen group and administered daily with oral 10 mg tablet of (Z)-endoxifen D-gluconate for a period of 3 months. Blood will be drawn from each subject at day 0 (baseline), and on days 7, 14, 21, 28, 60 and 90. Plasma (Z)-endoxifen levels, hematology, chemistry, and coagulation parameters will be taken for both treatment sets on day 0 (baseline measurement), as wells as on days 7, 14, 21, 28, 60 and 90.

[0499] The plasma (Z)-endoxifen levels of the two treatment sets will be compared to each other. If the plasma endoxifen levels of the tamoxifen treated subjects are less than 30 nM, then those subjects will be transferred to the (Z)-endoxifen therapy group and the treatment will continue for an additional 6 months. If the plasma endoxifen levels of the tamoxifen treated subjects are above 30 nM, they will continue to be treated with tamoxifen. Bloods samples will continue to be drawn weekly until the end of the study to monitor the subjects' plasma (Z)-endoxifen levels, hematology, chemistry, and coagulation parameters. Recurrence of cancer in the subjects will be monitored and compared between the treatment groups. Safety and efficacy will be evaluated every 3 months until the end of the study.

[0500] While preferred embodiments of the present invention have been shown and described herein, it will be obvious to those skilled in the art that such embodiments are provided by way of example only. Numerous variations, changes, and substitutions will now occur to those skilled in the art without departing from the invention. It should be understood that various alternatives to the embodiments of the invention described herein may be employed in practicing the invention. It is intended that the following claims define the scope of the invention and that methods and structures within the scope of these claims and their equivalents be covered thereby.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY. DOCKET NO.	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
17/580,428	01/20/2022	1629	0.00	109559-715740	157	7

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

FILING RECEIPT



CC000000131434516

27148
POL SINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310

Date Mailed: 01/31/2022

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional utility patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection.

Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a corrected Filing Receipt, including a properly marked-up ADS showing the changes with strike-through for deletions and underlining for additions. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" or other Notice requiring a response for this application, please submit any request for correction to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections provided that the request is grantable.

Inventor(s)

Steven C. Quay, Seattle, WA;
Yao-Lin Sun, Tainan City, TAIWAN;
LungHu Wang, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChangJung Wu, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChuanDer Huang, Tainan City, TAIWAN;

Applicant(s)

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., Seattle, WA;

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 27148

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 16/641,985 02/25/2020

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see <http://www.uspto.gov> for more information.) - None.

Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access Application via Priority Document Exchange: Yes

Permission to Access Search Results: Yes

Applicant may provide or rescind an authorization for access using Form PTO/SB/39 or Form PTO/SB/69 as appropriate.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 01/27/2022

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 17/580,428**

Projected Publication Date: To Be Determined - pending completion of Missing Parts

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

**** SMALL ENTITY ****

Title

METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Preliminary Class

514

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific

page 2 of 4

countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER
Title 35, United States Code, Section 184
Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop

technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit <http://www.SelectUSA.gov> or call +1-202-482-6800.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	109559-715740

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

FORMALITIES LETTER

27148
POLSINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310



OC000000131434517

Date Mailed: 01/31/2022

NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)

Filing Date Granted

Items Required To Avoid Abandonment:

An application number and filing date have been accorded to this application. The item(s) indicated below, however, are missing. Applicant is given **TWO MONTHS** from the date of this Notice within which to file all required items below to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

The application is informal since it does not comply with the regulations for the reason(s) indicated below.

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- Replacement drawings in compliance with 37 CFR 1.84 and 37 CFR 1.121(d) are required. The drawings submitted are not acceptable because:
 - The drawings are not in compliance with 37 CFR 1.84 because figures 9-13 contain figure or view numbers that have incorrect orientation. Reference characters, sheet numbers, and view numbers must be oriented in the same direction as the view. See 37 CFR 1.84(p)(1).

Applicant is cautioned that correction of the above items may cause the specification and drawings page count to exceed 100 pages. If the specification and drawings exceed 100 pages, applicant will need to submit the required application size fee.

- The statutory basic filing fee is missing.
- The application search fee must be submitted.
- The application examination fee must be submitted.
- Additional claim fees of \$ **8840** as a small entity, including any required multiple dependent claim fee, are required. Applicant must submit the additional claim fees or cancel the additional claims for which fees are due.
- Surcharge as set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(f) must be submitted.

The surcharge is due for any one of:

- late submission of the basic filing fee, search fee, or examination fee,
- late submission of inventor's oath or declaration,
- filing an application that does not contain at least one claim on filing, or
- submission of an application filed by reference to a previously filed application.

SUMMARY OF FEES DUE:

The fee(s) required within **TWO MONTHS** from the date of this Notice to avoid abandonment is/are itemized below. Small entity discount is in effect. If applicant is qualified for micro entity status, an acceptable Certification of Micro Entity Status must be submitted to establish micro entity status. (See 37 CFR 1.29 and forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B.)

- \$ **80** basic filing fee.
- \$ **210** for **10** electronically equivalent pages in excess of **100** application size fee.
- \$ **80** surcharge.
- \$ **350** search fee.
- \$ **400** examination fee.
- \$ **960** for **4** independent claims over 3.
- \$ **7450** for **149** total claims over 20.
- \$ **430** for multiple dependent claim surcharge.
- \$(**0**) previous unapplied payment amount.
- \$ **9960** TOTAL FEE BALANCE DUE.

Items Required To Avoid Processing Delays:

Applicant is notified that the above-identified application contains the deficiencies noted below. No period for reply is set forth in this notice for correction of these deficiencies. However, if a deficiency relates to the inventor's oath or declaration, the applicant must file an oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, or a substitute statement in compliance with 37 CFR 1.64, executed by or with respect to each actual inventor no later than the expiration of the time period set in the "Notice of Allowability" to avoid abandonment. See 37 CFR 1.53(f).

- A properly executed inventor's oath or declaration has not been received for the following inventor(s) as named on the application data sheet:

Yao-Lin Sun

An inventor's oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 or 1.64 executed by or with respect to each inventor must be submitted no later than the date on which the issue fee is paid in response to a notice requiring such fee. See 37 CFR 1.53(f).

If the name of the inventor provided on the ADS is not correct, applicant must submit a request to correct the inventor name according to 37 CFR 1.48(f), accompanied by the appropriate fee under 37 CFR 1.17(i) and a corrected ADS in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76(c), i.e., identifying the information that is being changed with underlining for insertions, and strike-through or brackets for text removed.

Replies must be received in the USPTO within the set time period or must include a proper Certificate of Mailing or Transmission under 37 CFR 1.8 with a mailing or transmission date within the set time period. For more information and a suggested format, see Form PTO/SB/92 and MPEP 512.

Replies should be mailed to:

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Registered users of EFS-Web may alternatively submit their reply to this notice via EFS-Web, including a copy of this Notice and selecting the document description "Applicant response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice".
<https://sportal.uspto.gov/authenticate/AuthenticateUserLocalEPF.html>

For more information about EFS-Web please call the USPTO Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197 or visit our website at <http://www.uspto.gov/ebc>.

If you are not using EFS-Web to submit your reply, you must include a copy of this notice.

Questions about the contents of this notice and the requirements it sets forth should be directed to the Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit, at (571) 272-4000 or (571) 272-4200 or 1-888-786-0101.

/ttran/

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875						Application or Docket Number 17/580,428	
APPLICATION AS FILED - PART I							
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		SMALL ENTITY		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE(\$)	FEE(\$)		RATE(\$)	FEE(\$)
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A	80		N/A	
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A	350		N/A	
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A	400		N/A	
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	169	minus 20 = *	149	x 50 =	7450		
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	7	minus 3 = *	4	x 240 =	960		
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$310 (\$155 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).			210			
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))				430			
			TOTAL	9880		TOTAL	
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.							
APPLICATION AS AMENDED - PART II							
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY	
AMENDMENT A	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus **	=	x =		RATE(\$)
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus ***	=	x =		ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))						
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))						
				TOTAL ADD'L FEE		TOTAL ADD'L FEE	
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY	
AMENDMENT B	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus **	=	x =		RATE(\$)
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus ***	=	x =		ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))						
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))						
				TOTAL ADD'L FEE		TOTAL ADD'L FEE	
* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3. ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20". *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3". The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest found in the appropriate box in column 1.							

MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM FEE CALCULATION SHEET Substitute for Form PTO-1360 (For use with Form PTO/SB/06)							Application Number 17580428		Filing Date				
							Applicant(s) Steven Quay						
							* May be used for additional claims or amendments						
CLAIMS	AS FILED		AFTER FIRST AMENDMENT		AFTER SECOND AMENDMENT			*		*		*	
	Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend		Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend
1	1								(1)				
2		1							(1)				
3		1							(1)				
4		1							(1)				
5		1							(1)				
6		2							(1)				
7		1							(1)				
8		(1)							(1)				
9		(1)							(1)				
10		(1)							(1)				
11		(1)							(1)				
12		1											
13		1							(1)				
14		2							(1)				
15		2							(1)				
16		2							(1)				
17		(1)							(1)				
18		2							(1)				
19		(1)							(1)				
20		(1)							(1)				
21		(1)							(1)				
22		(1)							(1)				
23		2							(1)				
24		2							(1)				
25		2							(1)				
26		(1)							(1)				
27		2							(1)				
28		(1)							(1)				
29		(1)							(1)				
30		(1)							(1)				
31		(1)							(1)				
32		(1)							(1)				
33		(1)							(1)				
34		(1)							(1)				
35		(1)							(1)				
36		(1)							(1)				
37		(1)							(1)				
38	1								(1)				
39		1							(1)				
40		2							(1)				
41		(1)							(1)				
42		(1)							(1)				
43		(1)							(1)				
44		(1)							(1)				
45		(1)							(1)				
46		(1)							(1)				
47		(1)							(1)				
48		(1)							(1)				
49		(1)							(1)				
50		(1)							(1)				
51									(1)				
52									(1)				
53									(1)				
54									(1)				
55									(1)				
56									(1)				
57									(1)				
58									(1)				
59									(1)				
60									(1)				
61									(1)				
62	1												
63									(1)				
64									(1)				
65									(1)				
66									(1)				
67									(1)				
68									(1)				
69									(1)				
70									(1)				
71									(1)				
72									(1)				
73									(1)				
74									(1)				
75									(1)				
76									(1)				
77									(1)				
78									(1)				
79									(1)				
80									(1)				
81									(1)				
82									(1)				
83									(1)				
84									(1)				
85									(1)				
86									(1)				
87									(1)				
88									(1)				
89									(1)				
90									(1)				
91									(1)				
92									(1)				
93									(1)				
94									(1)				
95									(1)				
96									(1)				
97									(1)				
98									(1)				
99									(1)				
100	1												

MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM FEE CALCULATION SHEET Substitute for Form PTO-1360 (For use with Form PTO/SB/06)							Application Number 17580428		Filing Date				
							Applicant(s) Steven Quay						
							* May be used for additional claims or amendments						
CLAIMS	AS FILED		AFTER FIRST AMENDMENT		AFTER SECOND AMENDMENT			*		*		*	
	Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend		Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend	Indep	Depend
101		(1)											
102		(1)											
103		(1)											
104		(1)											
105		(1)											
106		(1)											
107		(1)											
108		(1)											
109		(1)											
110		(1)											
111		(1)											
112		(1)											
113		(1)											
114		(1)											
115		(1)											
116		(1)											
117		(1)											
118		(1)											
119		(1)											
120		(1)											
121	1												
122		(1)											
123		(1)											
124		(1)											
125		(1)											
126		(1)											
127		(1)											
128		(1)											
129		(1)											
130		(1)											
131		(1)											
132		(1)											
133		(1)											
134		(1)											
135	1												
136		1											
137		2											
138		(1)											
139		(1)											
140		(1)											
141		(1)											
142		(1)											
143		(1)											
144		(1)											
145		(1)											
146		(1)											
147		(1)											
148		(1)											
149		(1)											
150		(1)											
Total Indep	7		0		0								
Total Depend	162		0		0								
Total Claims	169		0		0								

151	1					
152		1				
153		2				
154		(1)				
155		(1)				
156		(1)				
157		(1)				
158						
159						
160						
161						
162						
163						
164						
165						
166						
167						
168						
169						
170						
171						
172						
173						
174						
175						
176						
177						
178						
179						
180						
181						
182						
183						
184						
185						
186						
187						
188						
189						
190						
191						
192						
193						
194						
195						
196						
197						
198						
199						
200						



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	109559-715740

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

IMPROPER CFR REQUEST

27148

POLSINELLI PC

PO Box 140310

KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310



OC000000131436338*

Date Mailed: 01/31/2022

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT

Continuity, Priority Claims, Petitions, and Non-Publication Requests

In response to your request for a corrected Filing Receipt, the Office is unable to comply with your request because:

Prior-Filed Nonprovisional Application has been Improperly Indicated as a National Stage (35 U.S.C. 371) Application

Applicant submitted a benefit claim to a prior-filed nonprovisional application and improperly indicated that the prior-filed application is a national stage application under 35 U.S.C. 371. The Office's records show that the prior-filed application is an application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a). The Office has entered the benefit claim to the prior-filed application as a benefit claim to an application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a). Any request for a corrected filing receipt to include the indication that the prior-filed application is a national stage application will not be granted unless applicant supplies evidence that the prior application was in fact a national stage application. Accordingly, applicant should not submit such request without such evidence. Applicant should submit a corrected application data sheet (ADS) to delete the indication that the prior-filed application is a national stage application.

Questions about the contents of this notice and the requirements it sets forth should be directed to the Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit, at (571) 272-4000 or (571) 272-4200 or 1-888-786-0101.

/ttran/

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
The application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it is being submitted. The following form contains the bibliographic data arranged in a format specified by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as outlined in 37 CFR 1.76. This document may be completed electronically and submitted to the Office in electronic format using the Electronic Filing System (EFS) or the document may be printed and included in a paper filed application.			

Secrecy Order 37 CFR 5.2:

☐ Portions or all of the application associated with this Application Data Sheet may fall under a Secrecy Order pursuant to 37 CFR 5.2 (Paper filers only. Applications that fall under Secrecy Order may not be filed electronically.)

Inventor Information:

Inventor	1				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Steven	C.	Quay		
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	Seattle	State/Province	WA	Country of Residence	US
Mailing Address of Inventor:					
Address 1	107 Spring Street				
Address 2					
City	Seattle	State/Province	WA		
Postal Code	98104	Country i	US		
Inventor	2				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Yao-Lin		Sun		
Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	Tainan City	Country of Residence i	TW		
Mailing Address of Inventor:					
Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.				
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.				
City	Tainan City	State/Province			
Postal Code	741	Country i	TW		
Inventor	3				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	LungHu		Wang		

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service			
City	Kaohsiung City	Country of Residence ⁱ	TW

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.		
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.		
City	Tainan City	State/Province	
Postal Code	741	Country ⁱ	TW
Inventor	4	Remove	
Legal Name			

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	ChangJung		Wu	

Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service			
City	Kaohsiung City	Country of Residence ⁱ	TW

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.		
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.		
City	Tainan City	State/Province	
Postal Code	741	Country ⁱ	TW
Inventor	5	Remove	
Legal Name			

Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	ChuanDer		Huang	

Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service			
City	Tainan City	Country of Residence ⁱ	TW

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	4F No.30, Ln. 31, Sec. 1, Huandong Rd.		
Address 2	Xinshi Dist.		
City	Tainan City	State/Province	
Postal Code	741	Country ⁱ	TW
All Inventors Must Be Listed - Additional Inventor Information blocks may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. Add			

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
	Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	

Correspondence Information:

Enter either Customer Number or complete the Correspondence Information section below. For further information see 37 CFR 1.33(a).		
☐ An Address is being provided for the correspondence information of this application.		
Customer Number	27148	
Email Address	patentdocketing@polsinelli.com	Add Email Remove Email

Application Information:

Title of the Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740	Small Entity Status Claimed	☒
Application Type	Nonprovisional		
Subject Matter	Utility		
Total Number of Drawing Sheets (if any)	13	Suggested Figure for Publication (if any)	3

Filing By Reference:

Only complete this section when filing an application by reference under 35 U.S.C. 111(c) and 37 CFR 1.57(a). Do not complete this section if application papers including a specification and any drawings are being filed. Any domestic benefit or foreign priority information must be provided in the appropriate section(s) below (i.e., "Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information" and "Foreign Priority Information").

For the purposes of a filing date under 37 CFR 1.53(b), the description and any drawings of the present application are replaced by this reference to the previously filed application, subject to conditions and requirements of 37 CFR 1.57(a).

Application number of the previously filed application	Filing date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Intellectual Property Authority or Country

Publication Information:

☐ Request Early Publication (Fee required at time of Request 37 CFR 1.219)
☐ Request Not to Publish. I hereby request that the attached application not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and certify that the invention disclosed in the attached application has not and will not be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing.

Representative Information:

Representative information should be provided for all practitioners having a power of attorney in the application. Providing this information in the Application Data Sheet does not constitute a power of attorney in the application (see 37 CFR 1.32). Either enter Customer Number or complete the Representative Name section below. If both sections are completed the customer Number will be used for the Representative Information during processing.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
Please Select One:	☒ Customer Number	☐ US Patent Practitioner	☐ Limited Recognition (37 CFR 11.9)
Customer Number	27148		

Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information:

This section allows for the applicant to either claim benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, 365(c), or 386(c) or indicate National Stage entry from a PCT application. Providing benefit claim information in the Application Data Sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and 37 CFR 1.78.

When referring to the current application, please leave the "Application Number" field blank.

Prior Application Status	Pending	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
17/580,428	Continuation of	16/641985	2020-02-25
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
16/641985	a 371 of international	~~PCT/US2018/050272~~	2018-09-10
Prior Application Status	Expired	~~PCT/US18/50272~~ Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
~~PCT/US18/50272~~	Claims benefit of provisional	62/693885	2018-07-03
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
~~PCT/US18/50272~~	Claims benefit of provisional	62/624787	2018-01-31
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
~~PCT/US18/50272~~	Claims benefit of provisional	62/556799	2017-09-11
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
~~PCT/US18/50272~~	Claims benefit of provisional	62/556884	2017-09-11
Additional Domestic Benefit/National Stage Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.			
			Add

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Foreign Priority Information:

This section allows for the applicant to claim priority to a foreign application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and 37 CFR 1.55. When priority is claimed to a foreign application that is eligible for retrieval under the priority document exchange program (PDX)ⁱ the information will be used by the Office to automatically attempt retrieval pursuant to 37 CFR 1.55(i)(1) and (2). Under the PDX program, applicant bears the ultimate responsibility for ensuring that a copy of the foreign application is received by the Office from the participating foreign intellectual property office, or a certified copy of the foreign priority application is filed, within the time period specified in 37 CFR 1.55(g)(1).

Application Number	Country ⁱ	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Access Code ^j (if applicable)

Additional Foreign Priority Data may be generated within this form by selecting the **Add** button.
Add

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications

This application (1) claims priority to or the benefit of an application filed before March 16, 2013 and (2) also contains, or contained at any time, a claim to a claimed invention that has an effective filing date on or after March 16, 2013.

☐ NOTE: By providing this statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78, this application, with a filing date on or after March 16, 2013, will be examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access:

When this Application Data Sheet is properly signed and filed with the application, applicant has provided written authority to permit a participating foreign intellectual property (IP) office access to the instant application-as-filed (see paragraph A in subsection 1 below) and the European Patent Office (EPO) access to any search results from the instant application (see paragraph B in subsection 1 below).

Should applicant choose not to provide an authorization identified in subsection 1 below, applicant **must opt-out** of the authorization by checking the corresponding box A or B or both in subsection 2 below.

NOTE: This section of the Application Data Sheet is **ONLY** reviewed and processed with the **INITIAL** filing of an application. After the initial filing of an application, an Application Data Sheet cannot be used to provide or rescind authorization for access by a foreign IP office(s). Instead, Form PTO/SB/39 or PTO/SB/69 must be used as appropriate.

1. Authorization to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

A. Priority Document Exchange (PDX) - Unless box A in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the European Patent Office (EPO), the Japan Patent Office (JPO), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (KIPO), the State Intellectual Property Office of the People's Republic of China (SIPO), the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), and any other foreign intellectual property office participating with the USPTO in a bilateral or multilateral priority document exchange agreement in which a foreign application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed, access to: (1) the instant patent application-as-filed and its related bibliographic data, (2) any foreign or domestic application to which priority or benefit is claimed by the instant application and its related bibliographic data, and (3) the date of filing of this Authorization. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(1).

B. Search Results from U.S. Application to EPO - Unless box B in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the EPO access to the bibliographic data and search results from the instant patent application when a European patent application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(2).

The applicant is reminded that the EPO's Rule 141(1) EPC (European Patent Convention) requires applicants to submit a copy of search results from the instant application without delay in a European patent application that claims priority to the instant application.

2. Opt-Out of Authorizations to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

☐ A. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to permit a participating foreign IP office access to the instant application-as-filed. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing a participating foreign IP office with any documents and information identified in subsection 1A above.

☐ B. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to transmit to the EPO any search results from the instant patent application. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing the EPO with search results from the instant application.

NOTE: Once the application has published or is otherwise publicly available, the USPTO may provide access to the application in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Applicant Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.			
Applicant	1 Remove		
If the applicant is the inventor (or the remaining joint inventor or inventors under 37 CFR 1.45), this section should not be completed. The information to be provided in this section is the name and address of the legal representative who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.43; or the name and address of the assignee, person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign the invention, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46. If the applicant is an applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 (assignee, person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest) together with one or more joint inventors, then the joint inventor or inventors who are also the applicant should be identified in this section. Clear			
☐ Assignee	Legal Representative under 35 U.S.C. 117		Joint Inventor
Person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign.		Person who shows sufficient proprietary interest	
If applicant is the legal representative, indicate the authority to file the patent application, the inventor is:			
Name of the Deceased or Legally Incapacitated Inventor:			
If the Applicant is an Organization check here. ☒			
Organization Name	Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.		
Mailing Address Information For Applicant:			
Address 1	107 Spring Street		
Address 2			
City	Seattle	State/Province	WA
Country	US	Postal Code	98104
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			
Additional Applicant Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. Add			

Assignee Information including Non-Applicant Assignee Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

Assignee	1			
Complete this section if assignee information, including non-applicant assignee information, is desired to be included on the patent application publication. An assignee-applicant identified in the "Applicant Information" section will appear on the patent application publication as an applicant. For an assignee-applicant, complete this section only if identification as an assignee is also desired on the patent application publication.				
Remove				
If the Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee is an Organization check here. ☐				
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
Mailing Address Information For Assignee including Non-Applicant Assignee:				
Address 1				
Address 2				
City		State/Province		
Country ⁱ		Postal Code		
Phone Number		Fax Number		
Email Address				
Additional Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. Add				

Signature:					Remove
NOTE: This Application Data Sheet must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33(b). However, if this Application Data Sheet is submitted with the INITIAL filing of the application and either box A or B is not checked in subsection 2 of the "Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access" section, then this form must also be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(c). This Application Data Sheet must be signed by a patent practitioner if one or more of the applicants is a juristic entity (e.g., corporation or association). If the applicant is two or more joint inventors, this form must be signed by a patent practitioner, all joint inventors who are the applicant, or one or more joint inventor-applicants who have been given power of attorney (e.g., see USPTO Form PTO/AIA/81) on behalf of all joint inventor-applicants. See 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the manner of making signatures and certifications.					
Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/			Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-02-17
First Name	Lisa G.	Last Name	Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78332
Additional Signature may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. Add					

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
		Application Number	17/580,428
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.76. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 23 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application data sheet form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being filed via
EFS-Web with the United States Patent and Trademark Office
on February 17, 2022

Attorney Docket No.: 109559-715740

POLSINELLI PC

By: /Christina Campbell/

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of:	Confirmation No. 3226
Steven C. Quay et al.	
Application No.: 17/580,428	Examiner: Unassigned
Filed: January 20, 2022	Art Unit: 1629
For: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	<u>REQUEST FOR CORRECTED</u> <u>FILING RECEIPT</u>
Customer No. 27148	

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Commissioner:

Attached is a copy of the official Filing Receipt received from the United States Patent and Trademark Office in the above-referenced application for which issuance of a Corrected Filing Receipt is respectfully requested.

This Request for Corrected Filing Receipt is being made to update the Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant as follows:

This application is a CON of 16/641,985 02/25/2020

which is a 371 of PCT/US18/50272 09/10/2018

which claims benefit of 62/693,885 07/03/2018

which claims benefit of 62/624,787 01/31/2018

which claims benefit of 62/556,799 09/11/2017

82116587.1

Appl. No. 17/580,428
Request dated February 17, 2022
Request for Corrected Filing Receipt

Attorney Docket No.: 109559-715740

which claims benefit of 62/556,884 09/11/2017

Enclosed please find both a marked-up Application Data Sheet and Filing Receipt reflecting changes. A Corrected Filing Receipt is respectfully requested.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees associated with this paper or during the pendency of this application, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 50-1662.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: February 17, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

POLSINELLI PC
900 W. 48th Place, Suite 900
Kansas City, MO 64112-1895
Tel: 816-753-1000
Fax 816-753-1536



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY. DOCKET NO.	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
17/580,428	01/20/2022	1629	0.00	109559-715740	157	7

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

FILING RECEIPT



CC000000131434516

27148
POL SINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310

Date Mailed: 01/31/2022

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional utility patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection.

Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a corrected Filing Receipt, including a properly marked-up ADS showing the changes with strike-through for deletions and underlining for additions. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" or other Notice requiring a response for this application, please submit any request for correction to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections provided that the request is grantable.

Inventor(s)

Steven C. Quay, Seattle, WA;
Yao-Lin Sun, Tainan City, TAIWAN;
LungHu Wang, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChangJung Wu, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChuanDer Huang, Tainan City, TAIWAN;

Applicant(s)

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., Seattle, WA;

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 27148

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 16/641,985 02/25/2020

which is a 371 of PCT/US18/50272 09/10/2018
which claims benefit of 62/693,885 07/03/2018
which claims benefit of 62/624,787 01/31/2018
which claims benefit of 62/556,799 09/11/2017
which claims benefit of 62/556,884 09/11/2017

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see <http://www.uspto.gov> for more information.) - None.

Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access Application via Priority Document Exchange: Yes

Permission to Access Search Results: Yes

Applicant may provide or rescind an authorization for access using Form PTO/SB/39 or Form PTO/SB/69 as appropriate.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 01/27/2022

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 17/580,428**

Projected Publication Date: To Be Determined - pending completion of Missing Parts

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

**** SMALL ENTITY ****

Title

METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Preliminary Class

514

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific

page 2 of 4

countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER
Title 35, United States Code, Section 184
Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop

technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit <http://www.SelectUSA.gov> or call +1-202-482-6800.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	45023908
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	27148
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740
Receipt Date:	17-FEB-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	15:08:49
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Request for Corrected Filing Receipt	109559-715740_758US-C1_Request_for_Corrected_Filing_Receipt.pdf	108842	no	2
			96d8e4039f319f37d8157696d37d450f8b714d6e		

Warnings:

Information:					
2	Application Data Sheet	109559-715740_758US-C1_Marked_ADS.pdf	369586	no	10
			c702d28f6f2403fc9c0ea0e9edf67f2b68c98410		
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied ADS fillable form					
3	Request for Corrected Filing Receipt	109559-715740_758US-C1_Marked_Filing_Receipt.pdf	220340	no	4
			3068dedfb6dc647b4fc7ccea012c8a8bbe876c96		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			698768		
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.					



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY. DOCKET NO.	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
17/580,428	01/20/2022	1629	0.00	109559-715740	157	7

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226
CORRECTED FILING RECEIPT



CC000000131947206

27148
POL SINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310

Date Mailed: 02/22/2022

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional utility patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection.

Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a corrected Filing Receipt, including a properly marked-up ADS showing the changes with strike-through for deletions and underlining for additions. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" or other Notice requiring a response for this application, please submit any request for correction to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections provided that the request is grantable.

Inventor(s)

Steven C. Quay, Seattle, WA;
Yao-Lin Sun, Tainan City, TAIWAN;
LungHu Wang, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChangJung Wu, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChuanDer Huang, Tainan City, TAIWAN;

Applicant(s)

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., Seattle, WA;

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 27148

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 16/641,985 02/25/2020 PAT 11261151
which is a 371 of PCT/US18/50272 09/10/2018
which claims benefit of 62/693,885 07/03/2018
and claims benefit of 62/624,787 01/31/2018
and claims benefit of 62/556,799 09/11/2017
and claims benefit of 62/556,884 09/11/2017

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see <http://www.uspto.gov> for more information.) - None.

Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access Application via Priority Document Exchange: Yes

Permission to Access Search Results: Yes

Applicant may provide or rescind an authorization for access using Form PTO/SB/39 or Form PTO/SB/69 as appropriate.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 01/27/2022

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 17/580,428**

Projected Publication Date: To Be Determined - pending completion of Missing Parts

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

**** SMALL ENTITY ****

Title

METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Preliminary Class

514

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor

community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit <http://www.SelectUSA.gov> or call +1-202-482-6800.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being filed via
EFS-Web with the United States Patent and Trademark Office
on April 21, 2022

Attorney Docket No.: 109559-715740

POLSINELLI PC

By: /Christina Campbell/

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of:

Steven C. Quay et al.

Application No.: 17/580,428

Filed: January 20, 2022

For: METHODS FOR MAKING AND
USING ENDOXIFEN

Customer No.: 27148

Confirmation No.: 3226

Examiner: Unassigned

Art Unit: 1629

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Commissioner:

Prior to examination on the merits of the above-referenced application, please enter the following amendments and remarks:

Amendments to the Claims are reflected in the listing of claims which begins on page 2 of this paper.

Amendments to the Drawings begin on page 5 of this paper and include both an attached replacement sheet and an annotated sheet showing changes.

Remarks begin on page 6 of this paper.

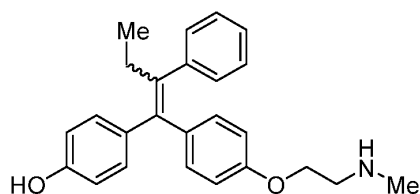
Amendments to the Claims:

This listing of claims will replace all prior versions, and listings of claims in the application:

Listing of Claims:

1-157. (Canceled)

158. (New) An oral formulation comprising an endoxifen composition encapsulated in an enteric capsule, wherein the endoxifen composition comprises a compound of Formula (III):



Formula (III)

wherein at least 90% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) is (Z)-endoxifen.

159. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the oral formulation is a delayed-release formulation.

160. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the enteric capsule is uncoated.

161. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the enteric capsule further comprises an enteric coating.

162. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, formulated such that the oral formulation is resistant to dissolution in an acidic environment for at least 2 hours, as measured in a dissolution test performed according to a method of USP 711.

163. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, formulated such that the oral formulation releases no more than 10% of the (Z)-endoxifen over 2 hours in gastric fluid, as measured in a dissolution test performed according to a method of USP 711.

164. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, formulated such that the oral formulation releases at least 50% of the (Z)-endoxifen within 8 hours in intestinal fluid, as measured in a dissolution test performed according to a method of USP 711.

165. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the enteric capsule comprises hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose.

166. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the endoxifen composition further comprises a filler.

167. (New) The oral formulation of claim 166, wherein the filler comprises talc, calcium carbonate, a sugar, a salt, microcrystalline cellulose, methyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, kaolin, mannitol, silicic acid, sorbitol, starch, pregelatinized starch, or combinations thereof.

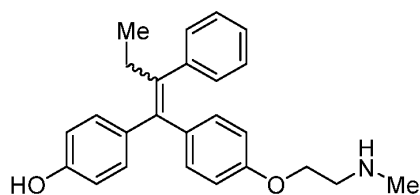
168. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the endoxifen composition further comprises a disintegrant.

169. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the endoxifen composition further comprises a lubricant.

170. (New) The oral formulation of claim 169, wherein the lubricant comprises calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, zinc stearate, mineral oil, glycerin, sorbitol, mannitol, polyethylene glycol, stearic acid, sodium lauryl sulfate, talc, hydrogenated vegetable oil, ethyl oleate, ethyl laureate, agar, or combinations thereof.

171. (New) The oral formulation of claim 158, wherein the endoxifen composition comprises from 0.01 mg to 200 mg (Z)-endoxifen per enteric capsule.

172. (New) A method of delivering (Z)-endoxifen to a subject, the method comprising administering to the subject an oral formulation comprising an endoxifen composition encapsulated in an enteric capsule, wherein the endoxifen composition comprises a compound of Formula (III):



Formula (III)

wherein at least 90% by weight of the compound of Formula (III) is (Z)-endoxifen.

173. (New) The method of claim 172, further comprising releasing no more than 10% of the (Z)-endoxifen in a stomach of the subject within 2 hours following administration.

174. (New) The method of claim 172, further comprising releasing at least 50% of the (Z)-endoxifen in a small intestine of the subject within 8 hours following administration.

175. (New) The method of claim 172, further comprising producing an area under curve (AUC_{0-inf}) of (Z)-endoxifen in the subject of from 200 hr*ng/mL to 10,000 hr*ng/mL per 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen administered.

176. (New) The method of claim 172, further comprising producing a maximum blood plasma concentration (C_{max}) of (Z)-endoxifen in the subject of from 14 ng/mL to 62 ng/mL per 4 mg of (Z)-endoxifen administered.

177. (New) The method of claim 172, further comprising treating a hormone-dependent breast disorder or a hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder in the subject.

178. (New) The method of claim 177, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is a benign breast disorder, hyperplasia, atypia, atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, increased breast density, gynecomastia, ductal carcinoma *in situ*, lobular carcinoma *in situ*, breast cancer, precocious puberty, McCune-Albright Syndrome, endometrial cancer, ovarian cancer, uterine cancer, cervical cancer, vaginal cancer, or vulvar cancer.

179. (New) The method of claim 177, wherein the hormone-dependent breast disorder or the hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder is tamoxifen-refractory or tamoxifen resistant.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	45532394
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	27148
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740
Receipt Date:	21-APR-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	18:18:17
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	DA
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$1230
RAM confirmation Number	E20224KI18481741
Deposit Account	501662
Authorized User	Christina Campbell
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: 37 CFR 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) 37 CFR 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

37 CFR 1.19 (Document supply fees)
37 CFR 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)
37 CFR 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Non Patent Literature	ZHANG_Safety_Parameters_09 Sep2014_9pgs_EFS.pdf	3233518	no	9
			1c7cad9048e64a05f3883340eddaeffb1b29aa		
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Applicant Response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice	109559-715740-Response-NTFMP.pdf	102180	no	2
			3482b883f7731aa62cdd75d05a94b1990288684d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Drawings-only black and white line drawings	109559-715740-Replacement-Drawings.pdf	982785	no	5
			4f38dfe4411996ecc6560b2d9e0194cc7e82e36e9		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Transmittal Letter	109559-715740-IDS-Transmittal.pdf	158641	no	4
			fc76dcd489e32bcf9133fc036f2e425de6da73b1		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5		109559-715740-Preliminary-Amendment.pdf	158089	yes	7
			9f110b22889356b2aa0d602d3d2b0aebd9495368		
	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description				
	Document Description		Start	End	
	Preliminary Amendment		1	1	
	Claims		2	4	
	Drawings-only black and white line drawings		5	5	

	Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment	6	7				
Warnings:							
Information:							
6	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>51064</td><td rowspan="2">no</td><td rowspan="2">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>9489060e3b0b813f4e8dd05f2c9dde3c0f9a382</td></tr> </table>	51064	no	2	9489060e3b0b813f4e8dd05f2c9dde3c0f9a382
51064	no	2					
9489060e3b0b813f4e8dd05f2c9dde3c0f9a382							
Warnings:							
Information:							
Total Files Size (in bytes):		4686277					
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.							

Amendments to the Drawings:

The attached sheets of drawings include changes to Figs. 9-13. The first sheet, which includes Fig. 9, replaces the original sheet including Fig. 9. The second sheet, which includes Fig. 10, replaces the original sheet including Fig. 10. The third sheet, which includes Fig. 11, replaces the original sheet including Fig. 11. The fourth sheet, which includes Fig. 12, replaces the original sheet including Fig. 12. The fifth sheet, which includes Fig. 13, replaces the original sheet including Fig. 13.

Attachment: Replacement Sheet

REMARKS

Please cancel claims 1-157 and add new claims 158-176. Support for the new claims can be found throughout the originally filed application. Additionally, Applicant has provided replacement drawings pursuant to the notice to correct the orientation of the figure labels for figures 9-13. Please enter this amendment prior to substantive examination. No new matter is added by way of these amendments.

Exemplary Support for Claim Amendments

Claim	Exemplary Support in PCT/US2018/050272
Claim 158	Original claims 1, 2, and 36
Claim 159	Paragraph [0214]
Claim 160	Paragraph [0215]
Claim 161	Paragraph [0199]
Claim 162	Paragraph [0225]
Claim 163	Paragraph [0226]
Claim 164	Paragraph [0228]
Claim 165	Paragraph [0196]
Claim 166	Paragraph [0201]
Claim 167	Paragraph [0201]
Claim 168	Paragraph [0205]
Claim 169	Paragraph [0206]
Claim 170	Paragraph [0206]
Claim 171	Paragraph [0291]
Claim 172	Original claims 1, 2, and 36 and paragraph [0190]
Claim 173	Paragraph [0226]
Claim 174	Paragraph [0228]
Claim 175	Paragraph [0224] and Table 17
Claim 176	Paragraph [0472] and Table 19C
Claim 177	Original claim 44
Claim 178	Original claim 45
Claim 179	Original claim 47

CONCLUSION

In view of the foregoing, Applicant believes all claims now pending in this Application are in condition for allowance. The issuance of a formal Notice of Allowance at an early date is respectfully requested.

Applicant believes no fee is due with this response. However, the Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment in connection with this paper to Deposit Account No. 50-1662.

If the Examiner believes a telephone conference would expedite prosecution of this application, please telephone the undersigned at 206-393-5449.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: April 21, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Reg. No. 78,332

POLSINELLI PC
900 W. 48th Place, Suite 900
Kansas City, MO 64112
Tel: (816) 753-1000
Fax: (816) 753-1536

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal				
Application Number:	17580428			
Filing Date:	20-Jan-2022			
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN			
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay			
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell			
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740			
Filed as Small Entity				
Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)				
Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
UTILITY FILING FEE (ELECTRONIC FILING)	4011	1	80	80
UTILITY SEARCH FEE	2111	1	350	350
UTILITY EXAMINATION FEE	2311	1	400	400
Pages:				
UTILITY APPL SIZE FEE PER 50 SHEETS >100	2081	1	210	210
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
LATE FILING FEE FOR OATH OR DECLARATION	2051	1	80	80

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Extension - 1 month with \$0 paid	2251	1	110	110
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				1230

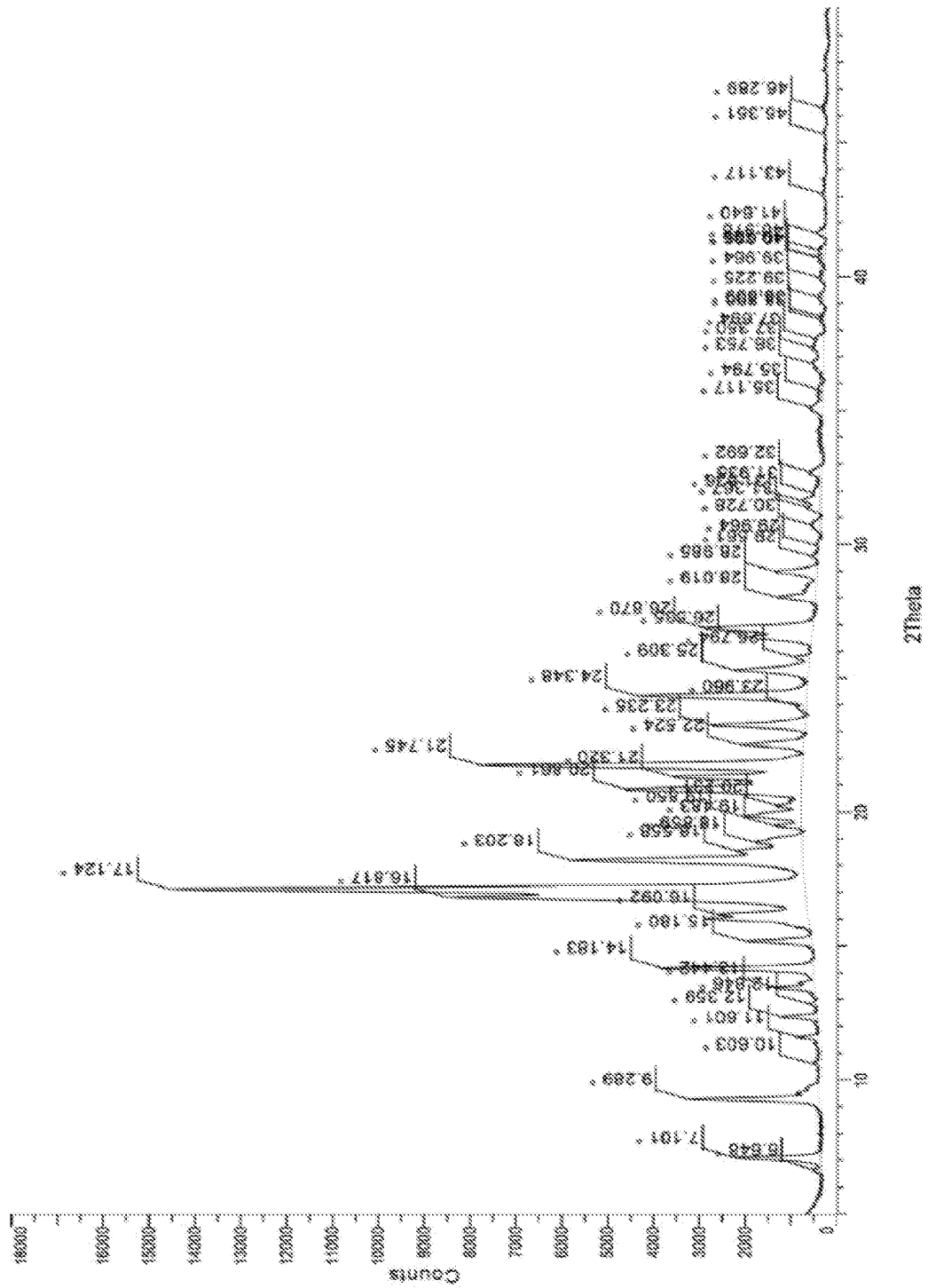
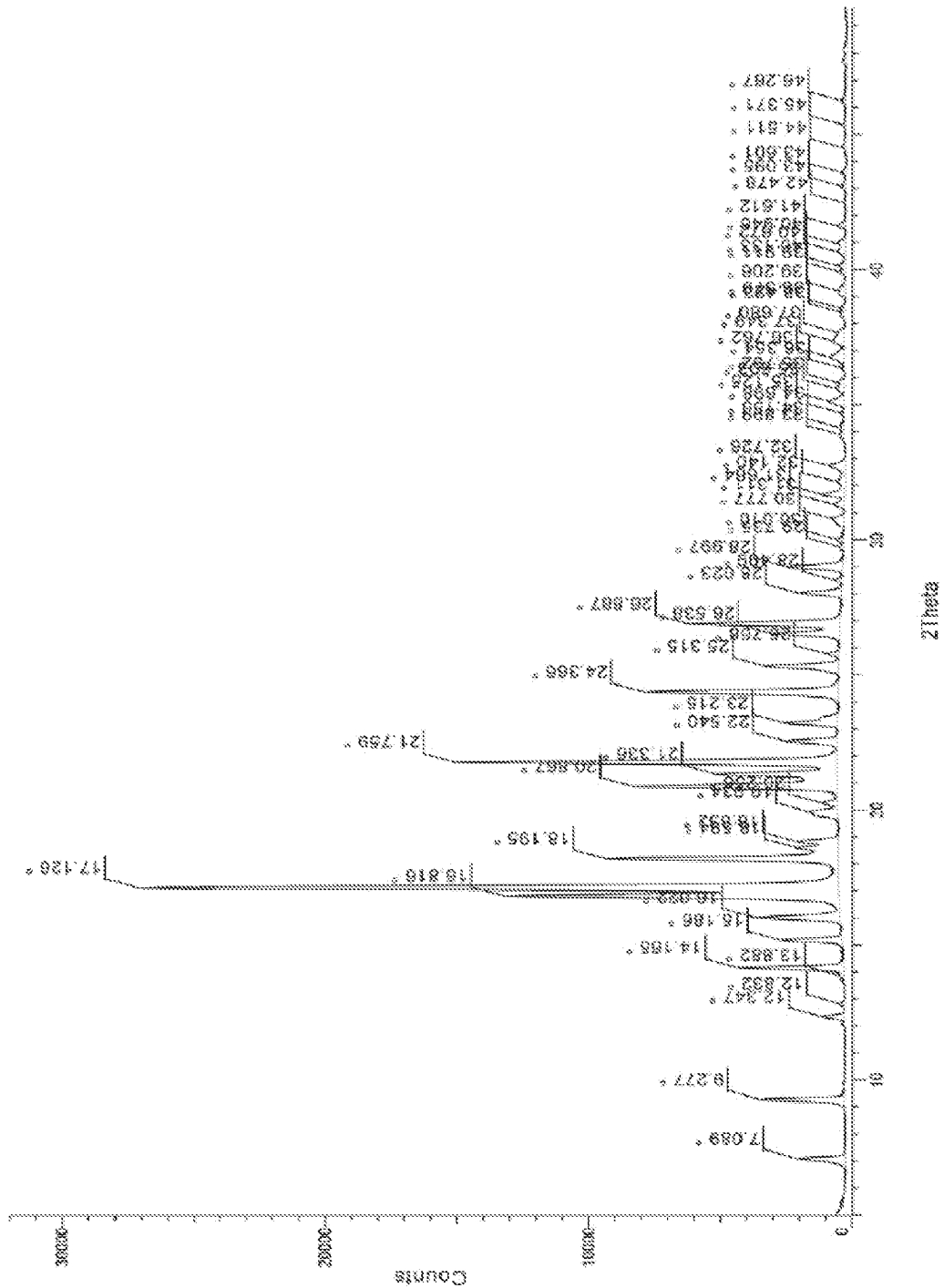


Fig. 9



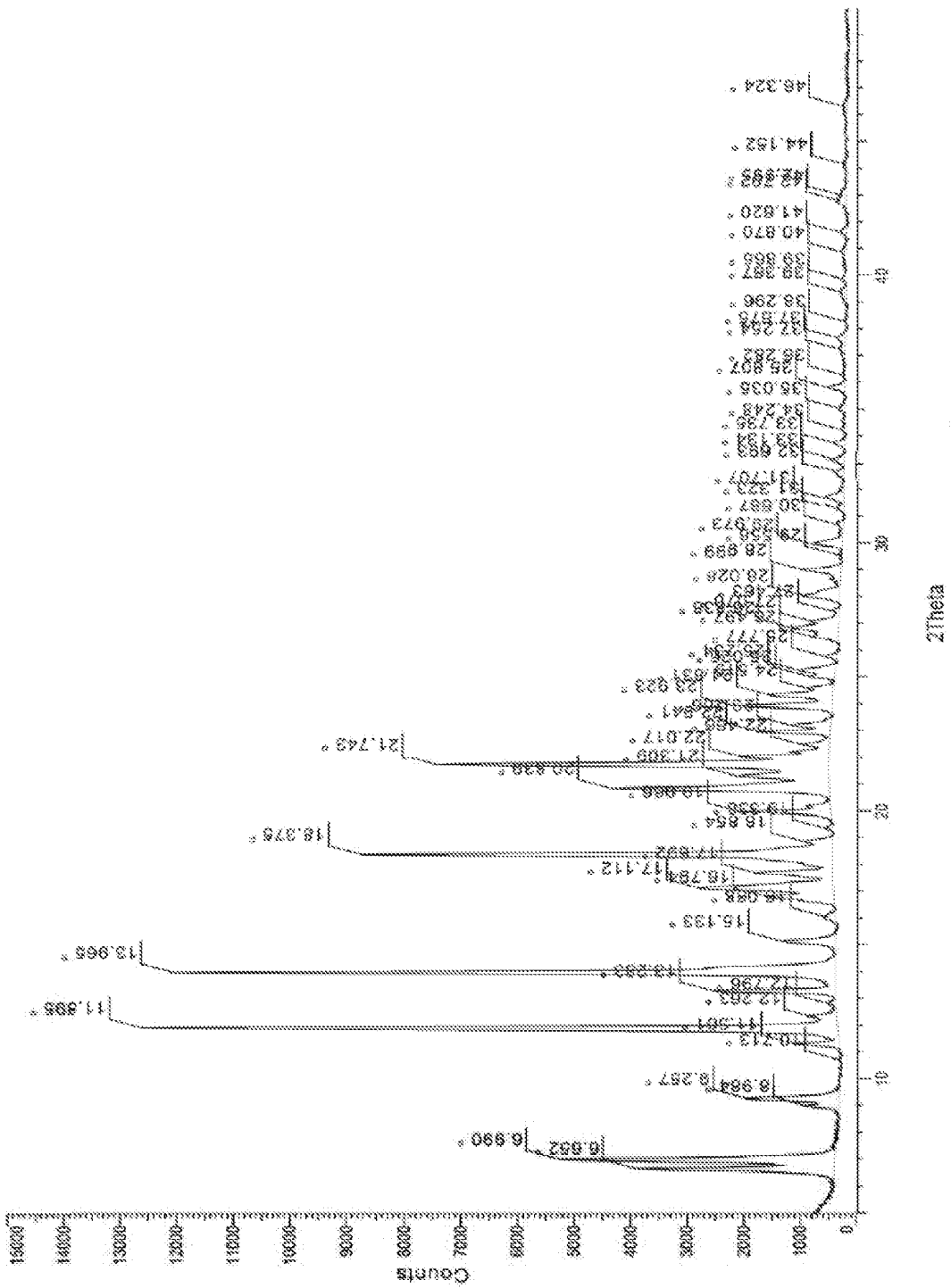


Fig. 11

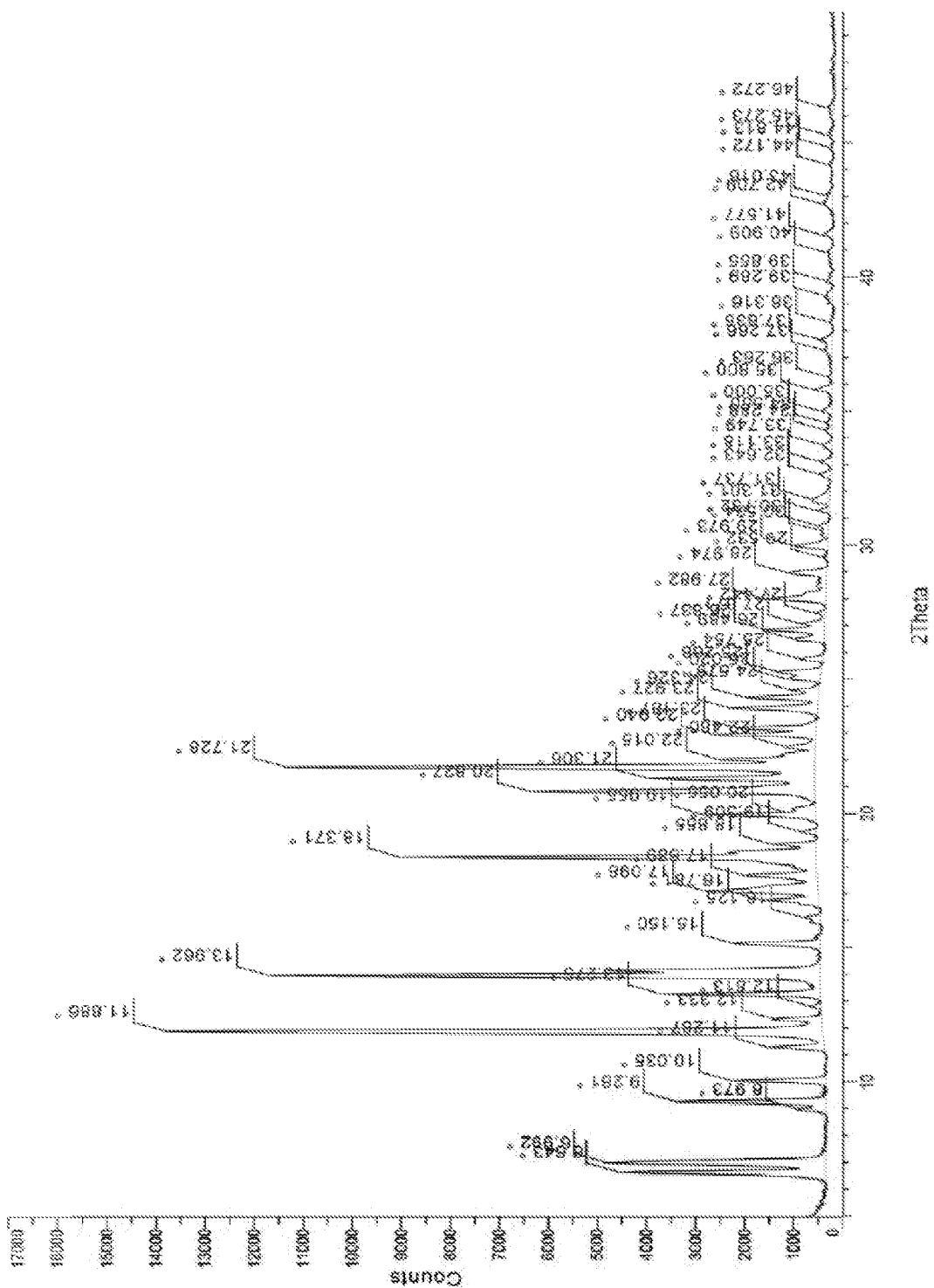


Fig. 12

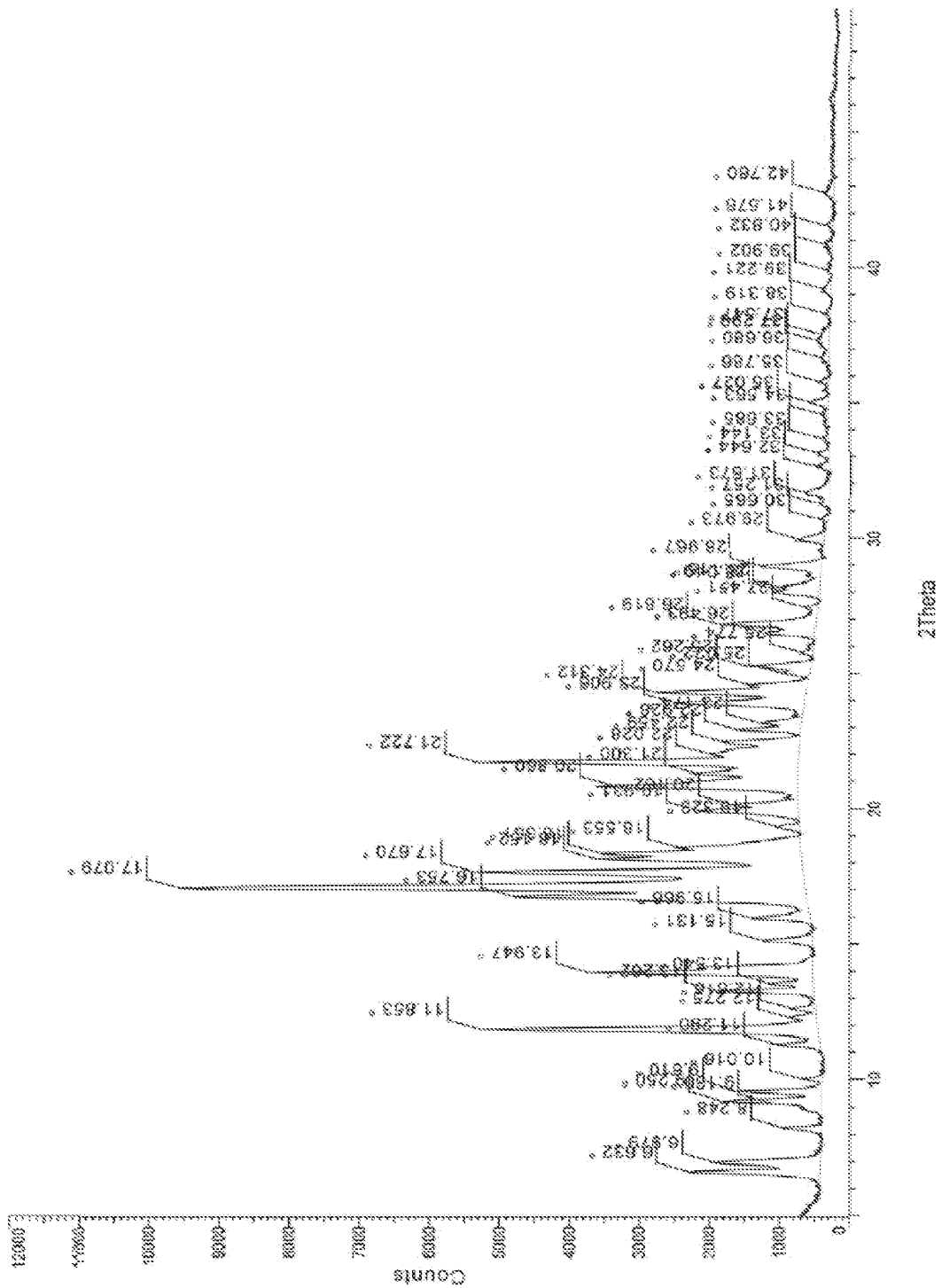


Fig. 13

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being filed via
EFS-Web with the United States Patent and Trademark Office
on April 21, 2022

Attorney Docket No.: 109559-715740

POLSINELLI PC

By: /Christina Campbell/

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of:

Steven C. Quay et al.

Application No.: 17/580,428

Filed: January 20, 2022

For: METHODS FOR MAKING AND
USING ENDOXIFEN

Customer No.: 27148

Confirmation No.: 3226

Examiner: Unassigned

Art Unit: 1629

RESPONSE TO NOTICE TO
FILE MISSING PARTS

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Commissioner:

Pursuant to the Notice to File Missing Parts of Non-Provisional Application, dated January 31, 2022, enclosed are the following to be made of record in the above-identified application:

- 1) Preliminary Amendment
- 2) Replacement Drawings

Please charge Deposit Account No. 50-1662 for the following fees:

Small Entity:	(a)	Filing Fee	\$80
	(b)	Search Fee	\$350
	(c)	Examination Fee	\$400
	(d)	Missing Parts Surcharge	\$80
	(e)	Application Size Fee	\$210
	(e)	Extension of Time Fee	\$110
		TOTAL FEES TO BE CHARGED	\$1,230

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees associated with this paper or during the pendency of this application, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 50-1662.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: April 21, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Reg. No. 78,332

POLSINELLI PC
900 W. 48th Place, Suite 900
Kansas City, MO 64112
Tel: (816) 753-1000
Fax: (816) 753-1536

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Inventor:	Steven C. Quay et al.	Group Art Unit:	1629
Serial Number:	17/580,428	Examiner:	To be assigned
Filing or 371 (c) Date:	January 20, 2022	CONFIRMATION NO:	3226
Title:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	CUST. NO.:	27148

FILED ELECTRONICALLY ON April 21, 2022

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.97

Commissioner for Patents:

An Information Disclosure Statement along with attached PTO/SB/08 is hereby submitted. A copy of each listed publication is submitted, if required, pursuant to 37 CFR §§1.97-1.98, as indicated below.

The Examiner is requested to review the information provided and to make the information of record in the above-identified application. The Examiner is further requested to initial and return the attached PTO/SB/08 in accordance with MPEP § 609.

The right to establish the patentability of the claimed invention over any of the information provided herewith, and/or to prove that this information may not be prior art, and/or to prove that this information may not be enabling for the teachings purportedly offered, is hereby reserved.

This statement is not intended to represent that a search has been made or that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, prior art or material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

- A. ☒ *37 CFR § 1.97 (b)*. This Information Disclosure Statement should be considered by the Office because:
- ☐ (1) It is being filed within 3 months of the filing date of a national application and is other than a continued prosecution application under § 1.53 (d);
 - OR --
 - ☐ (2) It is being filed within 3 months of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application;
 - OR --
 - ☒ (3) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits;
 - OR --
 - ☐ (4) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under § 1.114.
- B. ☐ *37 CFR § 1.97(c)*. Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the period specified in *37 CFR § 1.97(b)*, above, it is filed before the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, this Information Disclosure Statement should be considered because it is accompanied by one of:
- ☐ a statement as specified in §1.97 (e) provided concurrently herewith;
 - OR --
 - ☐ a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in § 1.17 (p) authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this statement.
- C. ☐ *37 CFR § 1.97 (d)*. Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, it is being filed before payment of the issue fee and should be considered because it is accompanied by:
- i. a statement as specified in § 1.97 (e);
 - AND --
 - ii. a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in §1.17(p) is authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this Statement.
- D. ☐ *37 CFR §1.97 (e)*. Statement.
- ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (c);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (d);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A copy of a dated communication from a foreign patent office clearly showing that the information disclosure statement is being submitted within 3 months of the filing date on the communication is provided in lieu of a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e) (1) as provided for under MPEP 609.04(b) V.

- E. ☐ *Statement Under 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d).* Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or from the Office or is a communication that was issued by a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or by the Office that was received by an individual designated in § 1.56(c) not more than thirty (30) days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. This statement is made pursuant to the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d) to avoid reduction of the period of adjustment of the patent term for Applicant(s) delay.
- F. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2).* The content of the Information Disclosure Statement is as follows:
- ☐ Copies of each of the references listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed herewith.
- OR --
- ☒ Copies of U.S. Patent Documents (issued patents and patent publications) listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are not enclosed.
- AND/OR --
- ☒ Copies of Foreign Patent Documents and/or Non Patent Literature Documents listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a)(2).
- AND/OR --
- ☐ Copies of pending unpublished U.S. patent applications are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2) (iii).
- G. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98(a)(3).* The Information Disclosure Statement includes non-English patents and/or references.
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)(i), a concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is provided herewith.
- ☐ Pursuant to MPEP 609(B), an English language copy of a foreign search report is submitted herewith to satisfy the requirement for a concise explanation where non-English language information is cited in the search report.
- OR --
- ☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is as follows: _____
- ☒ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a) (3) (ii), a copy of a translation, or a portion thereof, of the non-English language reference(s) is provided herewith.
- H. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(d).* Copies of patents, publications and pending U.S. patent applications, or other information specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a) are not provided herewith because:
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(d)(1) the information was previously submitted in an Information Disclosure Statement, or cited by examiner for another application under which this application claims priority for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.
- Application in which the information was submitted: _____
- Information Disclosure Statement(s) filed on: _____
- AND

☐ The information disclosure statement submitted in the earlier application complied with paragraphs (a) through (c) of 37 CFR §1.98.

- I. ☒ *Fee Authorization.* The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the above-referenced fees of \$0.00 and charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment associated with this communication to Deposit Account No. 50-1662 (Docket No. 109559-715740).

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: April 21, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

POLSINELLI PC
900 W. 48th Place, Suite 900
Kansas City, MO 64112
Tel: (816) 753-1000
Fax: (816) 753-1536
CUSTOMER NO.: 27148

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	45532345
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	27148
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740
Receipt Date:	21-APR-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	18:20:05
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Non Patent Literature	HENDERSON-PROFOUND-REDUCTION-2016.pdf	6449569	no	6
			5edfd2a16b1327860278d9d4e0809182704eecd8		
Warnings:					

Information:					
2	Non Patent Literature	HERSHMAN_EARLYDiscontinuation_20Sept2010_9pgs_EFS.pdf	5237002	no	9
			825c48db89097c7b30fc389ca0080550b629620		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Non Patent Literature	Ikeda_2011_pp_2038_2042_EFS.pdf	3197594	no	5
			f6ce7c416b1dd1759c28125ad262414922af4e7c		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	INGLE_Variation_15Apr2010_17pgs_EFS.pdf	6194752	no	17
			3bff24a73d1296603ae0b84f03225dde93d7b673		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Non Patent Literature	IPRP_PCTUS2020040757_13Jan2022_9pgs_EFS.pdf	1638222	no	9
			a1ab9efa8a254324df91982dc4f572b897ffa2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Non Patent Literature	IPRP_PCTUS2018050193_26Mar2020_7pgs_EFS.pdf	956879	no	7
			90d30ae59b690d4481efedd8220b4f717fb9d4a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Non Patent Literature	JANSEN_Highmir26a_2012_11pgs_EFS.pdf	6137353	no	11
			2d28d298358f99d4785f3d688773ff7efd5dd71c		
Warnings:					
Information:					
8	Non Patent Literature	JOHNSON-Pharmacological-2004.pdf	3918623	no	9
			af58cb247b326d3579ca81a3a2dc730c3209a356		
Warnings:					
Information:					

9	Non Patent Literature	JOHNSON-Gynecomastia-2011.pdf	1999717	no	4
			1d4604e9508cf4e1b1e0327a87137cdb977f5c31		
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Non Patent Literature	JORDAN-New-2007.pdf	17032568	no	26
			ec8c43337d83432c700c676b9bc6a1123583ee3a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
11	Non Patent Literature	KAMDEM_Oxidative_2010_16pgs_EFS.pdf	9868933	no	16
			8e203965cb9971ec826cb967be13965cf1237eab		
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Non Patent Literature	KARLSSON_Physical_Barriers_Aug2015_4pgs_EFS.pdf	1114732	no	4
			1fe3cc16f9cf62d248bce40f8f7a635f1c3a607a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Non Patent Literature	KAUR_Designsynthesis_30Oct2014_8pgs_EFS.pdf	4585293	no	8
			829249e13f36a44def99492967c80f4e598e6af0		
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Non Patent Literature	KEBAMO_Biotransformation_2015_13pgs_EFS.pdf	8225959	no	13
			1682f17a7fda392a336e5fbbd213d7bfe2a1e1af		
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Non Patent Literature	LANCET_Aromatase_Oct2015_12pgs_EFS.pdf	6925316	no	12
			7084e906fc7dbaffe4d17001c1d874d985e84880		
Warnings:					
Information:					

16	Non Patent Literature	LARI_Biological_2011_30pgs_EFS.pdf	15446125	no	30
			6794a41b033e0254104e491821832c8bcff97bac		
Warnings:					
Information:					
17	Non Patent Literature	LAZZERONI-Oral-2012.pdf	8013144	no	11
			f81370d77a483160875b98166d0c0ae255747059		
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Non Patent Literature	LEE_In_Vitro_Human_Skin_2011_pp_61_70_EFS.pdf	4388582	no	10
			54c568e4d849b2e770ec96ae54fada5334b4ca73		
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	Non Patent Literature	LEE_Local_Transdermal_Therapy_2015_pp_1235_1246_EFS.pdf	5734730	no	12
			77d7e89f716bf6681766fb249dd7d333550286e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
20	Non Patent Literature	LEMAINE_Gynecomastia_Feb2013_6pgs_EFS.pdf	3349040	no	6
			63d704e241d62cd74f9f906f9f792496b183be09		
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	Non Patent Literature	LIBY_Combination_LG100268_Oct2006_9pgs_EFS.pdf	5535038	no	9
			0510d5629de062f73c2ffe97e1767ba8fce39cec		
Warnings:					
Information:					
22	Non Patent Literature	MAH_Miniaturized_Flow_2013_8pgs_EFS.pdf	4262062	no	8
			a917a81e855b14b536229b6e906a25c66450e55d		
Warnings:					
Information:					

23	Non Patent Literature	MAHONEY_Intraductal_Therapy_2013_pp_280_286_EFS.pdf	3014709	no	15
			7d3f1dd18e457de67b6840b27df7b9129b51bc7a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
24	Non Patent Literature	MANNI_Combination_of_Antiestrogens_2015_Pgs10_EFS.pdf	2324443	no	10
			2dc38553b5915023b922c7e6e1d2cf0086e027da		
Warnings:					
Information:					
25	Non Patent Literature	MANSEL_A_Phase_II_Trial_2007_pp_389_397_EFS.pdf	4327196	no	9
			8939df28d493a656e33480eb693e92b9496b8a0d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
26	Non Patent Literature	maximov-structure-function-2010.pdf	776148	no	11
			0e984bd2fc31dddc10c963d415260f5109b52862		
Warnings:					
Information:					
27	Non Patent Literature	MELNIKOW-Preferences-2005.pdf	986695	no	10
			8446ed7f72819560ac2ebe5e556110d828200d5d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
28	Non Patent Literature	MEMORIAL_SLOAN_KETTERING_T_Cell_Therapy_2016_8pgs_EFS.pdf	2092362	no	8
			5737fcd010092790ed64a2966fb795da545d2865		
Warnings:					
Information:					
29	Non Patent Literature	MILLER_Stereospecific_1985_3PGS_EFS.pdf	1257109	no	3
			2593b9770c80909b29d2f0f20e342dc8a1a7a676		
Warnings:					
Information:					

30	Non Patent Literature	Non_Final_OA_US16641985_07Sep2021_13Pgs_EFS.pdf	2964283	no	13
			e1a2afd9d2626a02986c85d86444105e7722161f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
31	Non Patent Literature	NOA_US16641985_17Nov2021_9pgs_EFS.pdf	423146	no	9
			2e55d8c07c7fe7e904b49e48593e0fb4408098dd		
Warnings:					
Information:					
32	Non Patent Literature	ogawa-synthesis-and-1991.pdf	777064	no	6
			b799b56567694a641cd2a923025048c3f561bf1e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
33	Non Patent Literature	PARTRIDGE_Initial_Adjuvant_01Feb2008_7pgs_EFS.pdf	3473927	no	7
			32a3fafc84946456732a759860b2c45facc6d6cf		
Warnings:					
Information:					
34	Non Patent Literature	PARTRIDGE_NonAdherence_Therapy_15Feb2003_5pgs_EFS.pdf	3787018	no	5
			38d87cb1384b2aef104f99795872ab5d9a41cf9e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
35	Non Patent Literature	ROBERTSON_Pharmacokinetics_Pharmacology_2004_4pgs_EFS.pdf	2329362	no	4
			d4ababedc567636dc80e40e9f0a32d7069926b48		
Warnings:					
Information:					
36	Non Patent Literature	ROBERTSON_Advanced_Cancer_2004_10pgs_EFS.pdf	3821453	no	10
			b1d35263f0ef767206c26245882825518368643f		
Warnings:					
Information:					

37	Non Patent Literature	ROUANET-Neoadjuvant-2005.pdf	508404	no	8
			8d8131faebe69663df044b7d43df110fa5163afc		
Warnings:					
Information:					
38	Non Patent Literature	SANO_Synthesis_Coupling_Reaction_2006_5pgs_EFS.pdf	5889563	no	5
			40c3aa012bd4176b27d1cbb374e14e2d0e5c11cc		
Warnings:					
Information:					
39	Non Patent Literature	STEARNS_Preclinical_and_Clinical_Evaluation_2011_19pgs_EFS.pdf	6781487	no	19
			8b54bc76a6d0bae74d3d975960f73678ed33e3ab		
Warnings:					
Information:					
40	Non Patent Literature	UMAREDDY_Improved_Process_2015_6pgs_EFS.pdf	2327871	no	6
			344a541a66d4c1ab13283eb124515a3dd3b1a096		
Warnings:					
Information:					
41	Non Patent Literature	UMAREDDY_Total_Synthesis_2015_5pgs_EFS.pdf	1863078	no	5
			38fad82b0bc38801db208775bdeb48ffde0ab430		
Warnings:					
Information:					
42	Non Patent Literature	VERGOTE_Fulvestrant_Clinical_Trials_2004_4pgs_EFS.pdf	2323034	no	4
			4f3e42526e6e85df52b9f286586e47668301aa98		
Warnings:					
Information:					
43	Non Patent Literature	WELSH_Induction_Cancer_1994_9pgs_EFS.pdf	888413	no	9
			75aaa2ac8107296297c1304e023af2a26dd6aac9		
Warnings:					
Information:					

44	Non Patent Literature	WU_Single_Cell_2013_6pgs_EFS.pdf	4251924	no	6
			d12a6d918d104e440ffa723977efd95662289be1		
Warnings:					
Information:					
45	Non Patent Literature	YAN_YAODONG_Design_and_Development_2006_pp_421_428_EFS.pdf	3481258	no	10
			16ee2a62b638f2982b5c04c895443c1f28d2463a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
46	Non Patent Literature	yang-dendron-based-2014.pdf	469624	no	8
			25ffb8c318b5de9c250902f6727a9fe0dd5793543		
Warnings:					
Information:					
47	Non Patent Literature	YAO_Synthesis_Reactivity_2001_11pgs_EFS.pdf	5892310	no	11
			51bf64ed94356b79c09f2737dac294e2a161e3c5		
Warnings:					
Information:					
48	Non Patent Literature	YONEYA_Thiochroman_Estrogen_2010_6pgs_EFS.pdf	3556299	no	6
			c416d7e0ff24c4bb0da922d4a984fbd0b222e1df		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			200799413		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

PCTNOTIFICATION CONCERNING
TRANSMITTAL OF COPY OF INTERNATIONAL
PRELIMINARY REPORT ON PATENTABILITY
(CHAPTER I OF THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY)

(PCT Rule 44bis.1(c))

To:

HARWOOD, Melissa M.
Polsinelli PC
900 W. 48th Place, Suite 900
Kansas City, Missouri 64112
ÉTATS-UNIS D'AMÉRIQUE

Date of mailing (<i>day/month/year</i>) 13 January 2022 (13.01.2022)		
Applicant's or agent's file reference 109559-669846		IMPORTANT NOTICE
International application No. PCT/US2020/040757	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 02 July 2020 (02.07.2020)	
Priority date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 03 July 2019 (03.07.2019)		
Applicant ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.		

The International Bureau transmits herewith a copy of the international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I of the Patent Cooperation Treaty)

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland	Authorized officer Miki Kobayashi e-mail pct.team8@wipo.int Telephone No. +41 22 338 74 08

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY REPORT ON PATENTABILITY

(Chapter I of the Patent Cooperation Treaty)

(PCT Rule 44bis)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 109559-669846	FOR FURTHER ACTION	See item 4 below
International application No. PCT/US2020/040757	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 02 July 2020 (02.07.2020)	Priority date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 03 July 2019 (03.07.2019)
International Patent Classification (8th edition unless older edition indicated) See relevant information in Form PCT/ISA/237		
Applicant ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.		

1.	This international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I) is issued by the International Bureau on behalf of the International Searching Authority under Rule 44 <i>bis</i> .1(a).																								
2.	This REPORT consists of a total of 8 sheets, including this cover sheet. In the attached sheets, any reference to the written opinion of the International Searching Authority should be read as a reference to the international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I) instead.																								
3.	This report contains indications relating to the following items: <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">☒</td> <td style="width: 35%;">Box No. I</td> <td style="width: 60%;">Basis of the report</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. II</td> <td>Priority</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☒</td> <td>Box No. III</td> <td>Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. IV</td> <td>Lack of unity of invention</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☒</td> <td>Box No. V</td> <td>Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. VI</td> <td>Certain documents cited</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. VII</td> <td>Certain defects in the international application</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. VIII</td> <td>Certain observations on the international application</td> </tr> </table>	☒	Box No. I	Basis of the report	☐	Box No. II	Priority	☒	Box No. III	Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability	☐	Box No. IV	Lack of unity of invention	☒	Box No. V	Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement	☐	Box No. VI	Certain documents cited	☐	Box No. VII	Certain defects in the international application	☐	Box No. VIII	Certain observations on the international application
☒	Box No. I	Basis of the report																							
☐	Box No. II	Priority																							
☒	Box No. III	Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability																							
☐	Box No. IV	Lack of unity of invention																							
☒	Box No. V	Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement																							
☐	Box No. VI	Certain documents cited																							
☐	Box No. VII	Certain defects in the international application																							
☐	Box No. VIII	Certain observations on the international application																							
4.	The International Bureau will communicate this report to designated Offices in accordance with Rules 44bis.3(c) and 93bis.1 but not, except where the applicant makes an express request under Article 23(2), before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date (Rule 44bis .2).																								

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">Date of issuance of this report 28 December 2021 (28.12.2021)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;"> Authorized officer Miki Kobayashi e-mail pct.team8@wipo.int </td> </tr> </table>	Date of issuance of this report 28 December 2021 (28.12.2021)	Authorized officer Miki Kobayashi e-mail pct.team8@wipo.int
Date of issuance of this report 28 December 2021 (28.12.2021)			
Authorized officer Miki Kobayashi e-mail pct.team8@wipo.int			

Form PCT/IB/373 (revised January 2020)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

To: LISA LIPPERT
WILSON SONSINI GOODRICH & ROSATI
650 PAGE MILL ROAD
PALO ALTO, CA 94304

PCT

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

(PCT Rule 43bis.1)

Date of mailing
(day/month/year) **09 OCT 2020**

Applicant's or agent's file reference
38602-764601

FOR FURTHER ACTION

See paragraph 2 below

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

International filing date (day/month/year)

02 July 2020

Priority date (day/month/year)

03 July 2019

International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC

IPC(8) - A61K 31/138; A61P 35/00; C07C 217/18; C07C 217/54 (2020.01)

CPC - A61K 31/138; A61P 35/00; C07C 217/18; C07C 217/54 (2020.08)

Applicant **ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.**

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- ☒ Box No. I Basis of the opinion
- ☐ Box No. II Priority
- ☒ Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- ☐ Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
- ☒ Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- ☐ Box No. VI Certain documents cited
- ☐ Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
- ☐ Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

2. **FURTHER ACTION**

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notified the International Bureau under Rule 66.1bis(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 Facsimile No. 571-273-8300	Date of completion of this opinion 17 September 2020	Authorized officer Blaine R. Copenheaver PCT Helpdesk: 571-272-4300 Telephone No. 571-272-4300

Form PCT/ISA/237 (cover sheet) (revised January 2019)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

Box No. I Basis of this opinion

1. With regard to the **language**, this opinion has been established on the basis of:

- ☒ the international application in the language in which it was filed.
☐ a translation of the international application into _____ which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b)).

2. ☐ This opinion has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43*bis*.1(b)).

3. ☐ With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, this opinion has been established on the basis of a sequence listing:

- a. ☐ forming part of the international application as filed:
☐ in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.
☐ on paper or in the form of an image file.
- b. ☐ furnished together with the international application under PCT Rule 13*ter*.1(a) for the purposes of international search only in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.
- c. ☐ furnished subsequent to the international filing date for the purposes of international search only:
☐ in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file (Rule 13*ter*.1(a)).
☐ on paper or in the form of an image file (Rule 13*ter*.1(b) and Administrative Instructions, Section 713).

4. ☐ In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that forming part of the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.

5. Additional comments:

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been examined in respect of:

- ☐ the entire international application.
- ☒ claims Nos. 4-9, 11-39, 44-47, 55, 57-71

because:

- ☐ the said international application, or the said claims Nos. _____ relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international search (*specify*):

- ☒ the description, claims or drawings (*indicate particular elements below*) or said claims Nos. 4-9, 11-39, 44-47, 55, 57-71 are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

Claims 4-9, 11-39, 44-47, 55, and 57-71 are multiple dependent claims not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

- ☐ the claims, or said claims Nos. _____ are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

- ☒ no international search report has been established for said claims Nos. 4-9, 11-39, 44-47, 55, 57-71

- ☐ a meaningful opinion could not be formed without the sequence listing; the applicant did not, within the prescribed time limit:

- ☐ furnish a sequence listing in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file, and such listing was not available to the International Searching Authority in the form and manner acceptable to it; or the sequence listing furnished did not comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions.
- ☐ furnish a sequence listing on paper or in the form of an image file complying with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions, and such listing was not available to the International Searching Authority in the form and manner acceptable to it; or the sequence listing furnished did not comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions.
- ☐ pay the required late furnishing fee for the furnishing of a sequence listing in response to an invitation under Rule 13ter.1(a) or (b).

- ☐ See Supplemental Box for further details.

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Box No. III) (revised January 2019)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

1. Statement

Novelty (N)	Claims	42, 48, 49	YES
	Claims	1-3, 10, 40, 41, 43, 50-54, 56	NO
Inventive step (IS)	Claims	None	YES
	Claims	1-3, 10, 40-43, 48-54, 56	NO
Industrial applicability (IA)	Claims	1-3, 10, 40-43, 48-54, 56	YES
	Claims	None	NO

2. Citations and explanations:

Claims 1-3, 10, 40, 41, 43, 50-54, and 56 lack novelty under PCT Article 33(2) as being anticipated by WO 2019/051416 to Atossa Genetics Inc. (hereinafter Atossa '416).

Regarding claim 1, Atossa '416 discloses a sustained release composition (Para. [0211], Compositions formulated for oral delivery as disclosed herein, for example, tablets, caplets, and capsules, may be coated with one or more enteric coating agent, control release agent or film forming agent to control or delay disintegration and absorption of the compositions comprising endoxifen or salts thereof in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period of time. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the tablet can be an enteric tablet, the caplet can be an enteric caplet, or the capsule can be an enteric capsule.) comprising a therapeutic agent (Para. [0018], the composition may comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen) and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), and wherein the therapeutic agent has at least two percentage dissolution parameters selected from: a percentage dissolution of less than 20% at 2 hours; a percentage dissolution of less than 40% at 7 hours (Para. [0225], Dissolution of the oral dosage forms disclosed herein is tested by the dissolution tests according to the current methods of USP 711. In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms disclosed herein are protected from the acidic environment of the stomach and do not dissolve for at least 2 hours, at least 3 hours, at least 4 hours, at least 5 hours, 6 hours, at least 7 hours or at least 8 hours., i.e. a percentage dissolution of 0% for at least 8 hours; Para. [0226], less than 10% of (Z)-endoxifen in a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt thereof disclosed herein is released in the stomach after 2 hours after administration); and a percentage dissolution of at least 30% at 12 hours (Para. [0228], at least 50% of endoxifen is released after 8 hours after administration, as tested by a method of USP 711, i.e. at least 50% is released at 8 hours then at least 50% is released at 12 hours; Para. [0219], The present disclosure provides compositions that achieve a maximal plasma level of endoxifen ranging within 2 to 30 hours, within 3 to 20 hours, within 2 to 10 hours or within 4 to 8 hours after administration of the compositions.), as measured at 37 C in simulated gastric fluid at pH 1.2 from hours 0 to 2 (Para. [0455], Enteric-resistant capsules used in the study were designed as delayed release capsules to resist rupture for at least 30 minutes, but typically, for about 2 hours, under gastric conditions and then open fully in intestinal fluid) and in simulated intestinal fluid at pH 6.8 after 2 hours (Paras. [0225];[0228], Dissolution of the oral dosage forms disclosed herein is tested by the dissolution tests according to the current methods of USP 711.; Please See Current Specification, PCT/US2020/040757, Paras. [0371]-[0372], according to USP Procedure Drug Release General Chapter <711> Dissolution ... a dissolution a 1000 mL of 0.05M phosphate buffer pH 6.8 was added while maintaining temperature of the bath at 37 ± 0.5 C.).

Regarding claim 2, Atossa '416 discloses the composition of claim 1, wherein the therapeutic agent has at least three of the percentage dissolution parameters (Paras. [0219];[0225]-[0226];[0228]).

Regarding claim 3, Atossa '416 discloses the composition of claim 1, wherein the therapeutic agent has percentage dissolution of less than 35% at 3 hours (Para. [0225], In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms disclosed herein are protected from the acidic environment of the stomach and do not dissolve for at least 2 hours, at least 3 hours, at least 4 hours, at least 5 hours, 6 hours, at least 7 hours or at least 8 hours. In at least one embodiment, the oral dosage forms do not release endoxifen for at least 6 hours.).

Regarding claim 10, Atossa '416 discloses a sustained release composition (Para. [0211]) comprising: a therapeutic agent (Para. [0018], the composition may comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen), and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), and wherein the sustained release agent is selected from the group consisting of hydroxyalkyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, and hydroxypropyl cellulose (Para. [0212], Examples of control release agent suitable for use include, without limitation ... hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose; Para. [0445], The Vcaps® Plus enteric capsules (Capsugel) are made with gluten free, non-animal self-gelling product hypromellose (methyl and hydroxypropyl mixed ether of cellulose), with low- moisture content that is suitable for moisture-sensitive ingredients such as (Z)-endoxifen.).

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.
Continuation of:

Regarding claim 40, Atossa '416 discloses a sustained release composition (Para. [0211]) comprising a tablet and an enteric coating enclosing the tablet (Para. [0211]). Compositions formulated for oral delivery as disclosed herein, for example, tablets, caplets, and capsules, may be coated with one or more enteric coating agent, control release agent or film forming agent to control or delay disintegration and absorption of the compositions comprising endoxifen or salts thereof in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period of time. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the tablet can be an enteric tablet, the caplet can be an enteric caplet, or the capsule can be an enteric capsule, wherein the tablet comprises: a therapeutic agent (Para. [0018], the composition may comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen); and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), and wherein the enteric coating comprises: a delayed release agent (Para. [0214], For time delay or delayed-release pharmaceutical preparations of oral dosage forms, glyceryl monostearate, glyceryl distearate, and acid-insoluble polymers, for example polymethacrylate pH-sensitive polymer-based coatings can be used, (e.g., as coating material, i.e., enteric coating agents, for enteric coating of capsules, caplets, and tablets); a plasticizer (Para. [0207], Plasticizers may be added to control the softness or pliability of oral dosage forms such as shell of a capsule, caplet or a tablet and thus, may improve the mechanical properties of the pH-sensitive materials of the coatings on the oral dosage forms.); an anti-tacking agent (Para. [0214], For time delay or delayed-release pharmaceutical preparations of oral dosage forms, glyceryl monostearate); or a combination thereof, wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), wherein the sustained release agent is selected from the group consisting of hydroxyalkyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, and hydroxypropyl cellulose (Para. [0212], Examples of control release agent suitable for use include, without limitation ... hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose; Para. [0445], The VCaps® Plus enteric capsules (Capsugel) are made with gluten free, non-animal self- gelling product hypromellose (methyl and hydroxypropyl mixed ether of cellulose), with low- moisture content that is suitable for moisture-sensitive ingredients such as (Z)-endoxifen.).

Regarding claim 41, Atossa '416 discloses a sustained release composition comprising a tablet and an enteric coating enclosing the tablet (Para. [0211]), wherein the tablet comprises a therapeutic agent (Para. [0018], the composition may comprise 0.01 mg to 200 mg of (Z)-endoxifen) and hypromellose (Para. [0200], Binders suitable for use in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, ... hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose), wherein the therapeutic agent comprises at least 90% (Z)-endoxifen (Para. [0144], In some embodiments, the third crystalline solid is $\geq 95\%$ (Z)-endoxifen.; Para. [0180], compositions may comprise endoxifen as at least ... at least 90%, at least 91%, at least 92%, at least 93%, at least 94%, at least 95%, at least 96%, at least 97%, at least 98%, at least 99%, at least 99.5%, at least 99.99%, or 100% of (Z)- endoxifen free base w/wt of total endoxifen in the composition), and wherein the enteric coating comprises a poly(meth)acrylate polymer and triethyl citrate (Para. [0214], For time delay or delayed-release pharmaceutical preparations of oral dosage forms, glyceryl monostearate, glyceryl distearate, and acid-insoluble polymers, for example polymethacrylate pH-sensitive polymer-based coatings can be used, (e.g., as coating material, i.e., enteric coating agents, for enteric coating of capsules, caplets, and tablets); Para. [0207], Plasticizers may be added to control the softness or pliability of oral dosage forms such as shell of a capsule, caplet or a tablet and thus, may improve the mechanical properties of the pH-sensitive materials of the coatings on the oral dosage forms. ... triethyl citrate).

Regarding claim 43, Atossa '416 discloses the composition of claim 41, wherein the tablet comprises at least 20% w/w hypromellose relative to the total tablet weight (Para. [0200], Binders suitable for use in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, ... hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose; Para. [0202], binders and/or fillers in a composition comprise about 15% to 99%, about 20% to 60%, about 25% to 55%, about 30% to 50%, about 35% to 60%, about 50% to 99% (wt/wt) of the composition).

Regarding claim 50, Atossa '416 discloses a method (Abstract, methods for treating hormone-dependent breast and hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder) of administering a sustained release composition comprising to a subject in need thereof (Para. [0038], oral compositions comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof, for administration to a subject in need thereof; Para. [0211]), the method comprising orally administering the sustained release composition to the subject in need thereof (Paras. [0038];[0211]), wherein the sustained release composition comprises a therapeutic agent (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof) and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), and wherein the sustained release composition is formulated such less than 20% of the therapeutic agent dissolves 2 hours after administration (Para. [0225], Dissolution of the oral dosage forms disclosed herein is tested by the dissolution tests according to the current methods of USP 711. In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms disclosed herein are protected from the acidic environment of the stomach and do not dissolve for at least 2 hours, at least 3 hours, at least 4 hours, at least 5 hours, 6 hours, at least 7 hours or at least 8 hours., i.e. a percentage dissolution of 0% for at least 8 hours; Para. [0226], less than 10% of (Z)-endoxifen in a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt thereof disclosed herein is released in the stomach after 2 hours after administration) and at least 30% of the therapeutic agent dissolves within 12 hours after administration (Para. [0228], at least 50% of endoxifen is released after 8 hours after administration, as tested by a method of USP 711, i.e. at least 50% is released at 8 hours then at least 50% is released at 12 hours; Para. [0219], The present disclosure provides compositions that achieve a maximal plasma level of endoxifen ranging within 2 to 30 hours, within 3 to 20 hours, within 2 to 10 hours or within 4 to 8 hours after administration of the compositions.).

Regarding claim 51, Atossa '416 discloses the method of claim 50, wherein the sustained release composition is formulated such less than 40% of the therapeutic agent dissolves 7 hours after administration (Para. [0225], Dissolution of the oral dosage forms disclosed herein is tested by the dissolution tests according to the current methods of USP 711. In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms disclosed herein are protected from the acidic environment of the stomach and do not dissolve for at least 2 hours, at least 3 hours, at least 4 hours, at least 5 hours, 6 hours, at least 7 hours or at least 8 hours., i.e. a percentage dissolution of 0% for at least 8 hours).

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

Continuation of:

Regarding claim 52, Atossa '416 discloses a method (Abstract, methods for treating hormone-dependent breast and hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder) of administering a sustained release composition comprising to a subject in need thereof (Para. [0038], oral compositions comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof, for administration to a subject in need thereof; Para. [0211]), the method comprising orally administering the sustained release composition to the subject in need thereof (Paras. [0038];[0211]), wherein the sustained release composition comprises a therapeutic agent (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof) and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), and wherein the sustained release composition is formulated such less than 20% of the therapeutic agent dissolves in simulated gastric fluid after 2 hours (Para. [0225], Dissolution of the oral dosage forms disclosed herein is tested by the dissolution tests according to the current methods of USP 711. In some embodiments, the oral dosage forms disclosed herein are protected from the acidic environment of the stomach and do not dissolve for at least 2 hours, at least 3 hours, at least 4 hours, at least 5 hours, 6 hours, at least 7 hours or at least 8 hours., i.e. a percentage dissolution of 0% for at least 8 hours in simulated gastric fluid; Para. [0226], less than 10% of (Z)-endoxifen in a composition comprising endoxifen or a salt thereof disclosed herein is released in the stomach after 2 hours after administration) and at least 30% of the therapeutic agent dissolves after 2 hours in simulated gastric fluid followed by 10 hours in simulated intestinal fluid (Para. [0303], the composition releases in stomach: ... c. less than 30% of endoxifen in 2 hours after administration; d. less than 40% of endoxifen in 4 hours after administration; Para. [0313], the composition is formulated to release in small intestine: ... at least 30% of endoxifen after 6 hours after administration; at least 40% of endoxifen after 7 hours after administration; or at least 50% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration).

Regarding claim 53, Atossa '416 discloses the method of claim 52, wherein the sustained release composition is formulated such less than 40% of the therapeutic agent dissolves after 2 hours in simulated gastric fluid followed by 5 hours in simulated intestinal (Para. [0303], the composition releases in stomach: ... c. less than 30% of endoxifen in 2 hours after administration; d. less than 40% of endoxifen in 4 hours after administration; Para. [0313], the composition is formulated to release in small intestine: ... at least 30% of endoxifen after 6 hours after administration; at least 40% of endoxifen after 7 hours after administration; or at least 50% of endoxifen after 8 hours after administration).

Regarding claim 54, Atossa '416 discloses a method (Abstract, methods for treating hormone-dependent breast and hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder) of administering a sustained release composition comprising to a subject in need thereof (Para. [0038], oral compositions comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof, for administration to a subject in need thereof; Para. [0211]), the method comprising orally administering the sustained release composition to the subject in need thereof (Paras. [0038];[0211]), wherein the sustained release composition comprises a therapeutic agent (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof) and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), and wherein the therapeutic agent exhibits a time to maximum observed concentration of at least 8 hours, at least 9 hours, at least 10 hours, at least 15 hours, at least 20 hours, or at least 24 hours in a serum of the subject Para. [0469], Tmax time to maximum concentration; Para. [0471], Table 16, 2.0 to 10.0 hours; Para. [0018], time to maximum plasma levels of endoxifen ranges from 2 hours to 10 hours or from 4 hours to 8 hours after administering the composition).

Regarding claim 56, Atossa '416 discloses a method of treating a subject in need thereof, wherein the subject has a disorder or is at risk of having the disorder (Abstract, methods for treating hormone-dependent breast and hormone-dependent reproductive tract disorder), the method comprising administering to the subject a sustained release composition (Para. [0038], oral compositions comprising 1 mg to 200 mg per unit dose of (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof, for administration to a subject in need thereof; Para. [0211]) comprising: a therapeutic agent (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof) and a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.), wherein the therapeutic agent is (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, or a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)- endoxifen free base or a salt thereof), and wherein the sustained release agent is selected from the group consisting of hydroxyalkyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, and hydroxypropyl cellulose (Para. [0212], Examples of control release agent suitable for use include, without limitation ... hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose; Para. [0445], The VCaps® Plus enteric capsules (Capsugel) are made with gluten free, non-animal self- gelling product hypromellose (methyl and hydroxypropyl mixed ether of cellulose), with low- moisture content that is suitable for moisture-sensitive ingredients such as (Z)-endoxifen.).

Claims 42, 48, and 49 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over WO 2019/051416 to Atossa Genetics Inc. (hereinafter Atossa '416) in view of Haronsky et al. (hereinafter Haronsky).

Regarding claim 42, Atossa '416 discloses the composition of claim 41. Atossa '416 fails to explicitly disclose wherein the enteric coating further comprises talc. Atossa '416 teaches using talc in the composition (Para. [0201], fillers suitable for use in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, talc; Para. [0206], Lubricants that can be used in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, ... talc). Haronsky is in the field of sustained release tablets (Haronsky, Para. [0022], optionally applying a protective top coat, an extended release coat or a delayed release coat over the drug layer; Para. [0084], This further coating may be a protective top coat, or a top coat that provides particular release properties, e.g. a extended-release coat or a delayed-release coat, as appropriate for the drug and dosage form.; Para. [0038]) and teaches wherein the enteric coating further comprises talc (Haronsky, Para. [0090], A suitable delayed release coating may comprise an enteric polymer, a plasticizer and an anti-tacking agent.; Para. [0092], anti-tacking agents can include ... talc). It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify Atossa '416 to create a coating with talc, as taught by Haronsky. The motivation for doing so would have been to create enteric tablets for pH dependent dissolution that do not clump together (Atossa '416, Paras. [0043];[0211];[0213]; Haronsky, Para. [0012]).

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Supplemental Box) (revised January 2019)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US2020/040757

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

Continuation of:

Regarding claim 48, Atossa '416 discloses a method of preparing a sustained release composition (Para. [0211]; Para. [0043], the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet) comprising: combining and mixing (Para. [0079], the term "pharmaceutical composition" means a combination of the active agent (e.g., an active pharmaceutical compound or ingredient, API) with a carrier, inert or active (e.g., a phospholipid), making the compositions; Para. [0199], combinations of various excipients; Para. [0232]): a therapeutic agent selected from a (Z)-endoxifen free base, a polymorph of (Z)-endoxifen, a salt of (Z)-endoxifen, and a combination thereof (Paras. [0018];[0036], a composition comprising (Z)-endoxifen free base or a salt thereof); a sustained release agent (Para. [0212], Pharmaceutical preparations disclosed herein may comprise a control release agent.); a binder (Para. [0200], Binders suitable for use in the pharmaceutical compositions provided herein include, but are not limited to, ... hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose); and a lubricant (Para. [0206], Lubricants that can be used in the pharmaceutical compositions); and to form a tablet (Para. [0043], the composition is formulated as an enteric tablet). Atossa '416 fails to explicitly disclose dry compressing the therapeutic agent, the at least one sustained release agent, the at least one binder, and the at least one lubricant to form a core tablet. Atossa '416 teaches the at least one sustained release agent with the active ingredient (Paras. [0079];[0199]). Haronsky is in the field of sustained release tablets (Haronsky, Para. [0022], optionally applying a protective top coat, an extended release coat or a delayed release coat over the drug layer; Para. [0084], This further coating may be a protective top coat, or a top coat that provides particular release properties, e.g. a extended-release coat or a delayed-release coat, as appropriate for the drug and dosage form.; Para. [0038]) and teaches dry compressing the therapeutic agent, the at least one binder, and the at least one lubricant to form a core tablet (Haronsky, Para. [0038], pharmaceutically acceptable organic acids, and especially tartaric acid, can be compressed into tablets having small dimensions (i.e. so-called "minitabets") by the inclusion of low concentrations of at least one pharmaceutically acceptable excipient selected from the group consisting of a filler (diluent) and binder, and optionally a lubricant; Para. [0109], L-tartaric acid and microcrystalline cellulose were combined into a blend using a diffusion blender for 5 min. The mixture obtained was then blended with magnesium stearate for additional 3 min. The final mixture was compressed into 1.8 mm tablets (i.e. cylindrical cores wherein the circular cross section is 1.8 mm in diameter) by a rotary tablet press.). It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify Atossa '416 to create a compressed tablet, as taught by Haronsky. The motivation for doing so would have been to create an enteric tablet for pH dependent dissolution (Atossa '416, Paras. [0043];[0211];[0213]; Haronsky, Para. [0012]).

Regarding claim 49, modified Atossa '416 discloses the method of claim 48. Atossa '416 fails to explicitly disclose further comprising: combining and mixing: at least one delayed release agent; at least one plasticizer; and at least one anti-tacking component or anti-adherent component, thereby forming a coating solution; and substantially coating the core tablet with the coating solution, thereby forming a functional coating. Haronsky teaches further comprising: combining and mixing: at least one delayed release agent; at least one plasticizer; and at least one anti-tacking component or anti-adherent component (Haronsky, Para. [0087], As to extended-release coating, this may comprise an extended-release polymer, a binder, and a plasticizer.; Para. [0090], A suitable delayed release coating may comprise an enteric polymer, a plasticizer and an anti-tacking agent.; Para. [0091], Suitable enteric polymers include methacrylate copolymers), thereby forming a coating solution; and substantially coating the core tablet with the coating solution, thereby forming a functional coating (Haronsky, Para. [0094], The top coat, extended release coat and the delayed release coat can be applied by the coating procedures; Para. [0083], mixed together in, e.g. C.sub.1-3 alcohols such as ethanol, isopropanol, or mixtures thereof, and optionally in combinations of the alcohol with purified water, to form a coating solution, which can be applied by the various coating methods; Para. [0071], any coating procedure, including by fluid-bed coater, by pan-coating or by spray coating; Paras. [0087];[0090]). It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the invention to modify Atossa '416 to create a coated compressed tablet, as taught by Haronsky. The motivation for doing so would have been to create an enteric tablet for pH dependent dissolution (Atossa '416, Paras. [0043];[0211];[0213]; Haronsky, Para. [0012]).

Claims 1-3, 10, 40-43, 48-54, and 56 meet the criteria set out in PCT Article 33(4), and thus have industrial applicability because the subject matter claimed can be made or used in industry.

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

PCT

NOTIFICATION CONCERNING
TRANSMITTAL OF COPY OF INTERNATIONAL
PRELIMINARY REPORT ON PATENTABILITY
(CHAPTER I OF THE PATENT COOPERATION
TREATY)
(PCT Rule 44bis.1(c))

To:

ZHENG, Juan
Christensen O'Connor Johnson Kindness PLLC
1201 Third Avenue, Suite 3600
Seattle, Washington 98101
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

Date of mailing (<i>day/month/year</i>) 26 March 2020 (26.03.2020)		
Applicant's or agent's file reference ATGI167262		IMPORTANT NOTICE
International application No. PCT/US2018/050193	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 10 September 2018 (10.09.2018)	
Priority date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 11 September 2017 (11.09.2017)		
Applicant ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.		

The International Bureau transmits herewith a copy of the international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I of the Patent Cooperation Treaty)

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland	Authorized officer Sun Hwa Lee
Facsimile No. +41 22 338 82 70	e-mail: pct.team1@wipo.int

Form PCT/IB/326 (January 2004)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY REPORT ON PATENTABILITY (Chapter I of the Patent Cooperation Treaty)

(PCT Rule 44bis)

Applicant's or agent's file reference ATGI167262	FOR FURTHER ACTION		See item 4 below
International application No. PCT/US2018/050193	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 10 September 2018 (10.09.2018)	Priority date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 11 September 2017 (11.09.2017)	
International Patent Classification (8th edition unless older edition indicated) See relevant information in Form PCT/ISA/237			
Applicant ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.			

1.	This international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I) is issued by the International Bureau on behalf of the International Searching Authority under Rule 44 bis.1(a).																								
2.	This REPORT consists of a total of 6 sheets, including this cover sheet. In the attached sheets, any reference to the written opinion of the International Searching Authority should be read as a reference to the international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I) instead.																								
3.	This report contains indications relating to the following items: <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">☒</td> <td style="width: 30%;">Box No. I</td> <td style="width: 65%;">Basis of the report</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. II</td> <td>Priority</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☒</td> <td>Box No. III</td> <td>Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. IV</td> <td>Lack of unity of invention</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☒</td> <td>Box No. V</td> <td>Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. VI</td> <td>Certain documents cited</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☐</td> <td>Box No. VII</td> <td>Certain defects in the international application</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">☒</td> <td>Box No. VIII</td> <td>Certain observations on the international application</td> </tr> </table>	☒	Box No. I	Basis of the report	☐	Box No. II	Priority	☒	Box No. III	Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability	☐	Box No. IV	Lack of unity of invention	☒	Box No. V	Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement	☐	Box No. VI	Certain documents cited	☐	Box No. VII	Certain defects in the international application	☒	Box No. VIII	Certain observations on the international application
☒	Box No. I	Basis of the report																							
☐	Box No. II	Priority																							
☒	Box No. III	Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability																							
☐	Box No. IV	Lack of unity of invention																							
☒	Box No. V	Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement																							
☐	Box No. VI	Certain documents cited																							
☐	Box No. VII	Certain defects in the international application																							
☒	Box No. VIII	Certain observations on the international application																							
4.	The International Bureau will communicate this report to designated Offices in accordance with Rules 44bis.3(c) and 93bis.1 but not, except where the applicant makes an express request under Article 23(2), before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date (Rule 44bis .2).																								

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No. +41 22 338 82 70	Date of issuance of this report 17 March 2020 (17.03.2020) Authorized officer Sun Hwa Lee e-mail: pct.team1@wipo.int

Form PCT/IB/373 (January 2004)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

To: JUAN ZHENG
CHRISTENSEN O'CONNOR JOHNSON
KINDNESS PLLC
1201 THIRD AVENUE, SUITE 3600
SEATTLE, WA 98101

PCT

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

(PCT Rule 43bis.1)

Date of mailing
(day/month/year)

04 JAN 2019

Applicant's or agent's file reference
ATGI167262

FOR FURTHER ACTION

See paragraph 2 below

International application No.

PCT/US 18/50193

International filing date (day/month/year)

10 September 2018 (10.09.2018)

Priority date (day/month/year)

11 September 2017 (11.09.2017)

International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC

IPC(8) - A61K 31/138; A61K 9/00 (2018.01)

CPC - A61K 31/138; A61K 9/0034; A61K 9/0036; A61K 9/02; A61K 9/2018

Applicant ATOSSA GENETICS INC.

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- ☒ Box No. I Basis of the opinion
- ☐ Box No. II Priority
- ☒ Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- ☐ Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
- ☒ Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- ☐ Box No. VI Certain documents cited
- ☐ Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
- ☒ Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

2. FURTHER ACTION

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notified the International Bureau under Rule 66.1bis(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
Facsimile No. 571-273-8300

Date of completion of this opinion

12 December 2018

Authorized officer

Lee W. Young

PCT Helpdesk: 571-272-4300
PCT OSP: 571-272-7774

Form PCT/ISA/237 (cover sheet) (January 2015)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US 18/50193

Box No. I Basis of this opinion

1. With regard to the **language**, this opinion has been established on the basis of:
 - ☒ the international application in the language in which it was filed.
 - ☐ a translation of the international application into _____ which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b)).
2. ☐ This opinion has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43*bis*.1(a)).
3. ☐ With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, this opinion has been established on the basis of a sequence listing:
 - a. ☐ forming part of the international application as filed:
 - ☐ in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.
 - ☐ on paper or in the form of an image file.
 - b. ☐ furnished together with the international application under PCT Rule 13*ter*.1(a) for the purposes of international search only in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.
 - c. ☐ furnished subsequent to the international filing date for the purposes of international search only:
 - ☐ in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file (Rule 13*ter*.1(a)).
 - ☐ on paper or in the form of an image file (Rule 13*ter*.1(b) and Administrative Instructions, Section 713).
4. ☐ In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that forming part of the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.
5. Additional comments:

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US 18/50193

Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability

The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been examined in respect of:

☐ the entire international application.

☒ claims Nos. 5-26, 30

because:

☐ the said international application, or the said claims Nos. _____ relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international search (*specify*):

☒ the description, claims or drawings (*indicate particular elements below*) or said claims Nos. 5-26, 30 are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

☐ the claims, or said claims Nos. _____ are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

☒ no international search report has been established for said claims Nos. 5-26, 30

☐ a meaningful opinion could not be formed without the sequence listing; the applicant did not, within the prescribed time limit:

☐ furnish a sequence listing in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file, and such listing was not available to the International Searching Authority in the form and manner acceptable to it; or the sequence listing furnished did not comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions.

☐ furnish a sequence listing on paper or in the form of an image file complying with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions, and such listing was not available to the International Searching Authority in the form and manner acceptable to it; or the sequence listing furnished did not comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions.

☐ pay the required late furnishing fee for the furnishing of a sequence listing in response to an invitation under Rule 13ter.1(a) or (b).

☐ See Supplemental Box for further details.

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Box No. III) (January 2015)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US 18/50193

Box No. V	Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement		
1. Statement			
Novelty (N)	Claims	<u>2, 4/2</u>	YES
	Claims	<u>1, 3, 4/(1, 3), 27-29</u>	NO
Inventive step (IS)	Claims	<u>NONE</u>	YES
	Claims	<u>1-4, 27-29</u>	NO
Industrial applicability (IA)	Claims	<u>1-4, 27-29</u>	YES
	Claims	<u>NONE</u>	NO
2. Citations and explanations:			
Claims 1, 3 and 4/(1, 3) lack novelty under PCT Article 33(2) as being anticipated by US 4,851,433 A to Kraus. Regarding Claim 1, Kraus discloses a topical composition (col 3, In 42-44: typical cream formulations for topical use) for administration to a subject (col 1, In 39-41) in need thereof, the composition comprising: a. tamoxifen and salts thereof (col 2, In 66-67: topical administration contains tamoxifen D-gluconate; col 4, In 20: active ingredient); b. a first compound which is stearic acid (col 4, In 20-25); and c. a second compound which is cetyl alcohol (col 4, In 20-25); and wherein the first compound and second compound are different, and each is selected from the group consisting of cetyl alcohol and stearic acid (col 4, In 20-25). Regarding Claim 3, Kraus discloses the topical composition of Claim 1 (col 3, In 42-44), wherein the first compound comprises DMSO (col 4, In 58-59: The above formulations may optionally contain 0.5 to 5.0% of a penetration enhancer such as dimethylsulphoxide), wherein the second compound comprises a permeation enhancer which is cetyl alcohol/stearic acid (col 4, In 20-25). Regarding Claim 4/(1, 3), Kraus discloses the topical composition of Claims 1 and 3 (as disclosed above), and further discloses wherein the total concentration of the first compound and the second compound is up to about 5% w/w of the topical composition (col 4, In 20-25: Cetyl alcohol 2.5; Stearic acid 1.5; col 4, In 58-59: The above formulations may optionally contain 0.5 to 5.0% of a penetration enhancer such as dimethylsulphoxide). Claims 27-29 lack novelty under PCT Article 33(2) as being anticipated by WO 2016/168021 A1 to ATOSSA GENETICS, INC (hereinafter Atossa). Regarding Claim 27, Atossa discloses a kit (para [0305]) for treatment or prevention of hormone-dependent breast disorder (para [0080]: the compositions disclosed herein may be used to treat breast disorders... ER-positive (ER+) breast cancer, ER- negative (ER-) breast cancer, HER2+ breast cancer), in a subject in need thereof comprising: (a) a composition comprising at least one active agent which is N-desmethyl-tamoxifen (para [0189]: desmethyltamoxifen); (b) a sealed container for housing the composition (para [0313]: closed container containing a composition); and c) instructions for use of the composition (para [0305]: instructions). Regarding Claim 28, Atossa discloses the kit of Claim 27 (para [0305]), wherein the kit further comprises a means for administering the composition (para [0310]: delivering the pharmaceutical compositions). Regarding Claim 29, Atossa discloses the kit of Claims 27-28, as disclosed above, and further discloses wherein the kit further comprises a second therapeutic agent which is trastuzumab (para [0084]: the compositions may comprise an additional medication such as a cytotoxic agent such as trastuzumab; claim 37: wherein the at least one additional medication is trastuzumab). Claims 2 and 4/2 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Kraus in view of US 2008/0138391 A1 to Carrara et al. (hereinafter Carrara). Regarding Claim 2, Kraus discloses the topical composition of Claim 1 col 3, (In 42-44), wherein the second compound comprises a permeation enhancer which is DMSO (col 4, In 58-59: The above formulations may optionally contain 0.5 to 5.0% of a penetration enhancer such as dimethylsulphoxide), but does not disclose wherein the first compound comprises diethyleneglycol monoethyl ether. However, Carrara discloses similar topical compositions (para [0072]: topically transdermally or transmucosally administered) for various pharmaceutical agents including tamoxifen (para [0066]: tamoxifen); and various penetration enhancers such as diethyleneglycol monoethyl ether (para [0078]: Compounds that have been used to enhance skin permeability include... diethylene glycol monoethyl ether). It would have been obvious to one with skill in the art to utilize the composition disclosed by Kraus utilizing various permeation enhancers utilized in similar topical compositions comprising the same active agent in order to optimize bioavailability of said active agent. Regarding Claim 4/2, Kraus in view of Carrara discloses the topical composition of Claim 2 (col 3, In 42-44), but does not disclose wherein the total concentration of the first compound and the second compound is up to about 5% w/w of the topical composition. It would have been obvious to one with skill in the art to utilize the disclosed composition utilizing various amount of permeation enhancer compounds, such as up to 5% w/w, in order to optimize bioavailability of the disclosed active agent. Claims 1-4 and 27-29 have industrial applicability as defined by PCT Article 33(4) because the subject matter can be made or used in industry.			

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Box No. V) (January 2015)

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.

PCT/US 18/50193

Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:

Claim 27 lacks clarity regarding "In some embodiments, the topical composition comprises 0.01% to 20% (w/w) of the at least one active agent or a salt or a solvate thereof..."; for the purpose of this ISR, claim 27 is assumed to be wherein "optionally, the topical composition comprises 0.01% to 20% (w/w) of the at least one active agent or a salt or a solvate thereof..."

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 1 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	001	US-3848030	11-12-1974	VITERBO; R. et al.	
	002	US-4851433	07-25-1989	KRAUS; Hans A.	
	003	US-6774122	08-10-2004	EVANS; John R. et al.	
	004	US-7384418	06-10-2008	HUNG; David et al.	
	005	US-7485623	02-03-2009	BUA; Jay	
	006	US-7507769	03-24-2009	NESTOUR; Elisabeth Le	
	007	US-7531578	05-12-2009	FORMAN; Barry et al.	
	008	US-7704516	04-27-2010	DROUIN et al.	
	009	US-7705159	04-27-2010	MACDONALD; Peter Lindsay et al.	
	010	US-7786172	08-31-2010	DE; Lignieres et al.	
	011	US-7968532	06-28-2011	LE; Nestour et al.	
	012	US-8048927	11-01-2011	LE NESTOUR; Elisabeth	
	013	US-8058302	11-15-2011	SOLANKI; Kirtipalsinh Sajjansinh et al.	
	014	US-8063249	11-22-2011	KUSHNER et al.	
	015	US-8119695	02-21-2012	FORMAN; Barry et al.	
	016	US-8329680	12-11-2012	EVANS; John R. et al.	
	017	US-8436029	05-07-2013	HICKEY; Magali Bourghol et al.	
	018	US-8454945	06-04-2013	MCCOOK; John Patrick et al.	
	019	US-8466139	06-18-2013	EVANS; John R. et al.	
	020	US-8822511	09-02-2014	COMBS; Andrew P. et al.	
	021	US-8993605	03-31-2015	COMBS; Andrew P. et al.	
	022	US-9073875	07-07-2015	BOYALL; Dean et al.	
	023	US-9090640	07-28-2015	BIERBACH et al.	
	024	US-9200045	12-01-2015	LIU et al.	

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

Sheet 2 of 15

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	025	US-9220680	12-29-2015	PERUMAL et al.	
	026	US-9308181	04-12-2016	KISAK; Edward T. et al.	
	027	US-9333190	05-10-2016	AHMAD et al.	
	028	US-20020025543	02-28-2002	SERRERO; Ginette	
	029	US-20030021787	01-30-2003	HUNG; David et al.	
	030	US-20030099694	05-29-2003	CEVC; Gregor et al.	
	031	US-20040092894	05-13-2004	HUNG; David et al.	
	032	US-20070161063	07-12-2007	LOVE; Susan et al.	
	033	US-20070190019	08-16-2007	GUO; Chunfeng et al.	
	034	US-20080138391	06-12-2008	CARRARA; Dario Norberto et al.	
	035	US-20080319092	12-25-2008	SINGH; Jagat	
	036	US-20090068190	03-12-2009	BORTZ; Jonathan David	
	037	US-20090098069	04-16-2009	VACCA; Rita Downard	
	038	US-20090208944	08-20-2009	GOETZ; Matthew P. et al.	
	039	US-20090281063	11-12-2009	INAGI; Toshio et al.	
	040	US-20090291102	11-26-2009	FORTIN; Samuel	
	041	US-20090291134	11-26-2009	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	042	US-20100015195	01-21-2010	JAIN; Rajesh et al.	
	043	US-20100015200	01-21-2010	McCLAIN; James B. et al.	
	044	US-20100069781	03-18-2010	JOHANSEN; Jerald A. et al.	
	045	US-20100098659	04-22-2010	WATSON; Richard L. et al.	
	046	US-20100112041	05-06-2010	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	047	US-20120010245	01-12-2012	MASINI-ETEVE; Valerie	
	048	US-20120149761	06-14-2012	QUAY; Steven C.	
	049	US-20120164075	06-28-2012	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	050	US-20120301541	11-29-2012	HARONSKY; Elina et al.	

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 3 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	051	US-20130046171	02-21-2013	JOHANSEN; Jerald A. et al.	
	052	US-20130177590	07-11-2013	COMBS; Andrew P. et al.	
	053	US-20130197087	08-01-2013	SCHLOTZER; Ewald et al.	
	054	US-20140088059	03-27-2014	PERUMAL; Omathanu P. et al.	
	055	US-20140193334	07-10-2014	BIERBACH; Ulrich et al.	
	056	US-20140199391	07-17-2014	BIRBARA; Philip J.	
	057	US-20150080339	03-19-2015	WANG; Guangdi et al.	
	058	US-20150132388	05-14-2015	ANGI; Erzsebet Reka et al.	
	059	US-20150141391	05-21-2015	CHINNAIYAN; Arul M. et al.	
	060	US-20150250802	09-10-2015	LABRIE; Fernand et al.	
	061	US-20160346230	12-01-2016	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	062	US-20160375234	12-29-2016	STEVEN; C. Quay	
	063	US-20170145515	05-25-2017	CHEN; Shu-Chih et al.	
	064	US-20180049999	02-22-2018	QUAY; Steven C.	
	065	US-20180200206	07-19-2018	QUAY; Steven C.	
	066	US-20200207704	07-02-2020	QUAY; Steven C. et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	CN-104203961-A	12-10-2014	XAVIER UNIVERSITY.		☒
	002	CN-104230723-B	08-24-2016	ASYMCHEM LAB TIANJIN CO LTD.		☒

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 4 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ² Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	003	CN-104352504-A	02-18-2015	ENDORECH INC.		☒
	004	EP-1709062-B9	02-13-2013	CEDARBURG PHARMACEUTICA LS INC [US]		☐
	005	EP-2350111-A1	08-03-2011	SYNTHON BV [NL]		☐
	006	EP-3202420-A1	08-09-2017	BESINS HEALTHCARE LU SARL [LU]		☐
	007	EP-3202420-B1	03-04-2020	BESINS HEALTHCARE LU SARL [LU]		☐
	008	WO-0064416-A3	03-08-2001	LILLY CO ELI [US], et al.		☐
	009	WO-0174366-A1	10-11-2001	ASTRAZENECA AB [SE], et al.		☐
	010	WO-2008070463-A2	06-12-2008	JINA PHARMACEUTICA LS INC [US], et al.		☐
	011	WO-2008070463-A9	09-18-2008	JINA PHARMACEUTICA LS INC [US], et al.		☐
	012	WO-2009032699-A1	03-12-2009	DRUGTECH CORP [US], et al.		☐
	013	WO-2009069140-A1	06-04-2009	DABUR PHARMA LTD [IN], et al.		☐
	014	WO-2009120999-A2	10-01-2009	OLEMA PHARMACEUTICA LS INC [US], et al.		☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 5 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ² Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	015	WO-2009120999-A3	12-30-2009	OLEMA PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US], et al.		☐
	016	WO-2010066810-A1	06-17-2010	BESINS HEALTHCARE [BE], et al.		☐
	017	WO-2011072244-A1	06-16-2011	SINAI SCHOOL MEDICINE [US], et al.		☐
	018	WO-2012050263-A1	04-19-2012	CJ CHEILJEDANG CORP [KR], et al.		☐
	019	WO-2013050280-A1	04-11-2013	COMMISSARIAT ENERGIE ATOMIQUE [FR]		☐
	020	WO-2013134230-A1	09-12-2013	XAVIER UNIVERSITY [US]		☐
	021	WO-2014060640-A8	05-07-2015	FERMION OY [FI]		☐
	022	WO-2014141292-A2	09-18-2014	INTAS PHARMACEUTICALS LTD [IN]		☐
	023	WO-2015106094-A1	07-16-2015	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	024	WO-2015138340-A1	09-17-2015	REPROS THERAPEUTICS INC [US]		☐
	025	WO-2015187727-A2	12-10-2015	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	026	WO-2016168021-A1	10-20-2016	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1629
				Examiner Name	-To be assigned
				Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
Sheet	6	of	15		

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ² Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	027	WO-2017011623-A1	01-19-2017	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	028	WO-2017070651-A1	04-27-2017	US HEALTH [US], et al.		☐
	029	WO-2017080770-A1	05-18-2017	ROBERT BOSCH GES FÜR MEDIZINISCHE FORSCHUNG MBH [DE]		☒
	030	WO-2019051368-A1	03-14-2019	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	031	WO-2019051416-A1	03-14-2019	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

7

of

15

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	AHAMAD A., et al., "Endoxifen, A New Cornerstone of Breast Cancer Therapy: Demonstration of Safety, Tolerability and Systemic Bioavailability in Healthy Human Subjects," Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics, December 2010, Vol. 88 (6), pp. 814-817.	☐
	002	AHMAD A., et al., "Endoxifen, A New Treatment Option for Mania: A Double-Blind, Active-Controlled Trial Demonstrates the Antimanic Efficacy of Endoxifen," Clinical and Translational Science, Vol. 9 (5), October 2016, pp. 252-259.	☐
	003	AHMAD A., et al., "Endoxifen for Breast Cancer: Multiple Dose, Dose Escalation Study Characterizing Pharmacokinetics and Safety in Metastatic Breast Cancer Patients," Journal of Clinical Oncology, Vol. 30 (15), 20 May 2012, Abstract 3089, 3 pages.	☐
	004	AHMAD A., et al., "Orally Administered Endoxifen is a New Therapeutic Agent for Breast Cancer," Breast Cancer Research Treatment, Vol. 122 (2), July 2010, pp. 579-584.	☐
	005	AYDINER, et al., "Meta-Analysis of Trials Comparing Anastrozole and Tamoxifen for Adjuvant Treatment of Postmenopausal Women with Early Breast Cancer," Trials, Vol. 9 (47), 29 July 2008, pp. 1-9.	☐
	006	BAO, et al., "The Clinical Pharmacology of Anastrozole," European Oncology and Hematology, Vol. 7 (2), 2011, pp. 106-108.	☐
	007	BATH, et al., "An Improved Synthesis of Raloxifene Hydrochloride: A Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulator," Heteroletters, Vol. 4 (4), 2014, pp. 515-518.	☐
	008	BERNHARD H., et al., "Adoptive Transfer of Autologous, HER2-Specific, Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes for the Treatment of HER2-Overexpressing Breast Cancer," Cancer Immunology, Immunotherapy, 2008, Vol. 57, pp. 271-280.	☐
	009	CHANG M., "Tamoxifen Resistance in Breast Cancer," Biomolecules Therapeutics, May 2012, Vol. 20 (3), pp. 256-267.	☐
	010	Clinical Trials Government, Identifier No. NCT01273168, "Endoxifen in Adults With Hormone Receptor Positive Solid Tumors," 10 January 2011, 10 pages.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 8 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	011	Clinical Trials Government, Identifier No. NCT02311933, "Tamoxifen Citrate or Z-Endoxifen Hydrochloride in Treating Patients With Locally Advanced or Metastatic, Estrogen Receptor-Positive, HER2-Negative Breast Cancer," 9 December 2014, 13 pages.	☐
	012	DAVISON, et al., "In Vitro Effects on MCF-7 Breast Cancer Cells of Signal Transduction Inhibitor/Tamoxifen/ Eicosapentaenoic Acid Combinations and their Simultaneous Delivery Across Skin," Pharmaceutical Research, Vol. 25, 2008, pp.2516-2525.	☐
	013	DICKSCHEN K., et al., "Physiologically Based Pharmacokinetic Modeling of Tamoxifen and its Metabolites in Women of Different CYP2D6 Phenotypes Provides New Insight into the Tamoxifen Mass Balance," Frontiers in Pharmacology, Vol.3 (92), May 2012, 15 pages, www.frontiersin.org.	☐
	014	DONNEYONG M.M., et al., "Risk of Mortality with Concomitant use of Tamoxifen and Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors: Multi-Database Cohort Study," BMJ, 30 September 2016, Vol. 354 (i5014), 20 pages.	☐
	015	DOWSETT, et al., "The Effect of Anastrozole on the Pharmacokinetics of Tamoxifen in Post-Menopausal Women with Early Breast Cancer," British Journal of Cancer, Vol. 79 (2), 1999, pp. 311-315.	☐
	016	Extended European Search Report for European Application No. EP18853361.6, dated May 28, 2021, 5 pages.	☐
	017	FAUQ A.H., et al., "A Convenient Synthesis of (Z)-4-Hydroxy-N-Desmethyltamoxifen (Endoxifen)," Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters, Vol. 20 (10), 2010, pp. 3036-3038.	☐
	018	Final Rejection for U.S. Application No. 16/641,985, mailed October 26, 2021, 9 pages.	☐
	019	FORBES, et al., "Anastrozole Versus Tamoxifen for the Prevention of Locoregional and Contralateral Breast Cancer in Postmenopausal Women with Locally Excised Ductal Carcinoma in Situ (IBIS-II DCIS): A Double-Blind," Randomised Controlled trial Lancet, Vol. 387, 2016, pp. 866-873.	☐
	020	FOREFRONT., "Endoxifen Shows Promise As Breast Cancer Treatment", Mayo Clinic Cancer Center's Online Magazine, Vol. 3, Issue 1, 2014, 3 pages.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 9 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	021	GALEANA P.C., et al., "Ki67 Changes Identify Worse Outcomes in Residual Breast Cancer Tumors After Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy," The Oncologist, Vol. 23 (6), June 2018, pp. 670-678.	☐
	022	GAUTHIER S., et al., "New Highly Stereoselective Synthesis of (Z)-4-Hydroxytamoxifen and (Z)-4-Hydroxytoremifene via McMurry Reaction," The Journal of Organic Chemistry, Vol. 61(11), 31 May 1996, pp. 3890-3893.	☐
	023	GELMON, et al., "Targeting Triple-Negative Breast Cancer: Optimizing Therapeutic Outcomes," Annals of Oncology, Vol. 23 (9), September 2012, pp. 2223-2234.	☐
	024	GOETZ M.P., et al., "Abstract PD2-03: Final Results of a First-in-Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen (TAM) Metabolite, Z-Endoxifen Hydrochloride (Z-Endx) in Women with Aromatase Inhibitor (AI) Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer (MBC) (NCT01327781)," San Antonio breast cancer symposium, 8-12 December 2015, 5 pages.	☐
	025	GOETZ M.P., et al., "Final Results of a First in Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen (TAM) Metabolite, Endoxifen Hydrochloride in Women with Aromatase Inhibitor (AI) Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer (MBC) (NCT01327781)," San Antonio Breast Conference, 2015, PD203, 1 page.	☐
	026	GOETZ M.P., et al., "First-in-Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen Metabolite Z-Endoxifen in Women With Endocrine-Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer," DOI: https://ascopubs.org/doi/10.1200/JCO.2017.73.3246 , Vol. 35, No. 30, October 20, 2017, 16 pages.	☐
	027	HAWSE J.R., et al., "Endoxifen's Molecular Mechanisms of Action are Concentration Dependent and Different than that of other Anti-Estrogens," PLOS one, Vol. 8 (1), Januray 2013, e54613, 18 pages.	☐
	028	HENDERSON S.L., et al., "Profound Reduction in Tamoxifen Active Metabolite Endoxifen in a Breast Cancer Patient Treated with Rifampin Prior to Initiation of an Anti-TNF a Biologic for Ulcerative Colitis: a Case Report," BMC cancer, Vol. 16 (304), 11 May 2016, 6 pages.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

Sheet 10 of 15

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	029	HERSHMAN, et al., "Early Discontinuation and Non-adherence to Adjuvant Hormonal Therapy in a Cohort of 8,769 early Stage Breast Cancer Patients," Journal of Clinical Oncology, Vol. 26(27), 20 September 2010.	☐
	030	IKEDA H., et al., "Combination Treatment with Fulvestrant and various Cytotoxic Agents (Doxorubicin, Paclitaxel, Docetaxel, Vinorelbine, and 5-Fluorouracil) has a Synergistic Effect in Estrogen Receptor-Positive Breast Cancer," Cancer Science, Vol. 102 (11), November 2011, pp. 2038-2042, 5 Pages.	☐
	031	INGLE, et al., "Variation in Anastrozole Metabolism and Pharmacodynamics in Women with Early Breast Cancer," Cancer Research, Vol. 70 (8), 15 April 2010, pp. 3278-3286.	☐
	032	International Preliminary Report on Patentability for the application no. PCT/US2020/040757, mailed 13 January 2022, 9 pages.	☐
	033	International Report on Patentability for International Application no. PCT/US2018/050193, mailed March 26, 2020, 7 pages.	☐
	034	JANSEN, et al., "High miR-26a and Low CDC2 Levels Associate with Decreased EZH2 Expression and with Favorable Putcome on Tamoxifen in Metastatic Breast Cancer," Breast Cancer Research Treatment, Vol. 133, 2012, pp. 937-947.	☐
	035	JOHNSON M.D., et al., "Pharmacological Characterization of 4-Hydroxy-N-Desmethyl Tamoxifen, A Novel Active Metabolite of Tamoxifen," Breast Cancer Research and Treatment, Vol. 85, 2004, pp. 151-159.	☐
	036	JOHNSON R.E., et al., "Gynecomastia - Evaluation and Current Treatment Options," Therapeutics and Clinical Risk Management, Vol. 7, 2011, pp. 145-148.	☐
	037	JORDAN V.C., "New Insights into the Metabolism of Tamoxifen and its Role in the Treatment and Prevention of Breast Cancer," Steroids, Vol. 72 (13), November 2007, pp. 829-842.	☐
	038	KAMDEM, et al., "In Vitro and in Vivo Oxidative Metabolism and Glucuronidation of Anastrozole," British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology, Vol. 70 (6), 2010, pp. 854-869.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 11 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	039	KARLSSON H., et al., "CAR T-Cell Therapy: The Role of Physical Barriers and Immunosuppression in Lymphoma," Gene Ther, August 2015, Vol. 26(8), https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26230974/ , pp. 498-505.	☐
	040	KAUR, et al., "Design, Synthesis and Evaluation of Ospemifene Analogs as Anti-Breast Cancer Agents," European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, Vol. 86, 30 October 2014, pp. 211-218.	☐
	041	KEBAMO., et al., "The Role of Biotransformation in Drug Discovery and Development," Journal of Drug Metabolism and Toxicology, Vol. 6 (5), 2015, pp. 1-13.	☐
	042	LANCET, "Aromatase Inhibitors Versus Tamoxifen in Early Breast Cancer: Patient-Level Meta-Analysis of the Randomised Trials," Vol. 386, 2015, pp. 1341-1352.	☐
	043	LARI, et al., "Biological Markers in DCIS and Risk of Breast Recurrence: A Systematic Review," Journal of Cancer, Vol. 2, 2011, pp. 232- 261.	☐
	044	LAZZERONI M., et al., "Oral Low Dose and Topical Tamoxifen for Breast Cancer Prevention: Modern Approaches for an Old Drug," Breast Cancer Research, Vol. 14(214), 2012, 11 pages.	☐
	045	LEE O., et al., "In Vitro Human Skin Permeation of Endoxifen: Potential for Local Transdermal Therapy for Primary Prevention and Carcinoma in Situ of the Breast," Breast Cancer: Targets and Therapy, Vol. 3, 2011, pp. 61-70.	☐
	046	LEE O., et al., "Local Transdermal Therapy to the Breast for Breast Cancer Prevention and DCIS Therapy: Preclinical and Clinical Evaluation," Cancer Chemother Pharmacol, Vol. 76(6), December 2015, pp. 1235-1246.	☐
	047	LEMAINE, et al., "Gynecomastia in Adolescent Males," Seminars Plastic Surgery, Vol. 27 (1), Febraury 2013, pp. 56-61.	☐
	048	LIBY, et al., "The Combination of the Rexinoid, LG100268, and a Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulator, Either Arzoxifene or A colbifene, Synergizes in the Prevent and Treatment of Mammary Tumors in an Estrogen Receptor-Negative Model of Breast Cancer," Clinical Cancer Research, Vol. 12 (19), October 2006, pp. 5902-5909.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

12

of

15

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	049	MAH, et al., "A Miniaturized Flow-through Cell to Evaluate Skin Permeation of Endoxifen," International Journal of pharmaceutics, Vol. 441, 2013, pp. 433-440.	☐
	050	MAHONEY M.E., et al., "Intraductal Therapy of Ductal Carcinoma In Situ: A Presurgery Study," Clinical Breast Cancer, August 2013, 13(4), pp. 280-286.	☐
	051	MANNI, et al., "Combination of Antiestrogens and Omega-3 Fatty Acids for Breast Cancer Prevention," Biomed Research International, 1 January 2015, 10 pages.	☐
	052	MANSEL R., et al., "A Phase II Trial of Afimoxifene (4-hydroxyTamoxifen gel) for Cyclical Mastalgia in Premenopausal Women," Breast Cancer Research Treatment, December 2007, Vol. 106 (3), pp. 389-397.	☐
	053	MAXIMOV P.Y., et al., "Structure-Function Relationships of Estrogenic Triphenylethylenes Related to Endoxifen and 4- Hydroxytamoxifen," Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, 22 April 2010, Vol. 53 (8), pp. 3273-3283.	☐
	054	MELNIKOW J., et al., "Preferences of Women Evaluating Risks of Tamoxifen (POWER) study of preferences for Tamoxifen for Breast Cancer Risk Reduction," Cancer, Vol. 103 (10), 15 May 2005, pp. 1996-2005.	☐
	055	MEMORIAL SLOAN KETTERING: "T-Cell Therapy for Advanced Breast Cancer," 2016, pp. 1-8.	☐
	056	MILLER, et al., "Stereospecific Synthesis of (Z)-Tamoxifen via Carbometallation of Alkynylsilanes," The Journal of Organic Chemistry, Vol. 50 (12), 1985, pp. 2121-2123.	☐
	057	Non-Final Office Action for United States Application No. 16/641,985 dated September 07, 2021, 13 pages.	☐
	058	Notice of Allowance for U.S Application No. 16/641,985 mailed November 17, 2021, 9 pages.	☐
	059	OGAWA K., et al., "Synthesis and Antiestrogenic Activity of the Compounds Related to the Metabolites of (Z)-4-[1-[4-[2-(Dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl]- 2-(4-isopropylphenyl)-1-butenyl]phenyl monophosphate (TAT-59)," Chemical and Pharmaceutical Bulletin, April 1991, Vol. 39(4), pp. 911-916.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

Sheet 13 of 15

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	060	PARTRIDGE, et al., "Adherence to Initial Adjuvant Anastrozole Therapy among Women with Early Stage Breast Cancer," Journal Clinical Oncology, 01 February 2008, Vol. 26 (4).	☐
	061	PARTRIDGE, et al., "Nonadherence to Adjuvant Tamoxifen Therapy in Women with Primary Breast Cancer," Journal of Clinical Oncology, 15 February 2003, Vol. 21.	☐
	062	ROBERTSON, et al., "Fulvestrant: Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacology," British Journal of Cancer, 2004, Vol. 90, pp. S7-S10.	☐
	063	ROBERTSON, et al., "Pharmacokinetic Profile of Intramuscular Fulvestrant in Advanced Breast Cancer," Clinical Pharmacokinetics, 2004, Vol. 43 (8), pp. 529-538.	☐
	064	ROUANET P., et al., "Neoadjuvant Percutaneous 4-Hydroxytamoxifen Decreases Breast Tumoral Cell Proliferation: A Prospective Controlled Randomized Study Comparing Three Doses of 4-hydroxytamoxifen Gel to Oral Tamoxifen," Journal of Clinical Oncology, 1 May 2005, Vol. 23(13), pp. 2980-2987.	☐
	065	SANO, et al., "Short-step Synthesis of Droloxifene via the Three-Component Coupling Reaction among Aromatic Aldehyde, Cinnamyltrimethylsilane, and 13-Chlorophenetole," Tetrahedron Letters, 6 March 2006, Vol. 47 (10), pp. 1631-1635.	☐
	066	STEARNS, et al., "Preclinical and Clinical Evaluation of Intraductally Administered Agents in Early Breast Cancer," Science Translational Medicine, Oct. 26, 2011, Vol. 3 (106), 9 pages, 106ra108.	☐
	067	UMAREDDY, et al., "Improved Process for Centchroman, A Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulator (SERM)," Journal of Chemical and Pharmaceutical Research, 2015, Vol. 7 (7), pp. 736-741.	☐
	068	UMAREDDY, et al., "Total Synthesis of Lasofoxifene and Nafoxidine," An International Journal for Rapid Communication of Synthetic Organic Chemistry, 2016, Vol. 46 (4), pp. 309-313.	☐
	069	VERGOTE, et al., "Fulvestrant is an Effective and Well-Tolerated Endocrine Therapy for Postmenopausal Women with Advanced Breast Cancer," Results from Clinical Trials, British Journal of Cancer, 90 (Suppl), 2004, pp. S11-S14.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 14 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	070	WELSH J., "Induction of Apoptosis in Breast Cancer Cells in Response to Vitamin D and Antiestrogens," Biochemistry and Cell Biology, 1994, Vol. 72 (11-12), pp. 537-545.	☐
	071	WU, et al., "Single Cell MicroRNA Analysis using Microfluidic Flow Cytometry," PLOS One, 2013, Vol. 8 (1), e55044.	☐
	072	YAN YAODONG., "Design and Development of Sustained-Release and Controlled-Release Formulations," Chinese Medicine Science and Technology Publishing House, 30 June 2006 (2006-06-30), pp. 421-428.	☐
	073	YANG Y., et al., "Dendron-Based Micelles for Topical Delivery of Endoxifen: A Potential Chemo-Preventive Medicine for Breast Cancer," Advanced Functional Materials, 2014, Vol. 24, pp. 2442-2449.	☐
	074	YAO, et al., "Synthesis and Reactivity of Potential Toxic Metabolites of Tamoxifen Analogues: Droloxifene and Toremifene a-Quinones," Chemical Research in Toxicology, 2001, Vol. 14 (12), pp. 1643-1653.	☐
	075	YONEYA, et al., "Thiochroman Derivative CH4986399, A New Nonsteroidal Estrogen Receptor Down-regulator, Is effective in Breast Cancer Models," Anticancer Research, 2010, Vol. 30, pp. 873-878.	☐
	076	ZHANG B., et al., "The Safety Parameters of the Study on Intraductal Cytotoxic Agent Delivery to the Breast Before Mastectomy," http://dx.doi.org/10.3978/j.issn.1000-9604.2014.10.06 , September 09, 2014, Chinese Journal of Cancer Research, Vol. 26(5), pp: 579-587.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

Sheet	15	of	15

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	April 21, 2022
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	45532200
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	27148
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740
Receipt Date:	21-APR-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	18:19:21
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	109559-715740_IDS_20220421 153949.pdf	239343	no	15
			a3ece739e8f7196e0730b1dd2e02ea1fb92f1f34		

Warnings:

Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
2	Foreign Reference	CN104203961A_EFS.pdf	2151490	no	40
			a78c4f46aec02c489860425f51c71071222af47f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Foreign Reference	CN104230723B_EFS.pdf	1706447	no	23
			1baec466992e056712f729eac33116d1a0606bc		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Foreign Reference	CN104352504A_EFS.pdf	12185422	no	107
			59435de8e7acec7aa620fe1b0b2e35d222dd0f68		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Foreign Reference	EP1709062B9_EFS.pdf	1001716	no	27
			f2f9ffa2cb1ed80bd5ade74d71ee97c64f2985ae		
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Foreign Reference	EP2350111A1_EFS.pdf	15139	no	1
			daa8fc543eec1964963f3be3d5e9073bc9a00bb2f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Foreign Reference	EP3202420A1_EFS.pdf	1586753	no	28
			d98590f7025b5ec39fe6258cf02ff83dd7c2bce3		
Warnings:					
Information:					
8	Foreign Reference	EP3202420B1_EFS.pdf	1475881	no	24
			78969118282e367929e6dd6dfb63b382dd0f0e0		
Warnings:					
Information:					

9	Foreign Reference	WO0064416A3_EFS.pdf	134700	no	4
			0c9e5e4ed7ac63fd44fc16ec534c46ca496ea2ed		
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Foreign Reference	WO0174366A1_EFS.pdf	1385726	no	31
			3951e54c6623660ebd27ff49d8bc44f78cf46829		
Warnings:					
Information:					
11	Foreign Reference	WO2008070463A2_EFS.pdf	2470890	no	52
			9ae81a05a5eeffb2e79b8026154d90dbce0623d6		
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Foreign Reference	WO2008070463A9_EFS.pdf	2475178	no	52
			2bd6c1a9ee4dc651541510eae113594fa2e8e9c5		
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Foreign Reference	WO2009032699A1_EFS.pdf	4915622	no	89
			4b65ab11da87155740c500ac48eedba954fedad		
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Foreign Reference	WO2009069140A1_EFS.pdf	1936432	no	54
			21004f85a6693365ba0b1fcd64bed2bf3ae22c30		
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Foreign Reference	WO2009120999A2_EFS.pdf	3472512	no	92
			815a1464669d99c5b431da6b2dc514379892320c		
Warnings:					
Information:					

16	Foreign Reference	WO2009120999A3_EFS.pdf	151798	no	3
			f04bbf9093679b981a88519ae671788b478c39c10		
Warnings:					
Information:					
17	Foreign Reference	WO2010066810A1_EFS.pdf	2380952	no	59
			58a460e06d799d792d56fe60195f49065f22a332		
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Foreign Reference	WO2011072244A1_EFS.pdf	1413455	no	31
			291aba03afa6280e6cce8d6704678400aa9c4ef8		
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	Foreign Reference	WO2012050263A1_EFS.pdf	872984	no	19
			352902d29db5ebbcaad03fea4527b6ae934b40e9		
Warnings:					
Information:					
20	Foreign Reference	WO2013-050280.pdf	2281878	no	57
			caea791c4c39c04e4032eae8b74363292713845e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	Foreign Reference	WO2013134230A1_EFS.pdf	1951513	no	58
			0235d0f72842bda30507d8377de343d98d48fd1d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
22	Foreign Reference	WO2014060640A8_EFS.pdf	49753	no	1
			38e5c4720814e58c18a2a2799527415b5b2af797		
Warnings:					
Information:					

23	Foreign Reference	WO2014141292A2_EFS.pdf	588684	no	20
			fe8be886f3e9a9d3ceae13834ec146bf5212d951		
Warnings:					
Information:					
24	Foreign Reference	WO2015106094A1_EFS.pdf	2279983	no	39
			4efee717e5cc0a09b169ca331701d6a48798185c		
Warnings:					
Information:					
25	Foreign Reference	WO2015138340A1_EFS.pdf	703141	no	18
			f7769da9e95d71af0a6abd7f6179de6dfb9eefa0		
Warnings:					
Information:					
26	Foreign Reference	WO2015187727A2_EFS.pdf	2780377	no	48
			809fd65d20f93ae8629315ef4650d2a508ac67e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
27	Foreign Reference	WO2016168021A1_EFS.pdf	7572025	no	133
			5f89de47bfe5759199d3eebc6ebb0498d19b4a0e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
28	Foreign Reference	WO2017011623A1_EFS.pdf	3691076	no	63
			c51c18425903ea88a969926d815694e93f0c9f47		
Warnings:					
Information:					
29	Foreign Reference	WO2017070651A1_EFS.pdf	1188691	no	27
			ce09becd87288e28556a075b1b874fde4437e5f1		
Warnings:					
Information:					

30	Foreign Reference	WO2017080770A1_EFS.pdf	1854274	no	44
			e8e1063acd270d2403a7c0b8622c2148c45e86d2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
31	Foreign Reference	WO2019051368A1_EFS.pdf	6214327	no	118
			069a217b4b3e071e8f1966ce2b587880033cc082		
Warnings:					
Information:					
32	Foreign Reference	WO2019051416A1_EFS.pdf	8124455	no	148
			179cb2c27acf804c32f9f875526f4259975bf34		
Warnings:					
Information:					
33	Non Patent Literature	AHAMAD_Endoxifen_A_New_Cornerstone_2010_pp_814_817_EFS.pdf	2346789	no	4
			7fcea34fac2713029c019c3e2bef60250eef9f88		
Warnings:					
Information:					
34	Non Patent Literature	AHMAD-Endoxifen-2012.pdf	3364920	no	3
			107997ffc1298a786329a588bad2eb80417dad22		
Warnings:					
Information:					
35	Non Patent Literature	AHMAD-Endoxifen-a-new-2016.pdf	3104412	no	8
			5a234cf39a42ace56470732e4f45cbbf1bb80ef8		
Warnings:					
Information:					
36	Non Patent Literature	AHMAD-Orally-2010.pdf	3191866	no	6
			6e5795917f4fbd61e02fdee44d242ec513a8a6ff		
Warnings:					
Information:					

37	Non Patent Literature	AYDINER_MetaAnalysis_29July 2008_9pgs_EFS.pdf	4331423	no	9
			5dd7f4aac3e91c57eac250c16f305be6ba68a733		
Warnings:					
Information:					
38	Non Patent Literature	BAO_Clinicalpharmacology_20 11_3pgs_EFS.pdf	2146458	no	3
			33d788f50701d37cd0d69e9f99f804976915f92b		
Warnings:					
Information:					
39	Non Patent Literature	BATHINI_Improvedsynthesis_ 2014_4pgs_EFS.pdf	1731479	no	4
			841af24196c85bf6f6a2e149cab4f0192e4c6aa8		
Warnings:					
Information:					
40	Non Patent Literature	BERNHARD_Adoptive_Transfer _2008_pp_271_280_EFS.pdf	2641761	no	10
			c197ae7f16daa057c2a050c007e50377282f6cfc		
Warnings:					
Information:					
41	Non Patent Literature	CHANG-Tamoxifen-2012.pdf	12175135	no	12
			5cb329c39065fc321f99a1885e72b186105b8e3a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
42	Non Patent Literature	Clinical-NCT01273168.pdf	390985	no	10
			a6aac0da7389a3010aecab36dfd04488b016c241		
Warnings:					
Information:					
43	Non Patent Literature	Clinical-NCT02311933.pdf	455192	no	13
			dd2943173b996841e1e1b06c523ac1987685b027		
Warnings:					
Information:					

44	Non Patent Literature	DAVISON_InVitro_11Nov2008_10pgs_EFS.pdf	5784393	no	10
			6ab5c0aaaa2d7dd28675202a4b3b5f619f8701ae		
Warnings:					
Information:					
45	Non Patent Literature	DICKSCHEN-Physiologically-2012.pdf	8887313	no	15
			31e0d36f44be94c4bde0d5f8d0e664e53a6f025c		
Warnings:					
Information:					
46	Non Patent Literature	DONEYONG-Risk-2016.pdf	10240002	no	20
			de95393aaf04c952f56e97887c0d73d06e0fe28e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
47	Non Patent Literature	DOWSETT_Effect_Anastrozole_1999_5pgs_EFS.pdf	3034292	no	5
			c98363f0002afeb524ce0d467b52f001a4e7351df		
Warnings:					
Information:					
48	Non Patent Literature	EESR_EP18853361_28May2021_5pgs_EFS.pdf	979226	no	5
			e4e80ba76ecb0d27771b6a7b4da1fbed37775e16		
Warnings:					
Information:					
49	Non Patent Literature	Z-FAUQ-A-convenient-3036.pdf	160242	no	3
			06ea524e54c42fb7d0d480c645ae6864b32ab535		
Warnings:					
Information:					
50	Non Patent Literature	OA_US16641985_26Oct2021_9pgs_EFS.pdf	330305	no	9
			3a8f869ba353c38cfdd6ddcb2d497f6063b7086ba		
Warnings:					
Information:					

51	Non Patent Literature	FORBES_Anastrozole_27Feb2016_8pgs_EFS.pdf	5257248	no	8
			3ee5a3a574373057210c660cae03252b874d9ad4		
Warnings:					
Information:					
52	Non Patent Literature	FOREFRONT_ENDOXIFEN_BREAST_2014_3pgs_EFS.pdf	1024517	no	3
			77fc55c148f609ca5c0a32545b1f58a91cce1dbd		
Warnings:					
Information:					
53	Non Patent Literature	CABRERA-GALENA-Ki67-2018.pdf	11610690	no	9
			6d9538fd4aabe5f140c6bf0350da88d44e986ae7		
Warnings:					
Information:					
54	Non Patent Literature	GAUTHIER_New_Highly_Stereoselective_1996_pp_3890_3893_EFS.pdf	2241792	no	4
			0d2a2a105ef54641733bb8c13938ee2ec9b1bcaa6		
Warnings:					
Information:					
55	Non Patent Literature	GELMON_Targeting_2012_12pgs_EFS.pdf	8318918	no	12
			f8417efae79b056992e3ec1b5d0d0ce1818dad49		
Warnings:					
Information:					
56	Non Patent Literature	goetz-abstract-2015.pdf	95433	no	5
			a266279d31d4870406aead73f683744932f3556d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
57	Non Patent Literature	GOETZ-Final-pd2-03-2015.pdf	26420	no	1
			dc439e16d62f92bc253935eacbea48bb6a874669		
Warnings:					
Information:					

58	Non Patent Literature	GOETZ_Human_Phase_20Oct2017_16pgs_EFS.pdf	6197952	no	16
			6cc127706d8ea81729a985cd8bbcb7888990eff2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
59	Non Patent Literature	hawse_endoxifen_molecular_mechanism_EFS.pdf	1440869	no	18
			3a4244729a6ae9ccfd0416aa6081becf0a35be4d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			182762649		
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.					



United States Patent and Trademark Office

Office of the Chief Financial Officer

Document Code:WFEE

User :C46539

Sale Accounting Date:04/22/2022

Sale Item Reference Number
17580428

Effective Date
04/21/2022

Document Number	Fee Code	Fee Code Description	Amount Paid	Payment Method
I20224L959121196	2202	CLAIMS IN EXCESS OF 20	\$100.00	Deposit Account



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	109559-715740

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

27148
POLSINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310

INFORMAL NOTICE



Date Mailed: 04/28/2022

INFORMATIONAL NOTICE TO APPLICANT

Applicant is notified that the above-identified application contains the deficiencies noted below. No period for reply is set forth in this notice for correction of these deficiencies. However, if a deficiency relates to the inventor's oath or declaration, the applicant must file an oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, or a substitute statement in compliance with 37 CFR 1.64, executed by or with respect to each actual inventor no later than the expiration of the time period set in the "Notice of Allowability" to avoid abandonment. See 37 CFR 1.53(f).

The item(s) indicated below are also required and should be submitted with any reply to this notice to avoid further processing delays.

- A properly executed inventor's oath or declaration has not been received for the following inventor(s) as named on the application data sheet:

Yao-Lin Sun

An inventor's oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 or 1.64 executed by or with respect to each inventor must be submitted no later than the date on which the issue fee is paid in response to a notice requiring such fee. See 37 CFR 1.53(f).

If the name of the inventor provided on the ADS is not correct, applicant must submit a request to correct the inventor name according to 37 CFR 1.48(f), accompanied by the appropriate fee under 37 CFR 1.17(i) and a corrected ADS in compliance with 37 CFR 1.76(c), i.e., identifying the information that is being changed with underlining for insertions, and strike-through or brackets for text removed.

Questions about the contents of this notice and the requirements it sets forth should be directed to the Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit, at (571) 272-4000 or (571) 272-4200 or 1-888-786-0101.

/fasrat/



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	GRP ART UNIT	FIL FEE REC'D	ATTY. DOCKET NO.	TOT CLAIMS	IND CLAIMS
17/580,428	01/20/2022	1629	1220	109559-715740	22	2

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226
UPDATED FILING RECEIPT



CC000000133458204

27148
POL SINELLI PC
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310

Date Mailed: 04/28/2022

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional utility patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF FIRST INVENTOR, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection.

Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a corrected Filing Receipt, including a properly marked-up ADS showing the changes with strike-through for deletions and underlining for additions. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" or other Notice requiring a response for this application, please submit any request for correction to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections provided that the request is grantable.

Inventor(s)

Steven C. Quay, Seattle, WA;
Yao-Lin Sun, Tainan City, TAIWAN;
LungHu Wang, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChangJung Wu, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChuanDer Huang, Tainan City, TAIWAN;

Applicant(s)

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., Seattle, WA;

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 27148

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 16/641,985 02/25/2020 PAT 11261151
which is a 371 of PCT/US18/50272 09/10/2018
which claims benefit of 62/693,885 07/03/2018
and claims benefit of 62/624,787 01/31/2018
and claims benefit of 62/556,799 09/11/2017
and claims benefit of 62/556,884 09/11/2017

Foreign Applications for which priority is claimed (You may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at the USPTO. Please see <http://www.uspto.gov> for more information.) - None.

Foreign application information must be provided in an Application Data Sheet in order to constitute a claim to foreign priority. See 37 CFR 1.55 and 1.76.

Permission to Access Application via Priority Document Exchange: Yes

Permission to Access Search Results: Yes

Applicant may provide or rescind an authorization for access using Form PTO/SB/39 or Form PTO/SB/69 as appropriate.

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 01/27/2022

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 17/580,428**

Projected Publication Date: 08/04/2022

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

**** SMALL ENTITY ****

Title

METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Preliminary Class

514

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications: No

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4258).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

SelectUSA

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The U.S. offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to promote and facilitate business investment. SelectUSA provides information assistance to the international investor

community; serves as an ombudsman for existing and potential investors; advocates on behalf of U.S. cities, states, and regions competing for global investment; and counsels U.S. economic development organizations on investment attraction best practices. To learn more about why the United States is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, deliver services, and grow your business, visit <http://www.SelectUSA.gov> or call +1-202-482-6800.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875						Application or Docket Number 17/580,428		
APPLICATION AS FILED - PART I								
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		SMALL ENTITY		OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY		
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE(\$)	FEE(\$)		RATE(\$)	FEE(\$)	
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A	80		N/A		
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A	350		N/A		
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A	400		N/A		
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	22 minus 20 =	*	x 50 =	100	OR			
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	2 minus 3 =	*	x 240 =	0.00				
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$310 (\$155 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).			210				
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))				0.00				
			TOTAL	1140		TOTAL		
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.								
APPLICATION AS AMENDED - PART II								
AMENDMENT A	(Column 1)		(Column 2)		(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY	OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY
	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)		RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus **	x =		OR	x =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus ***	x =		OR	x =	
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))					OR		
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					OR		
			TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE		
AMENDMENT B	(Column 1)		(Column 2)		(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY	OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY
	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)		RATE(\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE(\$)
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus **	x =		OR	x =	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus ***	x =		OR	x =	
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))					OR		
	FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					OR		
			TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE		
* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3. ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20". *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3". The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest found in the appropriate box in column 1.								

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	45842048
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	27148
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Hillary Pratt
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	109559-715740
Receipt Date:	31-MAY-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	20:41:15
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73	438558-758051_373c.pdf	127659	no	2
			d2c9430f37c4715cc6a42bad632dbd5ac3c c4336		
Warnings:					

Information:					
2	Power of Attorney	Atossa-General_POA.pdf	120191	no	1
			79732668480d6c697846ee71cfa55599a90dc37b		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			247850		
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.					

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c).

I hereby appoint:

☒

Practitioners associated with Customer Number:

187495

OR

☐

Practitioner(s) named below (if more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number

Name	Registration Number

As attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignment documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(c).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) to:

☒

The address associated with Customer Number: 187495

OR

☐

Firm or individual name

Address

City

State

Zip

Country

Telephone

Email

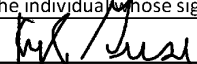
Assignee name and address: Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.
107 Spring Street
Seattle, Washington 98104

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) (Form PTO/AIA/96 or equivalent) is required to be filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) may be completed by one of the practitioners appointed in this form, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record

The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

Signature



Date 4/25/22

Name Kyle Guse

Telephone

Title Chief Financial Officer and General Counsel

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32, and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to update (and by the USPTO to process) the file of a patent or reexamination proceeding. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 18 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

Applicant/Patent Owner: ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

Application No./Patent No.: 17/580,428 Filed/Issue Date: January 20, 2022

Titled: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC., a corporation

(Name of Assignee)

(Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose one of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. ☒ The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.
2. ☐ An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):
- ☐ The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is ____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for 100% of the ownership interest.
- ☐ There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. ☐ The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest must be submitted to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. ☐ The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (e.g., bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose one of options A or B below):

- A. ☐ An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

- B. ☒ A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

1. From: Yao-Lin SUN, Lunghu WANG, Changjung WU, Chuander HUANG To: KRISAN BIOTECH CO., LTD.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel 059285, Frame 0311, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

2. From: KRISAN BIOTECH CO., LTD. To: ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at

Reel 059285, Frame 0512, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

[Page 1 of 2]

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: Steven C. QUAY To: ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel 059285, Frame 0413, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

☐ Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

☒ As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

/Lisa G Lippert/

Signature

Lisa Lippert, Ph.D.

Printed or Typed Name

May 31, 2022

Date

78,332

Title or Registration Number



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	109559-715740

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

POWER OF ATTORNEY NOTICE

27148
POL SINELLI PC (Main Customer Number)
PO Box 140310
KANSAS CITY, MO 64114-0310



Date Mailed: 06/03/2022

NOTICE REGARDING CHANGE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 05/31/2022.

- The Power of Attorney to you in this application has been revoked by the applicant. Future correspondence will be mailed to the new address of record(37 CFR 1.33).

Questions about the contents of this notice and the requirements it sets forth should be directed to the Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit, at (571) 272-4000 or (571) 272-4200 or 1-888-786-0101.

/hsarwari/



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	109559-715740

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

POA ACCEPTANCE LETTER

187495
DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue
Suite 6900
Seattle, WA 98104



Date Mailed: 06/03/2022

NOTICE OF ACCEPTANCE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 05/31/2022.

The Power of Attorney in this application is accepted. Correspondence in this application will be mailed to the above address as provided by 37 CFR 1.33.

Questions about the contents of this notice and the requirements it sets forth should be directed to the Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit, at (571) 272-4000 or (571) 272-4200 or 1-888-786-0101.

/hsarwari/



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	438558-758051

CONFIRMATION NO. 3226

PUBLICATION NOTICE

187495
DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue
Suite 6900
Seattle, WA 98104



Title:METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

Publication No.US-2022-0242816-A1

Publication Date:08/04/2022

NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publicly available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently <http://www.uspto.gov/patft/>.

The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Public Records Division. The Public Records Division can be reached by telephone at (571) 272-3150 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (571) 273-3250, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Public Records Division, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently <https://portal.uspto.gov/pair/PublicPair>. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197.

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

1

of

3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	001	US-20170304232-A1	10-26-2017	KHAN; Seema Ahsan et al.	
	002	US-20190269697-A1	09-05-2019	LABRIE; Fernand	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	WO-2019051370-A1	03-14-2019	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	Love, Susan M., et al. "A Feasibility Study of the Intraductal Administration of Chemotherapy." Cancer Prevention Research, vol. 6, no. 1, Jan. 2013, pp. 51-58.	☐
	002	Taiwanese Patent Application No. 107131790 Search Report dated June 30, 2022. English Translation included.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 3 of 3

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-09-07
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	46565771
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	187495
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	438558-758051
Receipt Date:	07-SEP-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	16:14:09
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	438558-758051-IDS-Transmittal.pdf	159296	no	4
			7d931eef7afead52eef0f891e8aac17f707244db		
Warnings:					

Information:					
2	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	438558-758051-IDS.pdf	107878	no	3
			7204b57313ee7656b94f1a0ef7824a1564ab00c7		
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
3	Foreign Reference	WO2019051370A1_EFS.PDF	6625916	no	126
			992985a2202aa5423bdc5669190e33ac0b3b5524		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	Z-LOVE-A-FEASIBILITY-STUDY-INTRADUCTAL-6-51-2013.PDF	757701	no	9
			13ec5a0629cfa33f963f0c80dddb0b197c7d1d39		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Non Patent Literature	TW107131790-SEARCH-REPORT-EN-06-30-22-.PDF	378621	no	2
			ac2c6c08153e099a8d7cd01f22b7b666b39f3838		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			8029412		
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.					

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Inventor:	Steven C. Quay et al.	Group Art Unit:	1612
Serial Number:	17/580,428	Examiner:	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Filing or 371 (c) Date:	January 20, 2022	CONFIRMATION NO:	3226
Title:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	CUST. NO.:	187495

FILED ELECTRONICALLY ON September 7, 2022

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.97

Commissioner for Patents:

An Information Disclosure Statement along with attached PTO/SB/08 is hereby submitted. A copy of each listed publication is submitted, if required, pursuant to 37 CFR §§1.97-1.98, as indicated below.

The Examiner is requested to review the information provided and to make the information of record in the above-identified application. The Examiner is further requested to initial and return the attached PTO/SB/08 in accordance with MPEP § 609.

The right to establish the patentability of the claimed invention over any of the information provided herewith, and/or to prove that this information may not be prior art, and/or to prove that this information may not be enabling for the teachings purportedly offered, is hereby reserved.

This statement is not intended to represent that a search has been made or that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, prior art or material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

- A. ☒ 37 CFR § 1.97 (b). This Information Disclosure Statement should be considered by the Office because:
- ☐ (1) It is being filed within 3 months of the filing date of a national application and is other than a continued prosecution application under § 1.53 (d);
 - OR --
 - ☐ (2) It is being filed within 3 months of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application;
 - OR --
 - ☒ (3) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits;
 - OR --
 - ☐ (4) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under § 1.114.
- B. ☐ 37 CFR § 1.97(c). Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the period specified in 37 CFR § 1.97(b), above, it is filed before the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, this Information Disclosure Statement should be considered because it is accompanied by one of:
- ☐ a statement as specified in § 1.97 (e) provided concurrently herewith;
 - OR --
 - ☐ a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in § 1.17 (p) authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this statement.
- C. ☐ 37 CFR § 1.97 (d). Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, it is being filed before payment of the issue fee and should be considered because it is accompanied by:
- i. a statement as specified in § 1.97 (e);
 - AND --
 - ii. a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in § 1.17(p) is authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this Statement.
- D. ☐ 37 CFR § 1.97 (e). Statement.
- ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (c);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (d);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A copy of a dated communication from a foreign patent office clearly showing that the information disclosure statement is being submitted within 3 months of the filing date on the communication is provided in lieu of a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e) (1) as provided for under MPEP 609.04(b) V.

- E. ☐ *Statement Under 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d)*. Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or from the Office or is a communication that was issued by a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or by the Office that was received by an individual designated in § 1.56(c) not more than thirty (30) days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. This statement is made pursuant to the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d) to avoid reduction of the period of adjustment of the patent term for Applicant(s) delay.
- F. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2)*. The content of the Information Disclosure Statement is as follows:
- ☐ Copies of each of the references listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed herewith.
- OR --
- ☒ Copies of U.S. Patent Documents (issued patents and patent publications) listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are not enclosed.
- AND/OR --
- ☒ Copies of Foreign Patent Documents and/or Non Patent Literature Documents listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a)(2).
- AND/OR --
- ☐ Copies of pending unpublished U.S. patent applications are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2) (iii).
- G. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)*. The Information Disclosure Statement includes non-English patents and/or references.
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)(i), a concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is provided herewith.
- ☐ Pursuant to MPEP 609(B), an English language copy of a foreign search report is submitted herewith to satisfy the requirement for a concise explanation where non-English language information is cited in the search report.
- OR --
- ☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is as follows: _____
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a) (3) (ii), a copy of a translation, or a portion thereof, of the non-English language reference(s) is provided herewith.
- H. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(d)*. Copies of patents, publications and pending U.S. patent applications, or other information specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a) are not provided herewith because:
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(d)(1) the information was previously submitted in an Information Disclosure Statement, or cited by examiner for another application under which this application claims priority for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.
- Application in which the information was submitted: _____
- Information Disclosure Statement(s) filed on: _____
- AND

☐ The information disclosure statement submitted in the earlier application complied with paragraphs (a) through (c) of 37 CFR §1.98.

- I. ☒ *Fee Authorization.* The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the above-referenced fees of \$0.00 and charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment associated with this communication to Deposit Account No. 07-1896 (Docket No. 438558-758051).

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: September 7, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

DLA PIPER LLP (US)
701 Fifth Avenue, Suite 6900
Seattle, Washington 98104-7029
Tel: (206) 839-4800
Fax (206) 839-4801
CUSTOMER NO.: 187495

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1612
				Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
				Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	4		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	001	US-20070059288-A1	03-15-2007	DINSMORE; Jonathan H. et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	WO-2014134165-A1	09-04-2014	SLOAN KETTERING INST CANCER [US]		☐

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300041699.1

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 2 of 4

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	ACKERMAN A.B., et al., "Contrary View: The Breast is not an Organ Per Se, but a Distinctive Region of Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue," The American Journal of Dermatopathology, April 2007, Vol. 29 (2), pp. 211-218.	☐
	002	Anonymous, "History of Changes for Study: NCT02547961," 10 September 2015, XP055669980, retrieved from the URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/history/NCT02547961?V_1=View#StudyPageTop , on 2020-02-19, 4 pages.	☐
	003	BHATNAGAR P., et al., "Tumor Lysing Genetically Engineered T Cells Loaded with Multi-Modal Imaging Agents," SCIENTIFIC REPORTS, Vol. 4, No. 4502, DOI: 10.1038/srep04502, published on March 28, 2014, 21 pages.	☐
	004	Extended European Search Report for EP Application EP17857260.8, dated 24 March 2020, 16 pages.	☐
	005	FASCHING P.A., et al., "Ki67, Chemotherapy Response and Prognosis in Breast Cancer Patients receiving Neoadjuvant Treatment," BMC Cancer, Vol. 11, Article 486, 2011, 13 pages.	☐
	006	GOETZ M.P., et al., "A First-in-Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen (TAM) Metabolite, Z-Endoxifen Hydrochloride (Z-Endx) in Women with Aromatase Inhibitor (AI) Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer (MBC) (NCT01327781)," San Antonio Breast Conference, December 2013, PD3-4, 4 pages.	☐
	007	International Search Report and Written Opinion for International Application no. PCT/US2018/050193, mailed January 04, 2019, 9 pages.	☐
	008	International Search Report and Written Opinion for International Application no. PCT/US2018/050272, dated January 03, 2019, 12 pages.	☐
	009	LI L., et al., "Prognostic Values of Ki-67 in Neoadjuvant Setting for Breast Cancer: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis," Future Oncology, Vol. 13(11), May 2017, pp. 1021-1034.	☐
	010	LOVE, et al., "A Feasibility Study of the Intraductal Administration of Chemotherapy," Cancer Prevention Research, Vol. 1, 2012, pp. 51-58.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300041699.1

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 3 of 4

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	011	OKEN M.M., et al., "Toxicity and Response Criteria of the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group," American Journal of Clinical Oncology, December 1982, Vol. 5(6), pp. 649-655.	☐
	012	Search Report and Written Opinion for Singapore Patent Application No. SG11202002105W mailed April 21, 2021, 8 pages.	☐
	013	STEARNS, et al. Active tamoxifen metabolite plasma concentrations after coadministration of tamoxifen and the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor paroxetine. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2003 Dec 3;95(23):1758-64.	☐
	014	SUN M., et al., "Construction and Evaluation of a Novel Humanized HER2-Specific Chimeric Receptor," Breast Cancer Research, 2014, Vol. 16:R61, 10 pages.	☐
	015	WU X., et al., "The Tamoxifen Metabolite, Endoxifen, is a Potent Antiestrogen that Targets Estrogen Receptor Alpha for Degradation in Breast Cancer Cells," Cancer Research, 01 March 2009, Vol. 69(5), , pp. 1722-1727.	☐
	016	ZHAO Y., et al., "A Herceptin-Based Chimeric Antigen Receptor with Modified Signaling Domains Leads to Enhanced Survival of Transduced T Lymphocytes and Antitumor Activity," The Journal of Immunology, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/38024914 , November, 2009, Vol. 183(9), pp: 5563-5574.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300041699.1

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

4

of

4

Application Number

17/580,428

Filing Date

01-20-2022

First Named Inventor

QUAY; Steven C.

Art Unit

1612

Examiner Name

CENTRAL, DOCKET

Attorney Docket Number

438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-09-20
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	46653595
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	187495
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	438558-758051
Receipt Date:	20-SEP-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	16:19:44
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	438558-758051-transmittal.pdf	157748	no	4
			7c6b7d434f821d07aa64c5d398a66f10ba9553f8		
Warnings:					

Information:					
2	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	438558-758051_IDS_SB08_2020906123249.pdf	148522	no	4
			71982f2e0608a69028eb2e921abd379ac4fc6233		
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
3	Foreign Reference	WO2014134165A1_EFS.PDF	7022458	no	136
			4582b98c2db10fbc1a91c7965d9ac597e71b6b08		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	ACKERMAN-CONTRARY-2007.PDF	1469445	no	8
			f2fe867f880acbef4cdd8d3019d22099f61ceb8b		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Non Patent Literature	ANONYMOUS-HISTORY-2015.PDF	1276341	no	4
			0e71703c4984312ff94a2550777f75ac6553609c		
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Non Patent Literature	BHATNAGAR_TUMOR_LYSING_GENETICALLY_28MARCH2014_21PGS_EFS.PDF	941552	no	21
			0562ac87ee3589758feb45c7501dba90f18966a9		
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Non Patent Literature	EESR_EP178572608_24MAR2020_16PGS_EFS.PDF	559542	no	16
			72e46127c6e361075696323efaa6c42e0f6b2bb92		
Warnings:					
Information:					
8	Non Patent Literature	FASCHING-KI67-2011.PDF	7289555	no	13
			f1a8db8c5280ea9f1f5e2dc96d10d2b886b9ee8ab		
Warnings:					
Information:					

9	Non Patent Literature	GOETZ-A-FIRST-2013.PDF	3668096	no	4
			601050c592639ddb7a29fe7142d63ee5a047b747		
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Non Patent Literature	ISR-01-04-2019-PCT-US2018-050193.PDF	549851	no	9
			7e68dc470e091fd6c70963577fd834db77510d40		
Warnings:					
Information:					
11	Non Patent Literature	ISR-01-3-2019-PCT-US2018-050272.PDF	647613	no	12
			97da80eb9d0586c98be5c7c41e674b145ab163f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	Non Patent Literature	LI-PROGNOSTIC-2017.PDF	822646	no	14
			6fa59082cde14a65b4c0d9d1050450b4b0597623		
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	Non Patent Literature	LOVE_FEASIBILITY_2012_10PG_S_EFS.PDF	5024094	no	10
			25685bedef76b1d8d92441bf6bc038d0f6a744ad		
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	Non Patent Literature	OKEN-TOXICITY-1982.PDF	384543	no	7
			72f24a6c2dab46f2991b83acbf9c272218201d1b		
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	Non Patent Literature	SR_WO_SG11202002105W_21APR2021_PGS_8_EFS.PDF	871092	no	8
			375db430f30e6a53bdb95c3d262e2e8a6101de38		
Warnings:					
Information:					

16	Non Patent Literature	STEARNS_ACTIVE_TAMOXIFEN _METABOLITE_03DEC2003_7P GS_EFS.PDF	793899	no	7
			c219e0919572a84a7ec7419ef1502bf9833d a3c4		
Warnings:					
Information:					
17	Non Patent Literature	SUN_NOVEL_HUMANIZED_201 4_10PGS_EFS.PDF	589012	no	10
			5e371fe1bdeebb185dcf2980fc6a42f18c3a 2cac		
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Non Patent Literature	WU-THE-TAMOXIFEN-2009.PDF	11836837	no	7
			a77eb26acb545d732053139b3d2f75018fe 5c942		
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	Non Patent Literature	ZHAO_HERCEPTIN_ANTIGEN_N OV2009_14PGS_EFS.PDF	10223167	no	14
			1018c97f7ec8a7164d66c67211ec90a1403e 5f05		
Warnings:					
Information:					
20	Applicant Response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice	438558-758051-response- notice.pdf	100262	no	2
			e1285c37c078826c7354138e832165e3629 7bc28		
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	Oath or Declaration filed	438558-758051-dec.pdf	81219	no	1
			685466c347b786e66477372ed7498c83285 888b7		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			54457494		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

**DECLARATION (37 CFR 1.63) FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN APPLICATION USING AN
APPLICATION DATA SHEET (37 CFR 1.76)**

Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
As the below named inventor, I hereby declare that: This declaration is directed to: ☐ The attached application, or ☒ United States application or PCT international application number <u>17/580,428</u> filed on <u>January 20, 2022</u>. The above-identified application was made or authorized to be made by me. I believe that I am the original inventor or an original joint inventor of a claimed invention in the application. I hereby acknowledge that any willful false statement made in this declaration is punishable under 18 U.S.C. 1001 by fine or imprisonment of not more than five (5) years, or both. WARNING: Petitioner/applicant is cautioned to avoid submitting personal information in documents filed in a patent application that may contribute to identity theft. Personal information such as social security numbers, bank account numbers, or credit card numbers (other than a check or credit card authorization form PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes) is never required by the USPTO to support a petition or an application. If this type of personal information is included in documents submitted to the USPTO, petitioners/applicants should consider redacting such personal information from the documents before submitting them to the USPTO. Petitioner/applicant is advised that the record of a patent application is available to the public after publication of the application (unless a non-publication request in compliance with 37 CFR 1.213(a) is made in the application) or issuance of a patent. Furthermore, the record from an abandoned application may also be available to the public if the application is referenced in a published application or an issued patent (see 37 CFR 1.14). Checks and credit card authorization forms PTO-2038 submitted for payment purposes are not retained in the application file and therefore are not publicly available. LEGAL NAME OF INVENTOR Inventor: <u>Yao-Lin Sun</u> Date (Optional): <u>2022/09/19</u> Signature: <u>Yao-Lin Sun</u> Note: An application data sheet (PTO/SB/14 or equivalent), including naming the entire inventive entity, must accompany this form or must have been previously filed. Use an additional PTO/AIA/01 form for each additional inventor.	

This collection of information is required by 35 U.S.C. 115 and 37 CFR 1.63. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 minute to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being filed via
EFS-Web with the United States Patent and Trademark Office
on September 20, 2022

Attorney Docket No.: 438558-758051

DLAPIPER LLP

By: /Christina Campbell/

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of:

Steven C. Quay et al.

Application No.: 17/580,428

Filed: January 20, 2022

For: METHODS FOR MAKING AND
USING ENDOXIFEN

Confirmation No. 3226

Examiner: CENTRAL, DOCKET

Art Unit: 1612

RESPONSE TO INFORMATIONAL
NOTICE TO APPLICANT

Customer No. 187495

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Commissioner:

Pursuant to the Notice to Applicant, dated April 28, 2022, enclosed are the
following to be made of record in the above-identified application:

- 1) Executed Declaration of Yao-Lin Sun

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any fees associated with this
paper or during the pendency of this application, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account
No. 07-1896.

Application No.: 17/580,428
Response to Informational Notice to Applicant
Dated September 20, 2022

Attorney Docket No.: 438558-758051

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: September 19, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

DLA PIPER LLP (US)
701 Fifth Avenue, Suite 6900
Seattle, Washington 98104-7029
Tel: (206) 839-4800
Fax (206) 839-4801

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Inventor:	Steven C. Quay et al.	Group Art Unit:	1612
Serial Number:	17/580,428	Examiner:	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Filing or 371 (c) Date:	January 20, 2022	CONFIRMATION NO:	3226
Title:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	CUST. NO.:	187495

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.97

Commissioner for Patents:

An Information Disclosure Statement along with attached PTO/SB/08 is hereby submitted. A copy of each listed publication is submitted, if required, pursuant to 37 CFR §§1.97-1.98, as indicated below.

The Examiner is requested to review the information provided and to make the information of record in the above-identified application. The Examiner is further requested to initial and return the attached PTO/SB/08 in accordance with MPEP § 609.

The right to establish the patentability of the claimed invention over any of the information provided herewith, and/or to prove that this information may not be prior art, and/or to prove that this information may not be enabling for the teachings purportedly offered, is hereby reserved.

This statement is not intended to represent that a search has been made or that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, prior art or material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

- A. ☒ 37 CFR § 1.97 (b). This Information Disclosure Statement should be considered by the Office because:
- ☐ (1) It is being filed within 3 months of the filing date of a national application and is other than a continued prosecution application under § 1.53 (d);
- OR --
- ☐ (2) It is being filed within 3 months of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application;
- OR --
- ☒ (3) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits;
- OR --
- ☐ (4) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under § 1.114.
- B. ☐ 37 CFR § 1.97(c). Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the period specified in 37 CFR § 1.97(b), above, it is filed before the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, this Information Disclosure Statement should be considered because it is accompanied by one of:
- ☐ a statement as specified in §1.97 (e) provided concurrently herewith;
- OR --
- ☐ a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in § 1.17 (p) authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this statement.
- C. ☐ 37 CFR § 1.97 (d). Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, it is being filed before payment of the issue fee and should be considered because it is accompanied by:
- i. a statement as specified in § 1.97 (e);
- AND --
- ii. a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in §1.17(p) is authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this Statement.
- D. ☐ 37 CFR §1.97 (e). Statement.
- ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (c);
- AND/OR --
- ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (d);
- AND/OR --
- ☐ A copy of a dated communication from a foreign patent office clearly showing that the information disclosure statement is being submitted within 3 months of the filing date on the communication is provided in lieu of a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e) (1) as provided for under MPEP 609.04(b) V.

- E. ☐ *Statement Under 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d).* Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or from the Office or is a communication that was issued by a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or by the Office that was received by an individual designated in § 1.56(c) not more than thirty (30) days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. This statement is made pursuant to the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d) to avoid reduction of the period of adjustment of the patent term for Applicant(s) delay.
- F. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2).* The content of the Information Disclosure Statement is as follows:
- ☐ Copies of each of the references listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed herewith.
- OR --
- ☒ Copies of U.S. Patent Documents (issued patents and patent publications) listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are not enclosed.
- AND/OR --
- ☒ Copies of Foreign Patent Documents and/or Non Patent Literature Documents listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a)(2).
- AND/OR --
- ☐ Copies of pending unpublished U.S. patent applications are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2) (iii).
- G. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(a)(3).* The Information Disclosure Statement includes non-English patents and/or references.
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)(i), a concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is provided herewith.
- ☐ Pursuant to MPEP 609(B), an English language copy of a foreign search report is submitted herewith to satisfy the requirement for a concise explanation where non-English language information is cited in the search report.
- OR --
- ☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is as follows: _____
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a) (3) (ii), a copy of a translation, or a portion thereof, of the non-English language reference(s) is provided herewith.
- H. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(d).* Copies of patents, publications and pending U.S. patent applications, or other information specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a) are not provided herewith because:
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(d)(1) the information was previously submitted in an Information Disclosure Statement, or cited by examiner for another application under which this application claims priority for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.
- Application in which the information was submitted: _____
- Information Disclosure Statement(s) filed on: _____
- AND

☐ The information disclosure statement submitted in the earlier application complied with paragraphs (a) through (c) of 37 CFR §1.98.

- I. ☒ *Fee Authorization.* The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the above-referenced fees of \$0.00 and charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment associated with this communication to Deposit Account No. 07-1896 (Docket No. 438558-758051).

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: September 19, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

DLA PIPER LLP (US)
701 Fifth Avenue, Suite 6900
Seattle, Washington 98104-7029
Tel: (206) 839-4800
Fax (206) 839-4801
CUSTOMER NO.: 187495

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1612
				Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
				Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	3		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
		None			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	WO-2010135703-A2	11-25-2010	JINA PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US], et al.		☐

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300194197.1

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	Journal of Pharmaceutical Science and Technology, Japan, 2006, Vol. 66, No. 6, pp. 435-439.(No English Translation available. Document showing a well-known technique).	☒

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300194197.1

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

3

of

3

Application Number

17/580,428

Filing Date

01-20-2022

First Named Inventor

QUAY; Steven C.

Art Unit

1612

Examiner Name

CENTRAL, DOCKET

Attorney Docket Number

438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-10-05
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	46753230
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	187495
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	438558-758051
Receipt Date:	05-OCT-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	15:52:03
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	438558-758051-IDS-Transmittal.pdf	157738	no	4
			e5e992d432ab75d33668e42853ee68e9831efb38		
Warnings:					

Information:					
2	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	438558-758051_IDS_SB08_20220906123249.pdf	134080	no	3
			e9a1d4f3bfc4fa1e30142f43b41be371c1f380f1		
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
3	Foreign Reference	WO2010135703A2_EFS.PDF	3453894	no	70
			936cb09eb71a9b16bacdb60aa10327e6c695a951		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Non Patent Literature	JOURNAL_PHARMACEUTICAL_SCIENCE_2006_435_EFS.PDF	903051	no	6
			019f7beb88a8d24347554ced99526b5b68ec2406		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			4648763		
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.					

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Inventor:	Steven C. Quay et al.	Group Art Unit:	1612
Serial Number:	17/580,428	Examiner:	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Filing or 371 (c) Date:	January 20, 2022	CONFIRMATION NO:	3226
Title:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	CUST. NO.:	187495

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.97

Commissioner for Patents:

An Information Disclosure Statement along with attached PTO/SB/08 is hereby submitted. A copy of each listed publication is submitted, if required, pursuant to 37 CFR §§1.97-1.98, as indicated below.

The Examiner is requested to review the information provided and to make the information of record in the above-identified application. The Examiner is further requested to initial and return the attached PTO/SB/08 in accordance with MPEP § 609.

The right to establish the patentability of the claimed invention over any of the information provided herewith, and/or to prove that this information may not be prior art, and/or to prove that this information may not be enabling for the teachings purportedly offered, is hereby reserved.

This statement is not intended to represent that a search has been made or that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, prior art or material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

- A. ☒ *37 CFR § 1.97 (b)*. This Information Disclosure Statement should be considered by the Office because:
- ☐ (1) It is being filed within 3 months of the filing date of a national application and is other than a continued prosecution application under § 1.53 (d);
 - OR --
 - ☐ (2) It is being filed within 3 months of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application;
 - OR --
 - ☒ (3) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits;
 - OR --
 - ☐ (4) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under § 1.114.
- B. ☐ *37 CFR § 1.97(c)*. Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the period specified in *37 CFR § 1.97(b)*, above, it is filed before the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, this Information Disclosure Statement should be considered because it is accompanied by one of:
- ☐ a statement as specified in §1.97 (e) provided concurrently herewith;
 - OR --
 - ☐ a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in § 1.17 (p) authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this statement.
- C. ☐ *37 CFR § 1.97 (d)*. Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, it is being filed before payment of the issue fee and should be considered because it is accompanied by:
- i. a statement as specified in § 1.97 (e);
 - AND --
 - ii. a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in §1.17(p) is authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this Statement.
- D. ☐ *37 CFR §1.97 (e)*. Statement.
- ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (c);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (d);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A copy of a dated communication from a foreign patent office clearly showing that the information disclosure statement is being submitted within 3 months of the filing date on the communication is provided in lieu of a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e) (1) as provided for under MPEP 609.04(b) V.

- E. ☐ *Statement Under 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d)*. Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or from the Office or is a communication that was issued by a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or by the Office that was received by an individual designated in § 1.56(c) not more than thirty (30) days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. This statement is made pursuant to the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d) to avoid reduction of the period of adjustment of the patent term for Applicant(s) delay.
- F. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2)*. The content of the Information Disclosure Statement is as follows:
- ☐ Copies of each of the references listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed herewith.
- OR --
- ☐ Copies of U.S. Patent Documents (issued patents and patent publications) listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are not enclosed.
- AND/OR --
- ☒ Copies of Foreign Patent Documents and/or Non Patent Literature Documents listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a)(2).
- AND/OR --
- ☐ Copies of pending unpublished U.S. patent applications are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2) (iii).
- G. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)*. The Information Disclosure Statement includes non-English patents and/or references.
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)(i), a concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is provided herewith.
- ☐ Pursuant to MPEP 609(B), an English language copy of a foreign search report is submitted herewith to satisfy the requirement for a concise explanation where non-English language information is cited in the search report.
- OR --
- ☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is as follows: _____
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a) (3) (ii), a copy of a translation, or a portion thereof, of the non-English language reference(s) is provided herewith.
- H. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(d)*. Copies of patents, publications and pending U.S. patent applications, or other information specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a) are not provided herewith because:
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(d)(1) the information was previously submitted in an Information Disclosure Statement, or cited by examiner for another application under which this application claims priority for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.
- Application in which the information was submitted: _____
- Information Disclosure Statement(s) filed on: _____
- AND

☐ The information disclosure statement submitted in the earlier application complied with paragraphs (a) through (c) of 37 CFR §1.98.

- I. ☒ *Fee Authorization.* The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the above-referenced fees of \$0.00 and charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment associated with this communication to Deposit Account No. 07-1896 (Docket No. 438558-758051).

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: October 5, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

DLA PIPER LLP (US)
701 Fifth Avenue, Suite 6900
Seattle, Washington 98104-7029
Tel: (206) 839-4800
Fax (206) 839-4801
CUSTOMER NO.: 187495

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	47007887
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	187495
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	438558-758051
Receipt Date:	11-NOV-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	13:42:41
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Petition to make special based on Age/ Health	438558-758051-Petition.pdf	172270	no	1
			b6da314231e29e40f0e33b8f72f61a3f2f205829		
Warnings:					

Information:	
Total Files Size (in bytes):	172270
This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503. <u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application. <u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course. <u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.	

Doc code: PET.OP.AGE

Description: Petition to make special based on age/health

PTO/SB/130 (01-19)

Approved for use through 11/30/2020. OMB 0651-0031

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number

PETITION TO MAKE SPECIAL BASED ON AGE FOR ADVANCEMENT OF EXAMINATION UNDER 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1)					
Application Information					
Application Number	17/580,428	Confirmation Number	3226	Filing Date	January 20, 2022
Attorney Docket Number (optional)	438558-758051	Art Unit	1612	Examiner	CENTRAL, DOCKET
First Named Inventor	Steven C. Quay				
Title of Invention	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN				
Attention: Office of Petitions An application may be made special for advancement of examination upon filing of a petition showing that the applicant is 65 years of age, or more. No fee is required with such a petition. See 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1) and MPEP 708.02 (II). APPLICANT HEREBY PETITIONS TO MAKE SPECIAL FOR ADVANCEMENT OF EXAMINATION IN THIS APPLICATION UNDER 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1) and MPEP 708.02 (II) ON THE BASIS OF THE APPLICANT'S AGE. A grantable petition requires one of the following items: (1) Statement by one named inventor in the application that he/she is 65 years of age, or more; or (2) Certification by a registered attorney/agent having evidence such as a birth certificate, passport, driver's license, etc. showing one named inventor in the application is 65 years of age, or more.					
Name of inventor who is 65 years of age, or older					
Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix		
Steven	C.	Quay			
A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33 and 11.18. Please see 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the format of the signature. Select (1) or (2): ☐ (1) I am an inventor in this application and I am 65 years of age, or more. ☒ (2) I am an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, and I certify that I am in possession of evidence, and will retain such in the application file record, showing that the inventor listed above is 65 years of age, or more.					
Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/		Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-11-11	
Name	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.		Registration Number	78,332	

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) a petition to make special based on age for advancement of examination. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND COMPLETED FORMS TO THE CHIEF INFORMATION OFFICER. Submit completed forms electronically over EFS-Web, or mail to: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1612
				Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
				Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	3		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
		None			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	CN-101891635-A	11-24-2010	YANGTZE RIVER PHARMACEUTICAL GROUP., et al.		☒
	002	CN-102448467-A	05-09-2012	LITHERA INC.		☒
	003	CN-105579044-A	05-11-2016	DEL MAR PHARMACEUTICALS., et al.		☒

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST/300939682.1

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	LEHMANN, "Identification of Human Triple-Negative Breast Cancer Subtypes and Preclinical Models for Selection of Targeted Therapies," Journal of Clinical Invest, Vol. 121 (7), 2011, pp.2750-2767.	☐

Examiner
SignatureDate
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300939682.1

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

3

of

3

Application Number

17/580,428

Filing Date

01-20-2022

First Named Inventor

QUAY; Steven C.

Art Unit

1612

Examiner Name

CENTRAL, DOCKET

Attorney Docket Number

438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-12-07
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	47163077
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	187495
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	438558-758051
Receipt Date:	07-DEC-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	16:28:56
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment		no			
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Transmittal Letter	438558-758051-IDS-Transmittal.pdf	157821	no	4
			f453137d1413f3363cb00d3755f052f50c7de591		
Warnings:					

Information:					
2	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08)	438558-758051_IDS_SB08_2020906123249.pdf	135371	no	3
			79ae2840c5c194b1cd0ccbaf31c3a7ec8065f117		
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
3	Foreign Reference	CN101891635A_EFS.PDF	706236	no	9
			8291aca02612ff064160bbe9b10cf92120c24617		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Foreign Reference	CN102448467A_EFS.PDF	4310680	no	57
			39787155884a2a320c311f508a8f9de1f092cf8a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
5	Foreign Reference	CN105579044A_EFS.PDF	9587780	no	128
			6d70d0f2d537d6220fce022483c6b3ef344c2e63		
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Non Patent Literature	LEHMANN_IDENTIFICATIONOF HUMAN_2011_19PGS_EFS.PDF	11966952	no	19
			4c006f192711ab199eddad08a0257de22300c02d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			26864840		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Inventor:	Steven C. Quay et al.	Group Art Unit:	1612
Serial Number:	17/580,428	Examiner:	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Filing or 371 (c) Date:	January 20, 2022	CONFIRMATION NO:	3226
Title:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN	CUST. NO.:	187495

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.97

Commissioner for Patents:

An Information Disclosure Statement along with attached PTO/SB/08 is hereby submitted. A copy of each listed publication is submitted, if required, pursuant to 37 CFR §§1.97-1.98, as indicated below.

The Examiner is requested to review the information provided and to make the information of record in the above-identified application. The Examiner is further requested to initial and return the attached PTO/SB/08 in accordance with MPEP § 609.

The right to establish the patentability of the claimed invention over any of the information provided herewith, and/or to prove that this information may not be prior art, and/or to prove that this information may not be enabling for the teachings purportedly offered, is hereby reserved.

This statement is not intended to represent that a search has been made or that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, prior art or material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

- A. ☒ *37 CFR § 1.97 (b)*. This Information Disclosure Statement should be considered by the Office because:
- ☐ (1) It is being filed within 3 months of the filing date of a national application and is other than a continued prosecution application under § 1.53 (d);
 - OR --
 - ☐ (2) It is being filed within 3 months of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application;
 - OR --
 - ☒ (3) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action on the merits;
 - OR --
 - ☐ (4) It is being filed before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under § 1.114.
- B. ☐ *37 CFR § 1.97(c)*. Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the period specified in *37 CFR § 1.97(b)*, above, it is filed before the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, this Information Disclosure Statement should be considered because it is accompanied by one of:
- ☐ a statement as specified in §1.97 (e) provided concurrently herewith;
 - OR --
 - ☐ a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in § 1.17 (p) authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this statement.
- C. ☐ *37 CFR § 1.97 (d)*. Although this Information Disclosure Statement is being filed after the mailing date of the earlier of (1) a final office action under § 1.113, (2) a notice of allowance under § 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, it is being filed before payment of the issue fee and should be considered because it is accompanied by:
- i. a statement as specified in § 1.97 (e);
 - AND --
 - ii. a fee of \$260.00 as set forth in §1.17(p) is authorized below, enclosed, or included with the payment of other papers filed together with this Statement.
- D. ☐ *37 CFR §1.97 (e)*. Statement.
- ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (c);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A statement is provided herewith to satisfy the requirement under 37 CFR §§ 1.97 (d);
 - AND/OR --
 - ☐ A copy of a dated communication from a foreign patent office clearly showing that the information disclosure statement is being submitted within 3 months of the filing date on the communication is provided in lieu of a statement under 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e) (1) as provided for under MPEP 609.04(b) V.

- E. ☐ *Statement Under 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d).* Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or from the Office or is a communication that was issued by a patent office in a counterpart foreign or international application or by the Office that was received by an individual designated in § 1.56(c) not more than thirty (30) days prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement. This statement is made pursuant to the requirements of 37 C.F.R. §1.704(d) to avoid reduction of the period of adjustment of the patent term for Applicant(s) delay.
- F. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2).* The content of the Information Disclosure Statement is as follows:
- ☐ Copies of each of the references listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed herewith.
- OR --
- ☒ Copies of U.S. Patent Documents (issued patents and patent publications) listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are not enclosed.
- AND/OR --
- ☒ Copies of Foreign Patent Documents and/or Non Patent Literature Documents listed on the attached Form PTO/SB/08 are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a)(2).
- AND/OR --
- ☐ Copies of pending unpublished U.S. patent applications are enclosed in accordance with 37 CFR §1.98 (a) (2) (iii).
- G. ☒ *37 CFR §1.98(a)(3).* The Information Disclosure Statement includes non-English patents and/or references.
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a)(3)(i), a concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is provided herewith.
- ☐ Pursuant to MPEP 609(B), an English language copy of a foreign search report is submitted herewith to satisfy the requirement for a concise explanation where non-English language information is cited in the search report.
- OR --
- ☐ A concise explanation of the relevance of each patent, publication or other information provided that is not in English is as follows: _____
- ☒ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(a) (3) (ii), a copy of a translation, or a portion thereof, of the non-English language reference(s) is provided herewith.
- H. ☐ *37 CFR §1.98(d).* Copies of patents, publications and pending U.S. patent applications, or other information specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a) are not provided herewith because:
- ☐ Pursuant to 37 CFR §1.98(d)(1) the information was previously submitted in an Information Disclosure Statement, or cited by examiner for another application under which this application claims priority for an earlier effective filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.
- Application in which the information was submitted: _____
- Information Disclosure Statement(s) filed on: _____
- AND

☐ The information disclosure statement submitted in the earlier application complied with paragraphs (a) through (c) of 37 CFR §1.98.

- I. ☒ *Fee Authorization.* The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the above-referenced fees of \$0.00 and charge any additional fees or credit any overpayment associated with this communication to Deposit Account No. 07-1896 (Docket No. 438558-758051).

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: December 7, 2022

/Lisa G Lippert/

Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.
Registration No. 78,332

DLA PIPER LLP (US)
701 Fifth Avenue, Suite 6900
Seattle, Washington 98104-7029
Tel: (206) 839-4800
Fax (206) 839-4801
CUSTOMER NO.: 187495



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	438558-758051	3226
187495 DLA Piper LLP 701 Fifth Avenue Suite 6900 Seattle, WA 98104	7590 12/09/2022		EXAMINER CENTRAL, DOCKET	
			ART UNIT 1612	PAPER NUMBER
			NOTIFICATION DATE 12/09/2022	DELIVERY MODE ELECTRONIC

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

seattlepatentdocket@us.dlapiper.com



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Commissioner for Patents
United States Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

In re Application of	:	
Atossa Therapeutics, Inc.	:	
Application No. 17/580,428	:	DECISION ON PETITION
Filed: 20 Jan 2022	:	TO MAKE SPECIAL UNDER
For: METHODS FOR MAKING AND	:	37 CFR 1.102(c)(1)
USING ENDOXIFEN	:	

This is a decision on the petition under 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1), filed November 11, 2022, to make the above-identified application special based on applicant's age as set forth in MPEP § 708.02, Section II.

The petition is **GRANTED**.

A grantable petition to make an application special under 37 CFR 1.102(c)(1) and MPEP § 708.02, Section II: Applicant's Age, must be accompanied by evidence showing that the applicant is 65 years of age, or more, such as applicant's statement or a statement from a registered practitioner that he or she has evidence that the applicant is 65 years of age or older. No fee is required.

The instant petition includes a statement from a registered practitioner certifying that they have evidence that inventor Steven C. Quay is 65 years of age or older. Accordingly, the above-identified application has been accorded "special" status.

Telephone inquiries concerning this decision should be directed to Rachel Rizzo at 571-272-8991. All other inquiries concerning either the examination or status of the application should be directed to the Technology Center.

/Michelle R. Eason/
Michelle R. Eason
Lead Paralegal Specialist
Office of Petitions

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 1 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	***** R Henley -To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	001	US-3848030	11-12-1974	VITERBO; R. et al.	
	002	US-4851433	07-25-1989	KRAUS; Hans A.	
	003	US-6774122	08-10-2004	EVANS; John R. et al.	
	004	US-7384418	06-10-2008	HUNG; David et al.	
	005	US-7485623	02-03-2009	BUA; Jay	
	006	US-7507769	03-24-2009	NESTOUR; Elisabeth Le	
	007	US-7531578	05-12-2009	FORMAN; Barry et al.	
	008	US-7704516	04-27-2010	DROUIN et al.	
	009	US-7705159	04-27-2010	MACDONALD; Peter Lindsay et al.	
	010	US-7786172	08-31-2010	DE; Lignieres et al.	
	011	US-7968532	06-28-2011	LE; Nestour et al.	
	012	US-8048927	11-01-2011	LE NESTOUR; Elisabeth	
	013	US-8058302	11-15-2011	SOLANKI; Kirtipalsinh Sajjansinh et al.	
	014	US-8063249	11-22-2011	KUSHNER et al.	
	015	US-8119695	02-21-2012	FORMAN; Barry et al.	
	016	US-8329680	12-11-2012	EVANS; John R. et al.	
	017	US-8436029	05-07-2013	HICKEY; Magali Bourghol et al.	
	018	US-8454945	06-04-2013	MCCOOK; John Patrick et al.	
	019	US-8466139	06-18-2013	EVANS; John R. et al.	
	020	US-8822511	09-02-2014	COMBS; Andrew P. et al.	
	021	US-8993605	03-31-2015	COMBS; Andrew P. et al.	
	022	US-9073875	07-07-2015	BOYALL; Dean et al.	
	023	US-9090640	07-28-2015	BIERBACH et al.	
	024	US-9200045	12-01-2015	LIU et al.	

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ {12/13/2022}

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 345 of 398
PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 2 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	025	US-9220680	12-29-2015	PERUMAL et al.	
	026	US-9308181	04-12-2016	KISAK; Edward T. et al.	
	027	US-9333190	05-10-2016	AHMAD et al.	
	028	US-20020025543	02-28-2002	SERRERO; Ginette	
	029	US-20030021787	01-30-2003	HUNG; David et al.	
	030	US-20030099694	05-29-2003	CEVC; Gregor et al.	
	031	US-20040092894	05-13-2004	HUNG; David et al.	
	032	US-20070161063	07-12-2007	LOVE; Susan et al.	
	033	US-20070190019	08-16-2007	GUO; Chunfeng et al.	
	034	US-20080138391	06-12-2008	CARRARA; Dario Norberto et al.	
	035	US-20080319092	12-25-2008	SINGH; Jagat	
	036	US-20090068190	03-12-2009	BORTZ; Jonathan David	
	037	US-20090098069	04-16-2009	VACCA; Rita Downard	
	038	US-20090208944	08-20-2009	GOETZ; Matthew P. et al.	
	039	US-20090281063	11-12-2009	INAGI; Toshio et al.	
	040	US-20090291102	11-26-2009	FORTIN; Samuel	
	041	US-20090291134	11-26-2009	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	042	US-20100015195	01-21-2010	JAIN; Rajesh et al.	
	043	US-20100015200	01-21-2010	McCLAIN; James B. et al.	
	044	US-20100069781	03-18-2010	JOHANSEN; Jerald A. et al.	
	045	US-20100098659	04-22-2010	WATSON; Richard L. et al.	
	046	US-20100112041	05-06-2010	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	047	US-20120010245	01-12-2012	MASINI-ETEVE; Valerie	
	048	US-20120149761	06-14-2012	QUAY; Steven C.	
	049	US-20120164075	06-28-2012	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	050	US-20120301541	11-29-2012	HARONSKY; Elina et al.	

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date

Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 346 of 398
PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

3

of

15

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
	051	US-20130046171	02-21-2013	JOHANSEN; Jerald A. et al.	
	052	US-20130177590	07-11-2013	COMBS; Andrew P. et al.	
	053	US-20130197087	08-01-2013	SCHLOTZER; Ewald et al.	
	054	US-20140088059	03-27-2014	PERUMAL; Omathanu P. et al.	
	055	US-20140193334	07-10-2014	BIERBACH; Ulrich et al.	
	056	US-20140199391	07-17-2014	BIRBARA; Philip J.	
	057	US-20150080339	03-19-2015	WANG; Guangdi et al.	
	058	US-20150132388	05-14-2015	ANGI; Erzsebet Reka et al.	
	059	US-20150141391	05-21-2015	CHINNAIYAN; Arul M. et al.	
	060	US-20150250802	09-10-2015	LABRIE; Fernand et al.	
	061	US-20160346230	12-01-2016	AHMAD; Ateeq et al.	
	062	US-20160375234	12-29-2016	STEVEN; C. Quay	
	063	US-20170145515	05-25-2017	CHEN; Shu-Chih et al.	
	064	US-20180049999	02-22-2018	QUAY; Steven C.	
	065	US-20180200206	07-19-2018	QUAY; Steven C.	
	066	US-20200207704	07-02-2020	QUAY; Steven C. et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	CN-104203961-A	12-10-2014	XAVIER UNIVERSITY.		☒
	002	CN-104230723-B	08-24-2016	ASYMCHEM LAB TIANJIN CO LTD.		☒

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002

Page 347 of 398

PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 4 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ² Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	003	CN-104352504-A	02-18-2015	ENDORECH INC.		☒
	004	EP-1709062-B9	02-13-2013	CEDARBURG PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US]		☐
	005	EP-2350111-A1	08-03-2011	SYNTHON BV [NL]		☐
	006	EP-3202420-A1	08-09-2017	BESINS HEALTHCARE LU SARL [LU]		☐
	007	EP-3202420-B1	03-04-2020	BESINS HEALTHCARE LU SARL [LU]		☐
	008	WO-0064416-A3	03-08-2001	LILLY CO ELI [US], et al.		☐
	009	WO-0174366-A1	10-11-2001	ASTRAZENECA AB [SE], et al.		☐
	010	WO-2008070463-A2	06-12-2008	JINA PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US], et al.		☐
	011	WO-2008070463-A9	09-18-2008	JINA PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US], et al.		☐
	012	WO-2009032699-A1	03-12-2009	DRUGTECH CORP [US], et al.		☐
	013	WO-2009069140-A1	06-04-2009	DABUR PHARMA LTD [IN], et al.		☐
	014	WO-2009120999-A2	10-01-2009	OLEMA PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US], et al.		☐

Examiner Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002

Page 348 of 398

PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 5 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ² Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	015	WO-2009120999-A3	12-30-2009	OLEMA PHARMACEUTICALS INC [US], et al.		☐
	016	WO-2010066810-A1	06-17-2010	BESINS HEALTHCARE [BE], et al.		☐
	017	WO-2011072244-A1	06-16-2011	SINAI SCHOOL MEDICINE [US], et al.		☐
	018	WO-2012050263-A1	04-19-2012	CJ CHEILJEDANG CORP [KR], et al.		☐
	019	WO-2013050280-A1	04-11-2013	COMMISSARIAT ENERGIE ATOMIQUE [FR]		☐
	020	WO-2013134230-A1	09-12-2013	XAVIER UNIVERSITY [US]		☐
	021	WO-2014060640-A8	05-07-2015	FERMION OY [FI]		☐
	022	WO-2014141292-A2	09-18-2014	INTAS PHARMACEUTICALS LTD [IN]		☐
	023	WO-2015106094-A1	07-16-2015	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	024	WO-2015138340-A1	09-17-2015	REPROS THERAPEUTICS INC [US]		☐
	025	WO-2015187727-A2	12-10-2015	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	026	WO-2016168021-A1	10-20-2016	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ {12/13/2022}

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1629
				Examiner Name	-To be assigned
				Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740
Sheet	6	of	15		

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ² Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	027	WO-2017011623-A1	01-19-2017	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	028	WO-2017070651-A1	04-27-2017	US HEALTH [US], et al.		☐
	029	WO-2017080770-A1	05-18-2017	ROBERT BOSCH GES FÜR MEDIZINISCHE FORSCHUNG MBH [DE]		☒
	030	WO-2019051368-A1	03-14-2019	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐
	031	WO-2019051416-A1	03-14-2019	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐

Examiner Signature	/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)	Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 7 of 15

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	AHAMAD A., et al., "Endoxifen, A New Cornerstone of Breast Cancer Therapy: Demonstration of Safety, Tolerability and Systemic Bioavailability in Healthy Human Subjects," Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics, December 2010, Vol. 88 (6), pp. 814-817.	☐
	002	AHMAD A., et al., "Endoxifen, A New Treatment Option for Mania: A Double-Blind, Active-Controlled Trial Demonstrates the Antimanic Efficacy of Endoxifen," Clinical and Translational Science, Vol. 9 (5), October 2016, pp. 252-259.	☐
	003	AHMAD A., et al., "Endoxifen for Breast Cancer: Multiple Dose, Dose Escalation Study Characterizing Pharmacokinetics and Safety in Metastatic Breast Cancer Patients," Journal of Clinical Oncology, Vol. 30 (15), 20 May 2012, Abstract 3089, 3 pages.	☐
	004	AHMAD A., et al., "Orally Administered Endoxifen is a New Therapeutic Agent for Breast Cancer," Breast Cancer Research Treatment, Vol. 122 (2), July 2010, pp. 579-584.	☐
	005	AYDINER, et al., "Meta-Analysis of Trials Comparing Anastrozole and Tamoxifen for Adjuvant Treatment of Postmenopausal Women with Early Breast Cancer," Trials, Vol. 9 (47), 29 July 2008, pp. 1-9.	☐
	006	BAO, et al., "The Clinical Pharmacology of Anastrozole," European Oncology and Hematology, Vol. 7 (2), 2011, pp. 106-108.	☐
	007	BATH, et al., "An Improved Synthesis of Raloxifene Hydrochloride: A Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulator," Heteroletters, Vol. 4 (4), 2014, pp. 515-518.	☐
	008	BERNHARD H., et al., "Adoptive Transfer of Autologous, HER2-Specific, Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes for the Treatment of HER2-Overexpressing Breast Cancer," Cancer Immunology, Immunotherapy, 2008, Vol. 57, pp. 271-280.	☐
	009	CHANG M., "Tamoxifen Resistance in Breast Cancer," Biomolecules Therapeutics, May 2012, Vol. 20 (3), pp. 256-267.	☐
	010	Clinical Trials Government, Identifier No. NCT01273168, "Endoxifen in Adults With Hormone Receptor Positive Solid Tumors," 10 January 2011, 10 pages.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 8 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	011	Clinical Trials Government, Identifier No. NCT02311933, "Tamoxifen Citrate or Z-Endoxifen Hydrochloride in Treating Patients With Locally Advanced or Metastatic, Estrogen Receptor-Positive, HER2-Negative Breast Cancer," 9 December 2014, 13 pages.	☐
	012	DAVISON, et al., "In Vitro Effects on MCF-7 Breast Cancer Cells of Signal Transduction Inhibitor/Tamoxifen/ Eicosapentaenoic Acid Combinations and their Simultaneous Delivery Across Skin," Pharmaceutical Research, Vol. 25, 2008, pp.2516-2525.	☐
	013	DICKSCHEN K., et al., "Physiologically Based Pharmacokinetic Modeling of Tamoxifen and its Metabolites in Women of Different CYP2D6 Phenotypes Provides New Insight into the Tamoxifen Mass Balance," Frontiers in Pharmacology, Vol.3 (92), May 2012, 15 pages, www.frontiersin.org.	☐
	014	DONNEYONG M.M., et al., "Risk of Mortality with Concomitant use of Tamoxifen and Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors: Multi-Database Cohort Study," BMJ, 30 September 2016, Vol. 354 (i5014), 20 pages.	☐
	015	DOWSETT, et al., "The Effect of Anastrozole on the Pharmacokinetics of Tamoxifen in Post-Menopausal Women with Early Breast Cancer," British Journal of Cancer, Vol. 79 (2), 1999, pp. 311-315.	☐
	016	Extended European Search Report for European Application No. EP18853361.6, dated May 28, 2021, 5 pages.	☐
	017	FAUQ A.H., et al., "A Convenient Synthesis of (Z)-4-Hydroxy-N-Desmethyltamoxifen (Endoxifen)," Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters, Vol. 20 (10), 2010, pp. 3036-3038.	☐
	018	Final Rejection for U.S. Application No. 16/641,985, mailed October 26, 2021, 9 pages.	☐
	019	FORBES, et al., "Anastrozole Versus Tamoxifen for the Prevention of Locoregional and Contralateral Breast Cancer in Postmenopausal Women with Locally Excised Ductal Carcinoma in Situ (IBIS-II DCIS): A Double-Blind," Randomised Controlled trial Lancet, Vol. 387, 2016, pp. 866-873.	☐
	020	FOREFRONT., "Endoxifen Shows Promise As Breast Cancer Treatment", Mayo Clinic Cancer Center's Online Magazine, Vol. 3, Issue 1, 2014, 3 pages.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 9 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	021	GALEANA P.C., et al., "Ki67 Changes Identify Worse Outcomes in Residual Breast Cancer Tumors After Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy," The Oncologist, Vol. 23 (6), June 2018, pp. 670-678.	☐
	022	GAUTHIER S., et al., "New Highly Stereoselective Synthesis of (Z)-4-Hydroxytamoxifen and (Z)-4-Hydroxytoremifene via McMurry Reaction," The Journal of Organic Chemistry, Vol. 61(11), 31 May 1996, pp. 3890-3893.	☐
	023	GELMON, et al., "Targeting Triple-Negative Breast Cancer: Optimizing Therapeutic Outcomes," Annals of Oncology, Vol. 23 (9), September 2012, pp. 2223-2234.	☐
	024	GOETZ M.P., et al., "Abstract PD2-03: Final Results of a First-in-Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen (TAM) Metabolite, Z-Endoxifen Hydrochloride (Z-Endx) in Women with Aromatase Inhibitor (AI) Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer (MBC) (NCT01327781)," San Antonio breast cancer symposium, 8-12 December 2015, 5 pages.	☐
	025	GOETZ M.P., et al., "Final Results of a First in Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen (TAM) Metabolite, Endoxifen Hydrochloride in Women with Aromatase Inhibitor (AI) Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer (MBC) (NCT01327781)," San Antonio Breast Conference, 2015, PD203, 1 page.	☐
	026	GOETZ M.P., et al., "First-in-Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen Metabolite Z-Endoxifen in Women With Endocrine-Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer," DOI: https://ascopubs.org/doi/10.1200/JCO.2017.73.3246 , Vol. 35, No. 30, October 20, 2017, 16 pages.	☐
	027	HAWSE J.R., et al., "Endoxifen's Molecular Mechanisms of Action are Concentration Dependent and Different than that of other Anti-Estrogens," PLOS one, Vol. 8 (1), Januray 2013, e54613, 18 pages.	☐
	028	HENDERSON S.L., et al., "Profound Reduction in Tamoxifen Active Metabolite Endoxifen in a Breast Cancer Patient Treated with Rifampin Prior to Initiation of an Anti-TNF a Biologic for Ulcerative Colitis: a Case Report," BMC cancer, Vol. 16 (304), 11 May 2016, 6 pages.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 353 of 398
PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 10 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	029	HERSHMAN, et al., "Early Discontinuation and Non-adherence to Adjuvant Hormonal Therapy in a Cohort of 8,769 early Stage Breast Cancer Patients," Journal of Clinical Oncology, Vol. 26(27), 20 September 2010.	☐
	030	IKEDA H., et al., "Combination Treatment with Fulvestrant and various Cytotoxic Agents (Doxorubicin, Paclitaxel, Docetaxel, Vinorelbine, and 5-Fluorouracil) has a Synergistic Effect in Estrogen Receptor-Positive Breast Cancer," Cancer Science, Vol. 102 (11), November 2011, pp. 2038-2042, 5 Pages.	☐
	031	INGLE, et al., "Variation in Anastrozole Metabolism and Pharmacodynamics in Women with Early Breast Cancer," Cancer Research, Vol. 70 (8), 15 April 2010, pp. 3278-3286.	☐
	032	International Preliminary Report on Patentability for the application no. PCT/US2020/040757, mailed 13 January 2022, 9 pages.	☐
	033	International Report on Patentability for International Application no. PCT/US2018/050193, mailed March 26, 2020, 7 pages.	☐
	034	JANSEN, et al., "High miR-26a and Low CDC2 Levels Associate with Decreased EZH2 Expression and with Favorable Putcome on Tamoxifen in Metastatic Breast Cancer," Breast Cancer Research Treatment, Vol. 133, 2012, pp. 937-947.	☐
	035	JOHNSON M.D., et al., "Pharmacological Characterization of 4-Hydroxy-N-Desmethyl Tamoxifen, A Novel Active Metabolite of Tamoxifen," Breast Cancer Research and Treatment, Vol. 85, 2004, pp. 151-159.	☐
	036	JOHNSON R.E., et al., "Gynecomastia - Evaluation and Current Treatment Options," Therapeutics and Clinical Risk Management, Vol. 7, 2011, pp. 145-148.	☐
	037	JORDAN V.C., "New Insights into the Metabolism of Tamoxifen and its Role in the Treatment and Prevention of Breast Cancer," Steroids, Vol. 72 (13), November 2007, pp. 829-842.	☐
	038	KAMDEM, et al., "In Vitro and in Vivo Oxidative Metabolism and Glucuronidation of Anastrozole," British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology, Vol. 70 (6), 2010, pp. 854-869.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 354 of 398
PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 11 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	039	KARLSSON H., et al., "CAR T-Cell Therapy: The Role of Physical Barriers and Immunosuppression in Lymphoma," Gene Ther, August 2015, Vol. 26(8), https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26230974/ , pp. 498-505.	☐
	040	KAUR, et al., "Design, Synthesis and Evaluation of Ospemifene Analogs as Anti-Breast Cancer Agents," European Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, Vol. 86, 30 October 2014, pp. 211-218.	☐
	041	KEBAMO., et al., "The Role of Biotransformation in Drug Discovery and Development," Journal of Drug Metabolism and Toxicology, Vol. 6 (5), 2015, pp. 1-13.	☐
	042	LANCET, "Aromatase Inhibitors Versus Tamoxifen in Early Breast Cancer: Patient-Level Meta-Analysis of the Randomised Trials," Vol. 386, 2015, pp. 1341-1352.	☐
	043	LARI, et al., "Biological Markers in DCIS and Risk of Breast Recurrence: A Systematic Review," Journal of Cancer, Vol. 2, 2011, pp. 232- 261.	☐
	044	LAZZERONI M., et al., "Oral Low Dose and Topical Tamoxifen for Breast Cancer Prevention: Modern Approaches for an Old Drug," Breast Cancer Research, Vol. 14(214), 2012, 11 pages.	☐
	045	LEE O., et al., "In Vitro Human Skin Permeation of Endoxifen: Potential for Local Transdermal Therapy for Primary Prevention and Carcinoma in Situ of the Breast," Breast Cancer: Targets and Therapy, Vol. 3, 2011, pp. 61-70.	☐
	046	LEE O., et al., "Local Transdermal Therapy to the Breast for Breast Cancer Prevention and DCIS Therapy: Preclinical and Clinical Evaluation," Cancer Chemother Pharmacol, Vol. 76(6), December 2015, pp. 1235-1246.	☐
	047	LEMAINE, et al., "Gynecomastia in Adolescent Males," Seminars Plastic Surgery, Vol. 27 (1), February 2013, pp. 56-61.	☐
	048	LIBY, et al., "The Combination of the Rexinoid, LG100268, and a Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulator, Either Arzoxifene or A colbifene, Synergizes in the Prevent and Treatment of Mammary Tumors in an Estrogen Receptor-Negative Model of Breast Cancer," Clinical Cancer Research, Vol. 12 (19), October 2006, pp. 5902-5909.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 355 of 398
PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

12

of

15

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	049	MAH, et al., "A Miniaturized Flow-through Cell to Evaluate Skin Permeation of Endoxifen," International Journal of pharmaceutics, Vol. 441, 2013, pp. 433-440.	☐
	050	MAHONEY M.E., et al., "Intraductal Therapy of Ductal Carcinoma In Situ: A Presurgery Study," Clinical Breast Cancer, August 2013, 13(4), pp. 280-286.	☐
	051	MANNI, et al., "Combination of Antiestrogens and Omega-3 Fatty Acids for Breast Cancer Prevention," Biomed Research International, 1 January 2015, 10 pages.	☐
	052	MANSEL R., et al., "A Phase II Trial of Afimoxifene (4-hydroxyTamoxifen gel) for Cyclical Mastalgia in Premenopausal Women," Breast Cancer Research Treatment, December 2007, Vol. 106 (3), pp. 389-397.	☐
	053	MAXIMOV P.Y., et al., "Structure-Function Relationships of Estrogenic Triphenylethylenes Related to Endoxifen and 4- Hydroxytamoxifen," Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, 22 April 2010, Vol. 53 (8), pp. 3273-3283.	☐
	054	MELNIKOW J., et al., "Preferences of Women Evaluating Risks of Tamoxifen (POWER) study of preferences for Tamoxifen for Breast Cancer Risk Reduction," Cancer, Vol. 103 (10), 15 May 2005, pp. 1996-2005.	☐
	055	MEMORIAL SLOAN KETTERING: "T-Cell Therapy for Advanced Breast Cancer," 2016, pp. 1-8.	☐
	056	MILLER, et al., "Stereospecific Synthesis of (Z)-Tamoxifen via Carbometallation of Alkynylsilanes," The Journal of Organic Chemistry, Vol. 50 (12), 1985, pp. 2121-2123.	☐
	057	Non-Final Office Action for United States Application No. 16/641,985 dated September 07, 2021, 13 pages.	☐
	058	Notice of Allowance for U.S Application No. 16/641,985 mailed November 17, 2021, 9 pages.	☐
	059	OGAWA K., et al., "Synthesis and Antiestrogenic Activity of the Compounds Related to the Metabolites of (Z)-4-[1-[4-[2-(Dimethylamino)ethoxy]phenyl]- 2-(4-isopropylphenyl)-1-butenyl]phenyl monophosphate (TAT-59)," Chemical and Pharmaceutical Bulletin, April 1991, Vol. 39(4), pp. 911-916.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 356 of 398
PGR2023-00043

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 13 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	060	PARTRIDGE, et al., "Adherence to Initial Adjuvant Anastrozole Therapy among Women with Early Stage Breast Cancer," Journal Clinical Oncology, 01 February 2008, Vol. 26 (4).	☐
	061	PARTRIDGE, et al., "Nonadherence to Adjuvant Tamoxifen Therapy in Women with Primary Breast Cancer," Journal of Clinical Oncology, 15 February 2003, Vol. 21.	☐
	062	ROBERTSON, et al., "Fulvestrant: Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacology," British Journal of Cancer, 2004, Vol. 90, pp. S7-S10.	☐
	063	ROBERTSON, et al., "Pharmacokinetic Profile of Intramuscular Fulvestrant in Advanced Breast Cancer," Clinical Pharmacokinetics, 2004, Vol. 43 (8), pp. 529-538.	☐
	064	ROUANET P., et al., "Neoadjuvant Percutaneous 4-Hydroxytamoxifen Decreases Breast Tumoral Cell Proliferation: A Prospective Controlled Randomized Study Comparing Three Doses of 4-hydroxytamoxifen Gel to Oral Tamoxifen," Journal of Clinical Oncology, 1 May 2005, Vol. 23(13), pp. 2980-2987.	☐
	065	SANO, et al., "Short-step Synthesis of Droloxifene via the Three-Component Coupling Reaction among Aromatic Aldehyde, Cinnamyltrimethylsilane, and 13-Chlorophenetole," Tetrahedron Letters, 6 March 2006, Vol. 47 (10), pp. 1631-1635.	☐
	066	STEARNS, et al., "Preclinical and Clinical Evaluation of Intraductally Administered Agents in Early Breast Cancer," Science Translational Medicine, Oct. 26, 2011, Vol. 3 (106), 9 pages, 106ra108.	☐
	067	UMAREDDY, et al., "Improved Process for Centchroman, A Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulator (SERM)," Journal of Chemical and Pharmaceutical Research, 2015, Vol. 7 (7), pp. 736-741.	☐
	068	UMAREDDY, et al., "Total Synthesis of Lasofoxifene and Nafoxidine," An International Journal for Rapid Communication of Synthetic Organic Chemistry, 2016, Vol. 46 (4), pp. 309-313.	☐
	069	VERGOTE, et al., "Fulvestrant is an Effective and Well-Tolerated Endocrine Therapy for Postmenopausal Women with Advanced Breast Cancer," Results from Clinical Trials, British Journal of Cancer, 90 (Suppl), 2004, pp. S11-S14.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 14 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	070	WELSH J., "Induction of Apoptosis in Breast Cancer Cells in Response to Vitamin D and Antiestrogens," Biochemistry and Cell Biology, 1994, Vol. 72 (11-12), pp. 537-545.	☐
	071	WU, et al., "Single Cell MicroRNA Analysis using Microfluidic Flow Cytometry," PLOS One, 2013, Vol. 8 (1), e55044.	☐
	072	YAN YAODONG., "Design and Development of Sustained-Release and Controlled-Release Formulations," Chinese Medicine Science and Technology Publishing House, 30 June 2006 (2006-06-30), pp. 421-428.	☐
	073	YANG Y., et al., "Dendron-Based Micelles for Topical Delivery of Endoxifen: A Potential Chemo-Preventive Medicine for Breast Cancer," Advanced Functional Materials, 2014, Vol. 24, pp. 2442-2449.	☐
	074	YAO, et al., "Synthesis and Reactivity of Potential Toxic Metabolites of Tamoxifen Analogues: Droloxifene and Toremifene a-Quinones," Chemical Research in Toxicology, 2001, Vol. 14 (12), pp. 1643-1653.	☐
	075	YONEYA, et al., "Thiochroman Derivative CH4986399, A New Nonsteroidal Estrogen Receptor Down-regulator, Is effective in Breast Cancer Models," Anticancer Research, 2010, Vol. 30, pp. 873-878.	☐
	076	ZHANG B., et al., "The Safety Parameters of the Study on Intraductal Cytotoxic Agent Delivery to the Breast Before Mastectomy," http://dx.doi.org/10.3978/j.issn.1000-9604.2014.10.06 , September 09, 2014, Chinese Journal of Cancer Research, Vol. 26(5), pp: 579-587.	☐

Examiner Signature /RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002
Page 358 of 398
PGR2023-00043

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 15 of 15

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1629
Examiner Name	-To be assigned
Attorney Docket Number	109559-715740

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	April 21, 2022
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1642 1629
				Examiner Name	~~XXXXXXXXXX, R. Henley~~ CENTRAL, DOCKET
				Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	4		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
/R.J.H./	001	US-20070059288-A1	03-15-2007	DINSMORE; Jonathan H. et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
/R.J.H./	001	WO-2014134165-A1	09-04-2014	SLOAN KETTERING INST CANCER [US]		☐

Examiner Signature	/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)	Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST300041699.1

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 2 of 4

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	001	ACKERMAN A.B., et al., "Contrary View: The Breast is not an Organ Per Se, but a Distinctive Region of Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue," The American Journal of Dermatopathology, April 2007, Vol. 29 (2), pp. 211-218.	☐
	002	Anonymous, "History of Changes for Study: NCT02547961," 10 September 2015, XP055669980, retrieved from the URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/history/NCT02547961?V_1=View#StudyPageTop , on 2020-02-19, 4 pages.	☐
	003	BHATNAGAR P., et al., "Tumor Lysing Genetically Engineered T Cells Loaded with Multi-Modal Imaging Agents," SCIENTIFIC REPORTS, Vol. 4, No. 4502, DOI: 10.1038/srep04502, published on March 28, 2014, 21 pages.	☐
	004	Extended European Search Report for EP Application EP17857260.8, dated 24 March 2020, 16 pages.	☐
	005	FASCHING P.A., et al., "Ki67, Chemotherapy Response and Prognosis in Breast Cancer Patients receiving Neoadjuvant Treatment," BMC Cancer, Vol. 11, Article 486, 2011, 13 pages.	☐
	006	GOETZ M.P., et al., "A First-in-Human Phase I Study of the Tamoxifen (TAM) Metabolite, Z-Endoxifen Hydrochloride (Z-Endx) in Women with Aromatase Inhibitor (AI) Refractory Metastatic Breast Cancer (MBC) (NCT01327781)," San Antonio Breast Conference, December 2013, PD3-4, 4 pages.	☐
	007	International Search Report and Written Opinion for International Application no. PCT/US2018/050193, mailed January 04, 2019, 9 pages.	☐
	008	International Search Report and Written Opinion for International Application no. PCT/US2018/050272, dated January 03, 2019, 12 pages.	☐
	009	LI L., et al., "Prognostic Values of Ki-67 in Neoadjuvant Setting for Breast Cancer: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis," Future Oncology, Vol. 13(11), May 2017, pp. 1021-1034.	☐
	010	LOVE, et al., "A Feasibility Study of the Intraductal Administration of Chemotherapy," Cancer Prevention Research, Vol. 1, 2012, pp. 51-58.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST1300041699.1

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002

Page 361 of 398

PGR2023-00043

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 3 of 4

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
	011	OKEN M.M., et al., "Toxicity and Response Criteria of the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group," American Journal of Clinical Oncology, December 1982, Vol. 5(6), pp. 649-655.	☐
	012	Search Report and Written Opinion for Singapore Patent Application No. SG11202002105W mailed April 21, 2021, 8 pages.	☐
	013	STEARNS, et al. Active tamoxifen metabolite plasma concentrations after coadministration of tamoxifen and the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor paroxetine. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2003 Dec 3;95(23):1758-64.	☐
	014	SUN M., et al., "Construction and Evaluation of a Novel Humanized HER2-Specific Chimeric Receptor," Breast Cancer Research, 2014, Vol. 16:R61, 10 pages.	☐
	015	WU X., et al., "The Tamoxifen Metabolite, Endoxifen, is a Potent Antiestrogen that Targets Estrogen Receptor Alpha for Degradation in Breast Cancer Cells," Cancer Research, 01 March 2009, Vol. 69(5), , pp. 1722-1727.	☐
	016	ZHAO Y., et al., "A Herceptin-Based Chimeric Antigen Receptor with Modified Signaling Domains Leads to Enhanced Survival of Transduced T Lymphocytes and Antitumor Activity," The Journal of Immunology, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/38024914 , November, 2009, Vol. 183(9), pp: 5563-5574.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ {12/13/2022}

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300041699.1

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Accord Exhibit 1002

Page 362 of 398

PGR2023-00043

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 4 of 4

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-09-20
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1612 1629
				Examiner Name	***** R Henley
				Attorney Docket Number	CENTRAL DOCKET 438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	3		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
		None			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
	001	CN-101891635-A	11-24-2010	YANGTZE RIVER PHARMACEUTICAL GROUP., et al.		☒
	002	CN-102448467-A	05-09-2012	LITHERA INC.		☒
	003	CN-105579044-A	05-11-2016	DEL MAR PHARMACEUTICALS., et al.		☒

Examiner Signature	/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)	Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST 300939682.1

ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /R.J.H/

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
/R.J.H./	001	LEHMANN, "Identification of Human Triple-Negative Breast Cancer Subtypes and Preclinical Models for Selection of Targeted Therapies," Journal of Clinical Invest, Vol. 121 (7), 2011, pp.2750-2767.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/R.J.H./

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300939682.1

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

3

of

3

Application Number

17/580,428

Filing Date

01-20-2022

First Named Inventor

QUAY; Steven C.

Art Unit

1612

Examiner Name

CENTRAL, DOCKET

Attorney Docket Number

438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- ☐ See attached certification statement.

- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-12-07
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1629
				Examiner Name	~~XXXXXXXXXX R Henley~~ CENTRAL, DOCKET
				Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	3		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
		None			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
/R. J. H./	001	WO-2010135703-A2	11-25-2010	JINA PHARMACEUTICA LS INC [US], et al.		☐

Examiner Signature	/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)	Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300194197.1

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
/R.J.H./	001	Journal of Pharmaceutical Science and Technology, Japan, 2006, Vol. 66, No. 6, pp. 435-439.(No English Translation available. Document showing a well-known technique).	☒

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

WEST\300194197.1

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet

3

of

3

Application Number

17/580,428

Filing Date

01-20-2022

First Named Inventor

QUAY; Steven C.

Art Unit

1612

Examiner Name

CENTRAL, DOCKET

Attorney Docket Number

438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- ☐ See attached certification statement.

- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-10-05
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

Substitute for form 1449/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (Use as many sheets as necessary)				Complete if Known	
				Application Number	17/580,428
				Filing Date	01-20-2022
				First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
				Art Unit	1642 1629
				Examiner Name	~~RAYMOND J HENLEY III~~ CENTRAL DOCKET
				Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051
Sheet	1	of	3		

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number-Kind Code ² (if known)			
/R.J.H./	001	US-20170304232-A1	10-26-2017	KHAN; Seema Ahsan et al.	
/R.J.H./	002	US-20190269697-A1	09-05-2019	LABRIE; Fernand	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
		Country Code ³ Number ⁴ Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				
/R.J.H./	001	WO-2019051370-A1	03-14-2019	ATOSSA GENETICS INC [US]		☐

Examiner Signature	/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ (12/13/2022)	Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. ¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 3

Complete if Known

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Include name of the author(in CAPITAL LETTERS),title of the article(when appropriate), title of the item (book,magazine,journal,serial,symposium,catalog,etc.),date,page(s),volume-issue number(s),publisher, city and/or country where published.	T ²
/R.J.H/	001	Love, Susan M., et al. "A Feasibility Study of the Intraductal Administration of Chemotherapy." Cancer Prevention Research, vol. 6, no. 1, Jan. 2013, pp. 51-58.	☐
/R.J.H/	002	Taiwanese Patent Application No. 107131790 Search Report dated June 30, 2022. English Translation included.	☐

Examiner
Signature

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ {12/13/2022}

Date
Considered

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. 1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Complete if Known

Sheet 3 of 3

Application Number	17/580,428
Filing Date	01-20-2022
First Named Inventor	QUAY; Steven C.
Art Unit	1612
Examiner Name	CENTRAL, DOCKET
Attorney Docket Number	438558-758051

CERTIFICATION STATEMENT

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

- ☐ That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

OR

- ☐ That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).
- ☐ See attached certification statement.
- ☐ Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- ☒ A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

SIGNATURE

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Lisa G Lippert/	Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2022-09-07
Name/Print	Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.	Registration Number	78,332

<i>Notice of References Cited</i>	Application/Control No. 17/580,428		Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.	
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III		Art Unit 1629	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	CPC Classification	US Classification
*	A	US-11261151-B2	03-2022	Quay; Steven C.	C07C217/18	1/1
	B					
	C					
	D					
	E					
	F					
	G					
	H					
	I					
	J					
	K					
	L					
	M					

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	CPC Classification
	N					
	O					
	P					
	Q					
	R					
	S					
	T					

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)
	U	
	V	
	W	
	X	

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

Bibliographic Data

Application No: 17/580,428

Foreign Priority claimed: ☐ Yes ☒ No

35 USC 119 (a-d) conditions met: ☐ Yes ☒ No ☐ Met After Allowance

Verified and Acknowledged: /RAYMOND J HENLEY III/

Examiner's Signature

Initials

Title: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

FILING or 371(c) DATE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
01/20/2022	514	1629	438558-758051
RULE			

APPLICANTS

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., Seattle, WA,

INVENTORS

Steven C. Quay, Seattle, WA, UNITED STATES

Yao-Lin Sun, Tainan City, TAIWAN

LungHu Wang, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN

ChangJung Wu, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN

ChuanDer Huang, Tainan City, TAIWAN

CONTINUING DATA

This application is a CON of 16641985 02/25/2020 PAT 11261151

16641985 is a 371 of PCT/US18/50272 09/10/2018

PCT/US18/50272 has PRO of 62693885 07/03/2018

PCT/US18/50272 has PRO of 62624787 01/31/2018

PCT/US18/50272 has PRO of 62556884 09/11/2017

PCT/US18/50272 has PRO of 62556799 09/11/2017

FOREIGN APPLICATIONS

IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN LICENSE GRANTED**

01/27/2022

** SMALL ENTITY **

STATE OR COUNTRY

UNITED STATES

ADDRESS

DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue

Suite 6900

Seattle, WA 98104

UNITED STATES

FILING FEE RECEIVED

\$1,230

<i>Index of Claims</i> 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

CLAIMS										
☒ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47										
CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	12/13/2022								
	1	-								
	2	-								
	3	-								
	4	-								
	5	-								
	6	-								
	7	-								
	8	-								
	9	-								
	10	-								
	11	-								
	12	-								
	13	-								
	14	-								
	15	-								
	16	-								
	17	-								
	18	-								
	19	-								
	20	-								
	21	-								
	22	-								
	23	-								
	24	-								
	25	-								
	26	-								
	27	-								
	28	-								
	29	-								
	30	-								
	31	-								
	32	-								
	33	-								
	34	-								
	35	-								
	36	-								
	37	-								
	38	-								
	39	-								
	40	-								
	41	-								
	42	-								

<i>Index of Claims</i> 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	12/13/2022								
	43	-								
	44	-								
	45	-								
	46	-								
	47	-								
	48	-								
	49	-								
	50	-								
	51	-								
	52	-								
	53	-								
	54	-								
	55	-								
	56	-								
	57	-								
	58	-								
	59	-								
	60	-								
	61	-								
	62	-								
	63	-								
	64	-								
	65	-								
	66	-								
	67	-								
	68	-								
	69	-								
	70	-								
	71	-								
	72	-								
	73	-								
	74	-								
	75	-								
	76	-								
	77	-								
	78	-								
	79	-								
	80	-								
	81	-								
	82	-								
	83	-								
	84	-								
	85	-								
	86	-								
	87	-								
	88	-								
	89	-								
	90	-								
	91	-								
	92	-								
	93	-								
	94	-								

<i>Index of Claims</i> 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	12/13/2022								
	95	-								
	96	-								
	97	-								
	98	-								
	99	-								
	100	-								
	101	-								
	102	-								
	103	-								
	104	-								
	105	-								
	106	-								
	107	-								
	108	-								
	109	-								
	110	-								
	111	-								
	112	-								
	113	-								
	114	-								
	115	-								
	116	-								
	117	-								
	118	-								
	119	-								
	120	-								
	121	-								
	122	-								
	123	-								
	124	-								
	125	-								
	126	-								
	127	-								
	128	-								
	129	-								
	130	-								
	131	-								
	132	-								
	133	-								
	134	-								
	135	-								
	136	-								
	137	-								
	138	-								
	139	-								
	140	-								
	141	-								
	142	-								
	143	-								
	144	-								
	145	-								
	146	-								

<i>Index of Claims</i> 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

CLAIM		DATE								
Final	Original	12/13/2022								
	147	-								
	148	-								
	149	-								
	150	-								
	151	-								
	152	-								
	153	-								
	154	-								
	155	-								
	156	-								
	157	-								
	158	=								
	159	=								
	160	=								
	161	=								
	162	=								
	163	=								
	164	=								
	165	=								
	166	=								
	167	=								
	168	=								
	169	=								
	170	=								
	171	=								
	172	=								
	173	=								
	174	=								
	175	=								
	176	=								
	177	=								
	178	=								
	179	=								

Issue Classification 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

CPC						
Symbol					Type	Version
C07C	/	217	/	18	F	2013-01-01
C07C	/	213	/	10	I	2013-01-01
A61K	/	9	/	0053	A	2013-01-01
A61K	/	45	/	06	A	2013-01-01
C07B	/	2200	/	13	A	2013-01-01

CPC Combination Sets					
Symbol		Type	Set	Ranking	Version
/	/				

NONE		Total Claims Allowed:	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	22	
/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ Primary Examiner, Art Unit 1629	13 December 2022	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1	NONE

Issue Classification 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION			
CLAIMED			
A61K		31	135

NON-CLAIMED			

US ORIGINAL CLASSIFICATION	
CLASS	SUBCLASS
514	648

CROSS REFERENCES(S)						
CLASS	SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)					

NONE		Total Claims Allowed:	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	22	
/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ Primary Examiner, Art Unit 1629	13 December 2022	O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Figure
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1	NONE

Issue Classification 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

☒ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47															
CLAIMS															
Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original

NONE	Total Claims Allowed:	
(Assistant Examiner)	(Date)	22
/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ Primary Examiner, Art Unit 1629	13 December 2022	O.G. Print Claim(s)
(Primary Examiner)	(Date)	1
		O.G. Print Figure
		NONE



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

187495 7590 12/21/2022
DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue
Suite 6900
Seattle, WA 98104

EXAMINER

HENLEY III, RAYMOND J

ART UNIT

PAPER NUMBER

1629

DATE MAILED: 12/21/2022

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	438558-758051	3226

TITLE OF INVENTION: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	SMALL	\$600	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$600	03/21/2023

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the ENTITY STATUS shown above. If the ENTITY STATUS is shown as SMALL or MICRO, verify whether entitlement to that entity status still applies.

If the ENTITY STATUS is the same as shown above, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.

If the ENTITY STATUS is changed from that shown above, on PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, complete section number 5 titled "Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)".

For purposes of this notice, small entity fees are 1/2 the amount of undiscounted fees, and micro entity fees are 1/2 the amount of small entity fees.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Maintenance fees are due in utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due. More information is available at www.uspto.gov/PatentMaintenanceFees.

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), by mail or fax, or via EFS-Web.

By mail, send to: Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

By fax, send to: (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

187495 7590 12/21/2022
DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue
Suite 6900
Seattle, WA 98104

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being transmitted to the USPTO via EFS-Web or by facsimile to (571) 273-2885, on the date below.

(Typed or printed name)
(Signature)
(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	438558-758051	3226

TITLE OF INVENTION: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	SMALL	\$600	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$600	03/21/2023

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
HENLEY III, RAYMOND J	1629	514-648000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

☐ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/AIA/122 or PTO/SB/122) attached.

☐ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/AIA/47 or PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list

(1) The names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,

1 _____

(2) The name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.

2 _____

3 _____

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document must have been previously recorded, or filed for recordation, as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11 and 37 CFR 3.81(a). Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE

(B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) : ☐ Individual ☐ Corporation or other private group entity ☐ Government

4a. Fees submitted: ☐ Issue Fee ☐ Publication Fee (if required) ☐ Advance Order - # of Copies _____

4b. Method of Payment: (Please first reapply any previously paid fee shown above)

☐ Electronic Payment via EFS-Web ☐ Enclosed check ☐ Non-electronic payment by credit card (Attach form PTO-2038)

☐ The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. _____

5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)

☐ Applicant certifying micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29

☐ Applicant asserting small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27

☐ Applicant changing to regular undiscounted fee status.

NOTE: Absent a valid certification of Micro Entity Status (see forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B), issue fee payment in the micro entity amount will not be accepted at the risk of application abandonment.

NOTE: If the application was previously under micro entity status, checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to micro entity status.

NOTE: Checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to small or micro entity status, as applicable.

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.31 and 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Authorized Signature _____

Date _____

Typed or printed name _____

Registration No. _____



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	438558-758051	3226
187495	7590	12/21/2022	EXAMINER	
DLA Piper LLP			HENLEY III, RAYMOND J	
701 Fifth Avenue			ART UNIT	
Suite 6900			PAPER NUMBER	
Seattle, WA 98104			1629	

DATE MAILED: 12/21/2022

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b) (Applications filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Office has discontinued providing a Patent Term Adjustment (PTA) calculation with the Notice of Allowance.

Section 1(h)(2) of the AIA Technical Corrections Act amended 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3)(B)(i) to eliminate the requirement that the Office provide a patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. See Revisions to Patent Term Adjustment, 78 Fed. Reg. 19416, 19417 (Apr. 1, 2013). Therefore, the Office is no longer providing an initial patent term adjustment determination with the notice of allowance. The Office will continue to provide a patent term adjustment determination with the Issue Notification Letter that is mailed to applicant approximately three weeks prior to the issue date of the patent, and will include the patent term adjustment on the patent. Any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment determination (or reinstatement of patent term adjustment) should follow the process outlined in 37 CFR 1.705.

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

OMB Clearance and PRA Burden Statement for PTOL-85 Part B

The Paperwork Reduction Act (PRA) of 1995 requires Federal agencies to obtain Office of Management and Budget approval before requesting most types of information from the public. When OMB approves an agency request to collect information from the public, OMB (i) provides a valid OMB Control Number and expiration date for the agency to display on the instrument that will be used to collect the information and (ii) requires the agency to inform the public about the OMB Control Number's legal significance in accordance with 5 CFR 1320.5(b).

The information collected by PTOL-85 Part B is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 30 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b) (2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Notice of Allowability	Application No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s) Quay et al.	
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629	AIA (FITF) Status Yes

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

1. ☒ This communication is responsive to all papers filed up to the date of this Notice.
☐ A declaration(s)/affidavit(s) under **37 CFR 1.130(b)** was/were filed on ____.

2. ☐ An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on ____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.

3. ☒ The allowed claim(s) is/are 158-179. As a result of the allowed claim(s), you may be eligible to benefit from the **Patent Prosecution Highway** program at a participating intellectual property office for the corresponding application. For more information, please see http://www.uspto.gov/patents/init_events/pph/index.jsp or send an inquiry to PPHfeedback@uspto.gov.

4. ☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
Certified copies:
a) ☐ All b) ☐ Some* c) ☐ None of the:
1. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
3. ☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).
* Certified copies not received: _____.

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.
THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.

5. ☐ CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.
☐ including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date _____.
Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).

6. ☐ DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

Attachment(s)

1. ☒ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) 2. ☒ Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08), Paper No./Mail Date <u>4/21/22, 9/7/22, 9/20/22, 10/5/22 & 12/7/22.</u> 3. ☐ Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit of Biological Material _____. 4. ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413), Paper No./Mail Date _____.	5. ☐ Examiner's Amendment/Comment 6. ☒ Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance 7. ☐ Other _____.

/ RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ Primary Examiner, Art Unit 1629	The drawings filed April 21, 2022 are accepted.

REASONS FOR ALLOWANCE

Notice of Pre-AIA or AIA Status

The present application, filed on or after March 16, 2013, has been examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

Applicant's Preliminary Amendment filed April 21, 2022 and Information Disclosure Statements filed April 21, 2022, September 07 & 20, 2022, October 05, 2022 and December 07, 2022 have been received and entered into the application.

Accordingly, the application papers have been amended as directed by Applicant. Also, as reflected by the attached, completed copies of form PTO/SB/08, the cited references have been considered by the Examiner.

The reference cited by the Examiner on the attached form PTO/892 and not relied upon is the patent issued from the parent application and is cited to show the general state of the art.

The following is an examiner's statement of reasons for allowance:

Claim 158 is representative of the claimed invention and reads:

“An oral formulation comprising an endoxifen composition encapsulated in an enteric capsule, wherein the endoxifen composition comprises a compound of Formula (II): *[formula omitted]* wherein at least 90% by weight of the compound of Formula (IID) is (Z)-endoxifen.”

The Examiner has conducted a thorough search of the appropriate electronic data bases for the claimed subject matter and did not discover any reference which anticipates that claimed subject matter or would form a basis for concluding that the claimed subject matter would have been obvious. This holds true for any double patenting issue involving Applicant's parent application U.S. Patent No. 11,261,151 which contains claims requiring a specific, non-obvious

crystalline form of endoxifen. Also, claims 158-179 are presented in an enabled, definite manner.

Accordingly, the Examiner believes the claimed subject matter to be currently in condition for allowance.

Any comments considered necessary by applicant must be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee and, to avoid processing delays, should preferably accompany the issue fee. Such submissions should be clearly labeled "Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance."

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to RAYMOND J HENLEY III whose telephone number is (571)272-0575. The examiner can normally be reached M-F 6-2:30pm EST.

Examiner interviews are available via telephone, in-person, and video conferencing using a USPTO supplied web-based collaboration tool. To schedule an interview, applicant is encouraged to use the USPTO Automated Interview Request (AIR) at <http://www.uspto.gov/interviewpractice>.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Jeffrey S Lundgren can be reached on 571-272-5541. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of published or unpublished applications may be obtained from Patent Center. Unpublished application information in Patent Center is available to registered users. To file and manage patent submissions in Patent Center, visit: <https://patentcenter.uspto.gov>. Visit <https://www.uspto.gov/patents/apply/patent-center> for more information about Patent Center and <https://www.uspto.gov/patents/docx> for information about

Application/Control Number: 17/580,428
Art Unit: 1629

Page 4

filing in DOCX format. For additional questions, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 1629
December 13, 2022

<i>Search Notes</i> 	Application/Control No. 17/580,428	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination Quay et al.
	Examiner RAYMOND J HENLEY III	Art Unit 1629

CPC - Searched*		
Symbol	Date	Examiner
A61K 31/135	12/13/2022	RJH

CPC Combination Sets - Searched*		
Symbol	Date	Examiner

US Classification - Searched*			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
514	648	12/13/2022	RJH

* See search history printout included with this form or the SEARCH NOTES box below to determine the scope of the search.

Search Notes		
Search Notes	Date	Examiner
Reviewed related applications	12/13/2022	RJH
PE2E/PALM applicant/inventor search	12/13/2022	RJH
STN art search, (summary attached)	12/13/2022	RJH

Interference Search			
US Class/CPC Symbol	US Subclass/CPC Group	Date	Examiner
	See STN search noted above	12/13/2022	RJH

/RAYMOND J HENLEY III/ Primary Examiner, Art Unit 1629	

(FILE 'HOME' ENTERED AT 12:15:14 ON 13 DEC 2022)

D CLUSTER
D CLUSTER .PHARM .PHARMACEUTICAL
D SET

FILE 'REGISTRY' ENTERED AT 12:15:24 ON 13 DEC 2022

L1 1 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON ENDOXIFEN/CN

FILE 'HCAPLUS' ENTERED AT 12:15:41 ON 13 DEC 2022

L2 601 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON ENDOXIFEN OR L1
L3 237130 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON CAPSULE?
L4 4635 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON "ENTERIC CAPSULE" OR "ENTERIC
CAPSULES" OR (ENTERIC (P) CAPSULE?)
L5 24 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON L2 AND L3
L6 4 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON L2 AND L4
D L6 1-4 BIB HIT

FILE 'USPATFULL' ENTERED AT 12:19:27 ON 13 DEC 2022

L7 196 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON ENDOXIFEN OR L1
L8 43391 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON "ENTERIC CAPSULE" OR "ENTERIC
CAPSULES" OR (ENTERIC (P) CAPSULE?)
L9 26 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON L7 AND L8
L10 87 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON (ENDOXIFEN/TI,AB,CLM OR L1)
L11 18 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON L8 AND L10
L12 26 SEA SPE=ON ABB=ON PLU=ON L9 OR L11

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), by mail or fax, or via EFS-Web.

By mail, send to: Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

By fax, send to: (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

187495 7590 12/21/2022
DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue
Suite 6900
Seattle, WA 98104

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being transmitted to the USPTO via EFS-Web or by facsimile to (571) 273-2885, on the date below.

Christina Campbell	(Typed or printed name)
/Christina Campbell/	(Signature)
12-29-2022	(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/580,428	01/20/2022	Steven C. Quay	438558-758051	3226

TITLE OF INVENTION: METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN

APPLN. TYPE	ENTITY STATUS	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	SMALL	\$600	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$600	03/21/2023

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
HENLEY III, RAYMOND J	1629	514-648000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

☐ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/AIA/122 or PTO/SB/122) attached.

☐ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/AIA/47 or PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list

(1) The names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,

(2) The name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.

1 DLA PIPER LLP

2

3

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document must have been previously recorded, or filed for recordation, as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11 and 37 CFR 3.81(a). Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE

ATOSSA THERAPEUTICS, INC.

(B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)

SEATTLE, WA

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent): ☐ Individual ☒ Corporation or other private group entity ☐ Government4a. Fees submitted: ☒ Issue Fee ☐ Publication Fee (if required) ☐ Advance Order - # of Copies _____

4b. Method of Payment: (Please first reapply any previously paid fee shown above)

☒ Electronic Payment via EFS-Web ☐ Enclosed check ☐ Non-electronic payment by credit card (Attach form PTO-2038)

☒ The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 07-1896

5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)

☐ Applicant certifying micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29

☐ Applicant asserting small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27

☐ Applicant changing to regular undiscounted fee status.

NOTE: Absent a valid certification of Micro Entity Status (see forms PTO/SB/15A and 15B), issue fee payment in the micro entity amount will not be accepted at the risk of application abandonment.

NOTE: If the application was previously under micro entity status, checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to micro entity status.

NOTE: Checking this box will be taken to be a notification of loss of entitlement to small or micro entity status, as applicable.

NOTE: This form must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.31 and 1.33. See 37 CFR 1.4 for signature requirements and certifications.

Authorized Signature /Lisa G Lippert/Date 2022-12-29Typed or printed name Lisa G. Lippert, Ph.D.Registration No. 78,332

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	47291916
Application Number:	17580428
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3226
Title of Invention:	METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Steven C. Quay
Customer Number:	187495
Filer:	Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell
Filer Authorized By:	Lisa Gail Lippert
Attorney Docket Number:	438558-758051
Receipt Date:	29-DEC-2022
Filing Date:	20-JAN-2022
Time Stamp:	13:31:55
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	DA
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$600
RAM confirmation Number	E2022BSD32254953
Deposit Account	071896
Authorized User	Christina Campbell
The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows: 37 CFR 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees) 37 CFR 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)	

37 CFR 1.19 (Document supply fees)
37 CFR 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)
37 CFR 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Issue Fee Payment (PTO-85B)	438558-758051-Issue-Fee-Transmittal.pdf	121712	no	1
			c9deb474b80890f59f76f2f6ae676b0faecd1658		

Warnings:

Information:

2	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	38061	no	2
			ccd876944cae17602e644dab932c05a17e3e1e4		

Warnings:

Information:

Total Files Size (in bytes):	159773

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal				
Application Number:		17580428		
Filing Date:		20-Jan-2022		
Title of Invention:		METHODS FOR MAKING AND USING ENDOXIFEN		
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:		Steven C. Quay		
Filer:		Lisa Gail Lippert/Christina Campbell		
Attorney Docket Number:		438558-758051		
Filed as Small Entity				
Filing Fees for Utility under 35 USC 111(a)				
Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
UTILITY APPL ISSUE FEE	2501	1	600	600

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				600



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	ISSUE DATE	PATENT NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
17/580,428	02/07/2023	11572334	438558-758051	3226

187495 7590 01/18/2023
DLA Piper LLP
701 Fifth Avenue
Suite 6900
Seattle, WA 98104

ISSUE NOTIFICATION

The projected patent number and issue date are specified above.

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b) (application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment is 0 day(s). Any patent to issue from the above-identified application will include an indication of the adjustment on the front page.

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (<http://pair.uspto.gov>).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Application Assistance Unit (AAU) of the Office of Patents Stakeholder Experience (OPSE), Stakeholder Support Division (SSD) at (571)-272-4200.

INVENTOR(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site <http://pair.uspto.gov> for additional inventors):

Steven C. Quay, Seattle, WA;
Yao-Lin Sun, Tainan City, TAIWAN;
LungHu Wang, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChangJung Wu, Kaohsiung City, TAIWAN;
ChuanDer Huang, Tainan City, TAIWAN;

APPLICANT(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site <http://pair.uspto.gov> for additional applicants):

Atossa Therapeutics, Inc., Seattle, WA;

The United States represents the largest, most dynamic marketplace in the world and is an unparalleled location for business investment, innovation, and commercialization of new technologies. The USA offers tremendous resources and advantages for those who invest and manufacture goods here. Through SelectUSA, our nation works to encourage and facilitate business investment. To learn more about why the USA is the best country in the world to develop technology, manufacture products, and grow your business, visit SelectUSA.gov.

IR103 (Rev. 10/09)